

NOTES
ON
WILSON'S ENGLISH ESSAYS

WITH
An introduction, critical and biographical notes
of Authors, and a set of Model Questions
with Answers

BY
K. C. BANERJI, B. A.
[Sometime Student at Christ's College, Cambridge; Wren's,
and University College, London.]

SECOND EDITION

(THOROUGHLY REVISED AND ENLARGED)

Allahabad:
THE EDUCATIONAL BOOK-DEPOT.

1912.

Rupres One Annas Eight.

[All rights reserved.]

NOTES
ON
WILSON'S ENGLISH ESSAYS

WITH

An introduction, critical and biographical notes
of Authors, and a set of Model Questions
· with Answers

BY

K. C. BANERJI, B. A.

Sometime Student at Christ College, Cambridge ; Wrens ;
and University College, London.

SECOND EDITION.

(THOROUGHLY REVISED AND ENLARGED)

Al l a h a b a d :

THE EDUCATIONAL BOOK DEPOT.

1912.

Rupees One Annas Eight.

[All rights reserved.]

NOTES ON WILSON'S ESSAYS.

THE ESSAY.

"The History of Essay writing" says Henry Morley, in modern literature "begins with Montaigne and then passes to Bacon. Each used the word "Essay" in its true sense, as an assay or analysis of some subject of thought. Bacon's Assay was of life, generally in many forms, with full attention to its outward circumstances. Montaigne's essay was of the inner life of man as it was to be found in the one man's life that he knew." The essay proper, or Literary Essay, is not merely a short analysis of a subject, not a mere Epitome, but rather a picture of the writer's mind as affected for the moment by the subject with which he is dealing. Its most distinctive feature is *the Egotistical Element*.

The Literary essay is distinguishable from other forms of literary composition and branches of literature by certain peculiar characteristic--these have been summed up by an eminent commentator as follows:—

- (a) The essay is a short composition, one which can be easily read through in an interval of leisure, and retained easily in the mind as a whole.
- (b) It should be rather an assemblage of details carefully grouped than a system or theory worked out; it should rather suggest than prove. The essay is a picture, not a narrative or a thesis.
- (c) It must be an artistic whole, that is the development of a single idea, and not an aimless or casual wandering of the mind from one subject to another.
- (d) The subject must be lightly handled; not frivolously, but without any appearance of wishing to force the writers opinion upon the reader. It must appeal, like a poem,

to the emotions and the heart rather than to the intellect. There need be no lack of wisdom in it, but this must be imparted by persuasion and not by argument.

- (c) The essay must appear to be written, not without thought, but freely and openly without any after consideration.

The meaning of the word *Essay* has however undergone some alteration since Bacon's time. Now it has come to be applied to more ambitious performances—such as the essays of Lord Macaulay—which would have been called "Discourses" or "Advancements" in the Elizabethan age.

BACON.

INTRODUCTORY REMARKS.

—: o :—

Francis Bacon, Baron Verulam, a great English philosopher, was born at London in 1561. He was the youngest son of Sir Nicholas Bacon, was educated at Cambridge, travelled in France and was called to the bar at the age of 21. Though successful in his profession, his advancement was hindered by the enmity of the Cecil family. The Earl of Sussex was his warm friend and gave him a beautiful estate; but an estrangement took place soon after, Bacon condemning his friend's course, and appearing against him at the trial. Bacon entered Parliament in 1593, was knighted in 1603, and two years later was appointed solicitor-general. He had a formidable rival in Sir Edward Coke, but he continued to advance in reputation, and in 1613 became attorney general and Privy Councillor. The office of Lord Keeper was given to him in 1617, and soon after he was made Lord Chancellor, Baron Verulam and Viscount St. Albans. But from this time dates the beginning of his miserable fall. Complaints were made of his venality as a judge, which on inquiry by a Parliamentary committee were verified. Bacon made a full confession. He was deprived of his office and fined and imprisoned during the king's pleasure. He was subsequently pardoned, but ever afterwards he continued to live in retirement, devoting himself to his favourite studies. Bacon died in 1626.

The great aim of this extraordinary man was to reform the method of Philosophy. He recalls men from blindly following authority to the observation and examination of Nature. His great works are the "Novum Organon" (or the new organ) and the "De Augmentis &c.;" the former was projected in his youth, was prepared in a series of sketches, revised and re-written again and again and finally published in 1620. The *De Augmentis* appeared in 1603, and an English edition—"The Advancement of Learning" 1605. The celebrated *Essays* were first published in 1597, but large additions were subsequently made.

Bacon is, throughout and especially in his essays, one of the most suggestive authors that ever wrote. And it is remarkable that compressed and pithy as the *essays* are, and consisting chiefly of brief hints, he has elsewhere condensed into still smaller compass the matter of most of them. In his 'Rhetoric' he has drawn

up what he calls "*Antitheta*" (or common places) "*Locos*" (i. e., 'pros' and 'cons,' opposite sentiments and reasons), on various points—most of them being the same as those discussed in the 'Essays.' It is a compendious and clear mode of bringing before the mind the most important points in any question to place in parallel columns, as Bacon has done, whatever can be forcibly urged, fairly or unfairly, on opposite sides—for, then, the reader is in the position of a judge who has to arrive at a decision after considering all the 'pleadings.'

Bacon's Life and Character.

(1) The prevailing *theory* concerning Bacon's life and character is that embodied in Pope's famous couplet,—

"If parts allure thee, think how Bacon shined,
The wisest, brightest, meanest of mankind".

This couplet which sacrifices truth to Epigrammatical point has aroused the bitter indignation of all Bacon's ardent admirers. Hepworth Dixon in his "*Personal History of Lord Bacon*" writes ;—"that figure decked by Pope,—"*the wisest, brightest, meanest of mankind*,—over which fools have grinned and rogues have rubbed their palms for more than a hundred years, has never been recognized by honest hearts...nature abhors antitheses...If she may make a God or Devil, she will not put the two in one. That is the task of art ; but of art in its lowest stage of depravity, and decline.....The sole end of wit (in Popes day) was defamation, the sole end of poetry, vice."

(2) The attitude taken by the more ardent of Bacon's admirers such as Rowley, Basil Montague or Hepworth Dixon assumes, and endeavours to establish by explaining away all the ugly passages of his life, that Bacon was a virtuous and amiable man no less than he was a great philosopher and statesman. But he was the sport of circumstances.

(3) Lord Macaulay's estimate of Bacon has been regarded as an amplification of Pope's famous satire. He judges Bacon by the standard of morality prevailing in this century and not by that which prevailed in the age when Bacon lived. Macaulay, moreover, ignores altogether the political aims which Bacon sought to attain, though with imperfect success—and accuses him of abject servility, unscrupulousness, and coldness of heart,

and above all draws a sharp antithesis between Bacon as a philosopher and Bacon as a man. "Neither his principles nor his spirit were such as could be trusted, when strong temptations were to be resisted, and serious dangers to be braved."

(4) Lord Campbell's view—as stated in the second volume of his *Lives of the Chancellors*," does not materially differ from Macaulay's. He acknowledges the greatness of Bacon as a philosopher, his dispatch as a judge, the excellence of his "orders" and of his advice to other judges, and his wisdom as a statesman. But he regrets that Bacon did not confine himself to his philosophy, and says that "he was driven to betake himself to the profession of the law for a subsistence; hence, he was involved in the vortex of politics; intellectual glory became his secondary object, and his nature became changed and debased."

(5) The late Mr. James Spedding who devoted his life to the study of Bacon and his works arrived at the following conclusions:—

- (a) Many of the shortcomings of Bacon may be attributed to carelessness about money, the habit of borrowing on interest which Bacon contracted in early life, and could never cure himself of.
- (b) Bacon was very sensitive, but remarkably free from the ordinary defects of such natures—irritability and aptness to take offence.
- (c) Bacon was modest, and the only qualities for which he gave himself credit, were patience and faith, and love of truth; and he was inclined to give other men too much credit for abilities and virtue.
- (d) Bacon had a large faculty of hope.
- (e) But he wanted self assertion and audacity. This was one of the causes of his tardy rise, and accounts, to some extent, for his pliancy and submissive attitude towards his superiors.
- (f) It is a mistake to suppose that Bacon regarded philosophy as his one sole end in life, and repented of having chosen a political career; Bacon had certain aims in politics on which his heart was set; and as he failed after all in having them carried out, it was natural that he should have so often regretted the time which he had devoted to politics.

- (g) As to Bacon's moral worth, Spedding wisely remarks "we shall always differ on that subject, according as we rate higher the virtues in which he excelled, or those in which he was deficient. The men on whom posterity pronounces a unanimous verdict for bad or for good, are the men about whose virtues little is known.....Bacon's record is unusually full."

(6) Professor Gardiner's view is based on a full recognition of what Spedding was perhaps the first to point out,—the importance of Bacon's career as a statesman, and of his aim for the improvement of the political condition of the country. He admits that Bacon was guilty of many actions of a questionable character, but accounts for them by his overweening confidence in his own strength of head and heart, his almost incredible carelessness as to how his conduct appeared in the eyes of others, his coldness of heart, or "poverty of moral feeling" and, above all, the bad training he had received in the court of Elizabeth, with its atmosphere of dissimulation, courtliness and intrigue.

"Bacon was not the faultless monster which it has pleased some of his too enthusiastic admirers to represent him. But far less was he that strange congeries of discordant qualities which were never found united in any human being. He was not one man as a thinker, and another man as a politician. In every part of his career he was indefatigable in his pursuit of truth and justice. His faults as a philosopher, as a statesman, and as a Judge, arose alike from the same source,"—*viz.*, from his "taking too high a strain," attempting too much, and relying too much on some particular theory, method or individual.

The Characteristic Excellence of Bacon's Essays.

In more ways than one the "Essays" were a new experiment in literature. In the intended dedication to Prince Henry, Bacon says he has "endeavoured to make them not vulgar, but of a nature whereof a man will find much in experience, and little in books." In his dedication to Buckingham, Bacon says "of all my other works, the Essays have been most current; for that, it seems, they come home to men's business and bosoms." In choosing for the Latin version a title which means "the insides of things" he seems to contrast them favourably with other works of moral

teaching which deal with the outer or superficial aspects of life and manners. He seems to put himself forward as one who has a right by virtue of his enlightened experience—to be heard, when he speaks of the motives by which men are actuated, the degree of faith which may be placed in them, and the best means of securing their praise, sympathy or co-operation. He assumes the lofty tone of one whose thoughts are habitually on a higher level, but who graciously vouchsafes to come down from his philosophical and official eminence to enlighten humbler mortals in purely worldly matters into which he has a sort of superhuman insight.

The moral tone of the Essays.

It has been repeatedly asserted by competent critics that the Essays are *non moral*, i. e., they rest on a basis of prudential self-seeking and leave out of account the strictly moral character of the actions of a man of the world. He presumes that the reader is one who seeks to advance himself in the world, and wants to be told the best and safety means of attaining that object. Bacon's position is, that having made up one's mind to be useful to his fellowmen from the vantage-ground of place and power, a man would act irrationally if he were to be too scrupulous. He should unhesitatingly adopt those means which an enlightened experience of the ways of the world proves to be the best.

ESSAY I. OF REVENGE.

[Note.—“ Throughout the first half of this essay Bacon has duelling in his mind. Bacon could not sympathise at all with an impatience of insult. His low views of human nature and the inconvenient extent to which dwelling had been carried in his time, combine with his admiration of everything Roman, to make him not only intolerant of revenge, but even dull to the rightfulness of just resentment.”]

The Antitheta on Revenge are as follows :—

- | For. | Against. |
|---|---|
| 1. Private revenge is a kind of wild justice | 1. That man that does a wrong begins mischief; the man that returns a wrong makes mischief endless. |
| 2 He who requites violence with violence, offends against the law only, not against the individual. | 2. The more natural vengeance is the more it must be kept down. |
| 3. The fear of private revenge is a useful thing; for the laws are too often asleep. | 3. The man that is prone to return a wrong, may be suspected of having wished to begin it. |

NOTES.

Of—*i. e.*, the essay concerns the subject of ; it is written on.

Revenge—*i. e.*, vindictive pleasure in retaliation. Bain says of Revenge, “ Revenge or deliberate anger is implied in the need of retaliation to satisfy the feelings of the offended person ”—Revenge is an instinct, in itself neither good nor bad, which, controlled by reason, may become virtuous, but which, unchecked, is vicious.

Page 9.

Para. 1. Kind—sort ; it partakes of the nature of.

Wild—Lit. of the nature of a weed, growing wild—hence rude ; barbarous Here the word means ‘ natural,’ as opposed to the condition of a civilized society. The *wild* justice of revenge is distinguished from the *cultivated* justice of the law (Of. Lynch Law.)

Which, etc.—note the free use of the relative : in Modern English it would be “ and the more a man’s nature runs to it : ” the

more a man is disposed to take vengeance according to his own will.

The more—refers to extent.

Nature—disposition.

Runs to—shows a tendency towards.

The more—all the more ; so much the more in proportion.

Ought—should be directed towards, &c. Should be aimed at, *i. e.*, should be made an object of law. Should law take drastic measures to root out this evil.

Law—established law ; the law established by authority in any given country.

Weed it out—uproot or eradicate it. Remove it as if it were an obnoxious weed. (Note, the use of the words *wild*, *runs to* are in keeping with this metaphor).

For—because.

As for—as regards.

First wrong—the first wrongful act ; the original injury done.

Doth—does.

But—only.

But offend—is only a breach of ; is an offence merely in the eye of.

The revenge of—the avenging of ; the being revenged for ; the act constituting the taking of revenge.

Putteth the law out of office—usurps the functions of law ; amounts to taking the law into one's own hands. (Wrongs should be punished not by the sufferers of them, by the properly constituted courts).

Para. 2. Certainly—it is a fact ; it is granted or conceded ; it is true.

In—that in ; in=by the action of.

Taking revenge—the doing of that act whereby you seek to be revenged.

But—only, *i. e.*, he only revenges himself for the wrong done to him, and thereby acknowledges that he is not superior to his enemy

Even with—on a level with ; on a footing of equality with, in no respect gaining an advantage over.

His enemy—the person who has given him offence or done him an injury.

But—but on the other hand.

In passing it over—i e., in overlooking the insult or injury; in the act of refraining from taking revenge.

Superior—i e., he shows himself as superior to his enemy, he thereby displays a nobler nature.

Princes part—(an instance of alliteration) An act worthy of a king or prince; just as a king is so much nobler than an averageman, so the act of overlooking an injury is nobler than the taking of revenge Cf. Shakespeare—*Merchant of Venice*—

“It (Mercy) becomes the throned monarch better than his crown—

Pardon—to forgive.

Solomon—Bacon himself always spells the name as “*Salomon*.” Solomon, the son of David, was regarded as the wisest of kings He is the author of *Proverbs* and *Ecclesiastes* in the Old Testament of the Bible. Bacon often quotes from the writings of this wisest of kings

I am sure—at any rate.

It is ... offence—these words as here quoted are not to be found in the writings of Solomon, though doubtless the sentiment is The words of Solomon in *Proverbs* xix. 11; are “it is his glory to pass over a transgression.”

Past—over; reference is to the point in time. This applies to nothing but revenge in the strict sense of the word, *vindictive pleasure in retaliation*. It does not apply to punishment, which a man may inflict for future protection to himself or others.

Gone—is over and done with; that which has already happened or taken place.

Irrevocable—Lit. cannot be called back, here cannot be undone.

To do—to attend to; to occupy them.

Things—matters; affairs.

Present and to come—existing and future, as distinguished from ‘that which’ is past.

Trifle with—lose sight of their really important concerns or interests; play with their serious concerns in life.

Labour in—trouble themselves about.

Matters—affairs; things.

Para. 3. No man doth.....sake—though at starting no man does a wrong for the wrong's sake, yet by constant wrong-doing for ulterior motives a mind may become so perverted as to rejoice in harming others for its own sake.

For the wrong's sake—for the mere purpose of doing wrong ; with no further object than the mere doing of wrong.

Thereby—i. e., by the wrong-doing ; by means of the wrongful act.

Purchase—acquire for himself ; get ; obtain. (Lit. to buy).

Profit—gain ; advantage.

The like—something of the nature of, or like the ends enumerated.

Loving—preferring.

Himself—his own interests.

For.....me—the meaning is that a man does wrongful acts to attain some end and these things he endeavours to attain because he wishes to enjoy them. It is in trying to please and satisfy himself that he injures me—and this in a sense is natural—why then should I be annoyed at that which was done, primarily, not to injure me but in order to render possible the satisfaction of another person's desires.

Do wrong—act so as to injure another (moral turpitude is not here contemplated).

Merely—out of pure spite or pure illnature—out of mere malignity without excuse of any kind.

Out of—under the impulse of ; being led on to do it by, &c.

Ill-nature—spiteful nature ; malignant disposition.

Why—what then.

- But-only.

It is but like, &c.—such injury resembles the scratches we get from the thorn, &c.

No other—nothing else ;—' other ' is here used as an adverb. Cf. Shakespeare—" to think other."

[Bacon says that a man who does acts which injure another out of a malignity of disposition does only that which is natural to him. and for this reason ought not provoke feelings of revenge].

Para. 4. Tolerable—excusable.

The mostwrongs—the most excusable kind of revenge is that kind which concerns wrongs, &c.,—*i. e.*, which is exercised in the case of or in reference to wrongs, &c.

Page 10.

No law—the reference is probably to duelling (Abbot).

To remedy—to set right, *i. e.*, to punish.

Then—even in the case of taking the law into your own hands with regard to wrongs which there is no law to remedy.

Heed—caution ; care ; let him find out before hand.

The revenge—*i. e.*, the revengeful act.

Else a man's enemy, &c.—otherwise while the party wronging his opponent inflicts only one punishment on his enemy, he himself has to endure both the original injury and the penalty prescribed by the law for illegal revenge.

Is still before hand—has, even after revenge is taken, the best of the game.

Two for one—two evil suffered for one evil inflicted.

Para. 5. When—on the occasion of, &c.

Take revenge—*i. e.*, do the act or action which constitutes the taking of revenge.

Are desirous—*i. e.*, desire.

The party should know—so, Macduff, when vowing vengeance against Macbeth, says :—

“If thou be slain, and with no sword of mine,
My wife's and children's ghosts will haunt me still.”

Party—person. [Bacon's use of the word “party” shows the transitional stage between the proper legal use of the word—a party or side in a suit—and the modern vulgarism, “an elderly party in a shovel hat”—here party of course refers to the person against whom revenge is taken.

Whence—from whom. Cometh—comes, *i. e.*, who is the source of the act of Revenge.

This—this way of proceeding, *i. e.*, letting the other party know that the Act of revenge proceeds from you.

Generous—noble. (The phrase “generous revenge” is applied usually, however, to returning good for evil).

For—because, for the reason that.

Delight—pleasure.

For the delight—*i. e.*, in the case of these men.

Seemeth—seems ; most probably is.

In doing the hurt—in causing or inflicting the injury.

Repent—*i. e.*, of having inflicted the original injury or injustice. **Repent**—be sorry for ; regret having inflicted, &c.

Base—mean.

Crafty—artful ; cunning.

Cowards—*i. e.*, those who take revenge without letting the other person know.

Are like the arrows that flieth in the dark—this Expression is a combination of "the arrow that flieth by day" and "the pestilence that walketh in darkness" of Psalm xci. 5, 6—the meaning is, want to takes revenge in a subtle, underhand way, so that the injuries they inflict resemble the arrow that hits one in the dark, as the direction from which it comes cannot be made out.

Para. 6. Cosmus, Duke of Florence—Cormus, a descendant of the younger branch of the Medici, was made Duke of Florence in 1537 on the murder of Alexandro de Medici, the illegitimate descendant of the elder branch. By his inquisitorial government he is said to have changed the manners of the Florentines, who were before noted for garrulity and lightness of conversation, to taciturnity and caution.

Desperate—reckless and immoral. The saying is called 'desperate' because such a saying is likely to lead perfidious friends to do their worst, as they would have no hope of being forgiven.

Perfidious—treacherous ; faithless.

Neglecting—neglectful ; negligent—not taking the trouble to assist one in the time of need.

Those wrongs—the injuries of perfidy and neglect.

Unpardonable—injuries which cannot be forgiven or excused.

You shall read—*i. e.*, you may read or one may find. (For this use of *shall* see, Abbots Shakespearian Grammar para. 315 in which he quotes "you shall mark many a duteous and knee-crooking slave." Othello i. 1.

Commanded—directed ; advised.

Friends—perfidious or negligent friends, *i. e.*, false, or as they are called, "summer friends" are spoken of.

[The point of the saying lies in its seeming absurdity ; for a friend, if he is really a friend, can have nothing to be forgiven.]

Job—a person whose history is given in the Old Testament of the Bible. He was distinguished by his patience and piety under misfortune

Better tune—healthier or nobler temper, for 'tune' in the sense of 'frame of mind'. Cf. "Lear's in the town ; who sometime, in his better tune, remembers what we are come about"—King Lear, iv. 3.

Contented—satisfied with ; agreeable to.

Take—accept ; receive.

And so of friends, &c.—and the same applies, in some manner, to friends. If we accept good at their hands, we must sometimes be content to accept evil too.

In a proportion—in a proportionate degree.

Para. 7. Certain—something regarding which there can be no doubt ; a fact.

Studieth—seeks earnestly to compass. (Cf. "Study of Revenge" Paradise Lost Book I 1, 107).

Keeps—maintains

Wounds—grievances ; injuries.

Green—active ; in a state of irritation.

Keeps...green—keeps the bitterness of feeling caused by the recollection of injuries ever fresh.

Do well—get on well ; skin over ; gradually close.

Public revenges—acts of vengeance undertaken on public grounds, as the war against Brutus undertaken by Augustus to revenge the murder of his great uncle.

Fortunate—The meaning is that Augustus Cæsar, Septimus Severus and Henry IV prospered after revenging the deaths of Cæsar, Pertinax and Henry III.

Cæsar—i. e. Julius Cæsar. **Pertinax**—a Roman Emperor murdered by rebellious soldiers in the second century. These mutineers were put to death by Septimus Severus.

Henry III—Both Henry IV and Henry III of France were assassinated, the one in 1589, the other in 1610. The Jesuite monk Clement who assassinated Henry III was torn to pieces by the King's guard.

In private..... so—when revenge is taken for private injuries inflicted, the case is very different, it is not fortunate.

Vindictive—Revengeful.

Witches—The belief in witchcraft was widespread in Bacon's day. He himself gave a practical proof of his belief in witchcraft, by recommending the torture of a school master named Peacock for 'practising to have infatuated the King's judgment by Sorcery.'

So end they unfortunate—i. e., so end they unfortunately. Witches were believed to be in league with the Evil One (Satan). It is doubtful, however, whether the unfortunate end here spoken of refers (1) to the belief that their souls were forfeited to Satan and taken away by him to Hell: or, (2) to the burning of witches—a barbarous practice which prevailed till the end of the 17th century.

Analysis of Essay.

- I. Revenge is undesirable because it is—
 1. Destructive of the law.
 2. Ignoble.
 3. Unable to undo a past wrong.
 4. Is blind to human weakness and selfishness.
- II. Revenge is most allowable when—
 1. The law is at default.
 2. It is taken openly.
- III. Between friends forgiveness should exclude revenge.
- IV. Public revenges are generally successful; private revenges mostly fail.

Explanation of Essay I. paragraph by paragraph.

Para. 1. The taking of revenge may be likened to the dealing out of a sort of natural justice, i. e., a justice not regulated and dictated by the law but by the instinct to make him suffer pain or injury who has inflicted a similar evil on you; and the more a man's disposition is inclined to be revengeful, the more should the coercive influence of Law be brought into play against that tendency so as to eradicate it. And this because the original injury was only a violation of the established law of the land—whereas the taking of revenge, in a civilized community usurps the functions of law, thus weakening that very agency which keeps society together and renders civilization and progress possible.

Para. 2. It no doubt is true that in taking revenge a man only places himself on an equality with his enemy, but at the same time it must be remembered that in overlooking an insult or injury done to him by another, a man places himself in a position of superiority over his antagonist because forgiveness is a noble virtue, the prerogative of pardon and mercy being the special privilege of kings and princes. And Solomon too, that wisest of kings, has, in his writings laid down that "it is the glory of a man to pass by (*i. e.*, overlook) an offence." Further, that which is done and over cannot be undone or recalled and sensible people ought therefore to attend to the present and to the future, in which they will find enough to engage their attention and energy, rather than spend themselves in brooding over past injuries and in devising plans or schemes for revenge.

Para. 3. And looking at 'revenge' in the proper light it is impossible to find any justification for it. Men do not inflict injuries on others out of a sheer love of inflicting harm, but only as a means to the attainment of some further object for themselves, such as some gain, or pleasure or honour or the like. And this desire to seek his own profit is again dictated by the instinct of self-love for which no man can be blamed. Whilst the motive that leads another to inflict harm is quite natural, the impulse to retaliate is unnatural because it implies that you expect another person to consider you before he considers himself. In the case also of those men, if any such there exist, who inflict harm on others simply through the malignity of their disposition, it cannot be said that retaliation is justifiable for such men merely do what they cannot help doing, no more than a thorn or a briar can help pricking or scratching if it comes into contract with you.

Para. 4. Revenge may be distinguished into two kinds; revenge for injuries for which the law has provided a remedy and revenge for injuries for which the law has provided no remedy. The least objectionable occasion for the taking of revenge is for injuries for which the law has provided no punishment, because revenge in such a case would not usurp the functions of law, and would be taken more to punish than by way of retaliation. But in taking it upon himself to punish for an injury a man must take care that the action by which he seeks to inflict the punishment is itself not punishable by the established law, for otherwise, his enemy will, even after he has taken revenge, have the better of him—the enemy suffering only one evil for two evils suffered by the man who takes the revenge, one evil at the hands of his enemy and the other through the instrumentality of the law.

Para. 5. Revenge may again be taken in either of two ways ; openly or secretly. The better way to take revenge is to take it openly, to let the man on whom you would be revenged know that you are the cause of the evil he is being made to suffer—for, in so doing, you show him that you take revenge not so much to injure him but, by the injury you inflict, to make him feel regret for the original evil he had inflicted on you. And this is the spirit in which revenge ought to be taken. It is mean and cowardly to take revenge by inflicting evil secretly for you thereby clearly show that your principal object was merely to cause harm to your enemy and not to make him repent for his own act ;—otherwise you would have brought the fact home to him by letting him know your purpose

Para. 6. Cosmus, Duke of Florence, arrived at a reckless and immoral conclusion concerning the way in which one should deal with insincere and neglectful friends, as if insincerity and neglect in those whom we regard as friends were evils which were absolutely unpardonable. This conclusion, the Duke embodied in the saying that whereas “we are commanded to forgive our enemies, we are not commanded to forgive our friends”—meaning that on persons whom we regard as friends and who turn out insincere and neglectful we ought to take revenge for any harm they may cause to us. But there is a more spiritual tone in the saying of Job “shall we take good at God’s hand, and not be content to take evil also ;” and the same holds good to a certain extent in the case of friends from whom if we accept good we must be prepared to accept also evil.

Para. 7. Again, it is a fact that a person who seeks earnestly to compass revenge always keeps the memory of injuries done to him, fresh in his memory and is thus for ever brooding over past wrongs, whereas if he were not so keen on revenge he would forget these injuries and feel all the better for not thinking on them. Acts of vengeance undertaken on public grounds are for the most part successful and those who avenge the assassination of great public men or great rulers themselves prosper by so doing, as was the case with the men who avenged the deaths of Cæsar, Pertinax, or Henry III of France—but those who take revenge merely to satisfy a private grudge, or to indulge their spite against a particular individual do acts of a very different nature—these acts are mischievous, and just like witches who work mischief all their lives, such men end their days in some unfortunate and undesirable manner.

HINTS.

In savage stages of society revenge or retaliation had full play, for, in such societies, there was no law. Might was right, and a person

who was injured by another usually ended by killing the person who had injured him if he had sufficient strength to do so. The extent to which retaliation could be carried became narrowed, when in the course of time, the maxim "an eye for an eye, a tooth for a tooth" came to be recognized as the principle of criminal justice. Here at least was some sense of proportion—the recognition that punishment should be proportioned to the extent or gravity of the offence. The next step in this process of development towards the establishment of criminal law was achieved when the state, rude though it was, permitted persons to redress their own grievances, but strictly under the control of the state, *i. e.*, in accordance with rules it laid down for the guidance of its subjects in such matters. The essential feature of law is that it is coercive and this aspect of law had already begun to assert itself. It was now only a matter of time. As the organization of the state became more and more perfect, as its conception of its own functions became more and more comprehensive so the individual was gradually and by slow steps deprived more and more of his powers to redress his own grievances, until in modern times, the state has taken it exclusively into its own hands to punish for wrongs which have already been inflicted on others. There is still one matter in respect of which an individual may act for himself, but that has reference to a threatened injury, not to an injury already inflicted. But even in relation to self-defence, the limits within which the right may be exercised are considerably narrowed.

ESSAY II. ON TRAVELLING.

[The whole of this essay assumes that travelling is to be regarded, not as an amusement, but as a part of the education of young noblemen and gentlemen—as a luxury of the few, not a relaxation of the many. The difficulties of travel in Bacon's time no doubt excluded from his mind the possibility that the poorer of his fellowmen might also be permitted to share in this boon on account of its educative value. The same reason also prevented Bacon from looking upon travelling as a relaxation—as a source of enjoyment pure and simple].

Page 11.

Para. 1. Travel—*i. e.*, travelling—the going about different countries.

IN—for ; in the case of

Younger sort—the younger people, (in another essay Bacon uses “the greater sort” for ‘the higher classes’)

Is—forms; has the effect of; *i. e.*, it is necessary to complete a liberal education (note—Bacon himself travelled in France before commencing the study of law).

Education—intellectual training.

The elder—older people.

A part of—*i. e.*, forms a part of their.

Experience—the knowledge of the world that has been acquired by living in the world.

Para. 2. That—who

Into—to; in, (*into* carries with it the idea of journeying to the country).

Hath some entrance into—has acquired some knowledge of—(even an elementary knowledge of the language of the country to which a person goes for the purpose of travelling, is regarded by Bacon as sufficient.

School—*i. e.*, a Grammar school, hence to learn the language. (Elementary schools in England where the rudiments of the classics and the modern language are taught are called Grammar Schools.)

Goeth to school—*i. e.*, has much of his time taken up in learning the language, so that he cannot profit much by travel.

And not to travel—*i. e.*, such a person does not derive the full extent of benefit he should from travel.

Para. 3. That—the circumstances that.

Travel—should travel.

Under—under the direction of; in the company of.

Grave—trustworthy.

Allow—(from Lat. *allando*, I praise)—approve. (This world *allow* is different from the word *allow* which means to permit and which is derived from *allocare*, to assign a place to.)

So that—provided that. One—person.

Well—very much.

Hath the language—knows the language well—*c. f.* “hath some entrance into the language.”

Whereby—*i. e.*, by knowing the language and having visited the country before.

Tell—inform.

Worthy to be seen—worth seeing. (from the view of instruction.)

What—of what persons. **Seek**—desire to make.

Exercises—sport; games. **Discipline**—instruction in branches of learning.

Place—the country **Yieldeth**—provides; affords; especially affords

What exercises . . . **yieldeth**—the natives of particular countries are addicted to particular kinds of sport and games, as for example, the English nation to hunting and cricket. Again, certain countries are given more than others to the pursuit of particular branches of learning, for example, Germany, to research in philosophy and Sanskrit. It is these peculiarities that Bacon would have the young traveller pointed out to him.

Else—otherwise.

Hooded—the metaphor is taken from falconry. Hawking was formerly a favourite pastime in England. Hawks were kept hooded till they were let fly against the quarry (the bird to be captured) C. f. Shakespeare Henry V., Act III, Sc. 7 :—" 'Tis a hooded valour."

Go hooded—with their eyes covered, as it were **Abroad**—around them.

Little—but a little; not at all

Look . . . **little**—understand little of what they see around them. If young men are accompanied by tutors or servants who are not already familiar with the language and the interesting things worth observing and studying, they are like hooded hawks, little able to look about by themselves freely, being under the strict guardianship of their tutors or servants and so profit little by their travels.

[Note—(1, In No. 364 of the 'Spectator' Steele ridicules the idea of "taking a lad from grammar and law" and under "a tutor who is willing to be banished for thirty pounds a year and a little victuals," send him to foreign parts.

(2) Dr Johnson's weighty remark deserves to be quoted in this connection. "As the Spanish proverb says, he who would bring whom the wealth of the Indies must carry the wealth of the Indies with him; so it is in travelling: a man must carry knowledge with him, if he would bring home knowledge"—Boswell's life of Johnson, Ch. xxxviii]

Para. 4. Strange—peculiar; odd; exciting ones curiosity. Thing—matter. But—except.

But—on the other hand. Wherein—in which case.

Observed—marked and understood.

For the most part—generally.

Chance—[“A science of meteorology or weather predictions, not dreamt of even in Bacon's *New Atlantic*” (Storr and Gibson)]. Means, accidental circumstances,—such as the sight of land, a man overboard, a heavy gale, a dead calm, rain, &c.

Registered—recorded.

Observation—what they deliberately go to see.

It is a strange.....observation—the reason is not far to seek, on boardships people have very little to do and consequently have ample leisure for diary-writing; and there is little to write, so that there is no difficulty in keeping up the practice. “In land-travel,” there is often a great deal to record, and often little time and energy left to do so after a day's sight seeing; so the diary soon falls into arrears, and is discontinued.

Diaries—note books in which the occurrences of every day are recorded.

Be . . . used—i. e., be kept up.

Para. 5.—Observed—well marked; carefully studied.

Audience—hearing; interview.

Ambassadors—are the representatives of other sovereign princes who are present at the court of any sovereign prince to represent their sovereigns in questions of international importance.

While they sit—while they are engaged in. Causes—cases.

Consistories Ecclesiastic—church councils. Here used in a general sense; but it is often used specially of the council of cardinals—(The place of the adjective is due to the French origin, as in ‘*Heir-apparent*.’)

Monasteries—-an institutions in which bodies of religious men live who have renounced the world and have dedicated themselves to the service of the church and of religion.

Monuments—objects of antiquarian interest.

Therein—in the churches and monasteries, [Of course by churches and monasteries, Bacon means the buildings].

Extant—existing ; preserved. **Walls**—it was usual in ancient times to surround a city by a wall, as for example the great wall round the city of Pekin.

Fortifications—structures for the defence of.

So—similarly ; likewise.

Havens and Harbours—both words mean the same thing, only the word *haven* carries with it the idea more of a natural harbour, the word *harbour*—that of a purely artificial one.

Antiquities—the remains of ancient things.

Disputations—the those days public disputations (or wranglings) were held in universities on theological and philosophical topics. These disputations consisted in candidates for a degree maintaining and opposing a given thesis. An interesting account of such disputations is to be found in Ainsworth's novel, "*Crichton*."

The following passage from Sir Fredrick Pollock's reminiscences is interesting :—"Acts and opponencies to be kept in the university schools were in my time still in existence, and, although shorn of all real significance, were necessary preliminaries to taking the B. A. degree Early in 1835 I had to oppose Colenso as the keeper of an act. The propositions he undertook to maintain were :—

(i) The opinion of Newton in his third section, Bk. I, is correct.

(ii) The opinion of Hamilton in his book on Conic Sections is correct.

(iii) The opinion of Paley on drunkenness is correct.

The two men thus pitted against each other used to meet before hand to arrange their arguments, and usually in the evening at tea given in the room of the men keeping the act. Accordingly I went to Colenso in St. John's College, and we rehearsed together our little farce. In the schools there was no audience except the two men who had to attend for a similar purpose. A moderator presided, and the Act-keeper and opponent mounted a sort of rostrum in succession. A very good argument might provoke from the moderator an *optime disputasti* (you have argued very well), a fair one was dismissed with a *bene disputasti* (you have argued well), and *satis disputasti* (you have argued enough) was the meed of the unfortunate man who failed to play his part in the comedy with credit."

Are—exist.

Shipping—refers to merchant or trading vessels—hence to the state or condition of the commerce of the countries visited.

Navies—the fleets of the different countries and the manner in which they are respectively manned—(*Navies* has exclusive reference to *Ships of war*).

Page 13.

Of state—magnificent ; i. e., for show or magnificence

Pleasure—for pleasure—such as theatres, parks, &c.

Armories—national store-houses of weapons.

Arsenals—public establishment where naval and military engines are manufactured or stored.

Magazines—stores of any kind belonging to the state.

* **Exchanges, Burses**—two names of the same thing ; if there is any difference between these two, it is perhaps this, that the former had rather the meaning of *place* and the latter of *building*. Places and buildings where merchants, brokers, and other sorts of agents meet for the transaction of business.

Ware-houses—godowns.

Exercises of horsemanship—the performance of feats on horse back.

Comédies—plays ; theatres.

Such—of such a class. **Whereunto**—to where. **Short**—kind ; class.

Resort—go. **Cabinets**—room containing curiosities.

Rarities—rare things of all kinds. (Rare—scarce ; things of which a large number are not in existence and which therefore are not common i. e., to be met with every where.)

Conclude—i. e., to end the enumeration.

Whatsoever—whatever.

Memorable—remarkable ; famous. (Worth remembering).

After all which—concerning all such matters and things ; about all such matters and things.

Diligent—careful ; minute. **As for**—as regards.

Triumphs—processions and public shows generally.

Capital executions (corresponding to the '*hanging*' ; of this country) beheading, as a punishment or penalty, capital comes from Lat. *Caput* the head.

Shows—sights ; spectacles. **So**—to so great an extent.

Be put in mind of them—take care to note and to study them.

Neglected—absolutely or entirely overlooked—some attention, though less than to the other more important matters, should be paid to these sights as well.

Para. 6. Will have—strongly desire ; insist on.

To put—to compress Little room—short space. Gather—collect ; learn.

Carry with him—take with him Card—map or chart.

Describing, &c.—guide books or guides as they are now called.

Key—help ; aid Inquiry—*i. e.*, concerning the things of interest to be seen in the country.

In short much—to abridge his travel with much profit ; to collect much matter for their king and remembering within a short space of time.

Para. 7. Long—for a long time In one—in any one particular.

More or less—so long and no longer ; *i. e.*, the period during which he should stay at any town or city must depend on the importance of that town or city. A young man ought not to waste his time by staying at any place longer than it is necessary for him in order that he may see there all that is worth seeing.

Nay—and futher ; even to this extent

Lodging—place of residence. End and part—quarter.

Which is—and this is, *i. e.*, the shifting of ones residence is, &c. Amendment—here means load stone ; *i. e.*, means of attracting acquaintance.

[Adamant from Gk *adamas*, unconquerable, hence, hard. Dr. Abbott supposes that *adamant* came to be applied to loadstone by being confounded with Lat *Adamans*, loving]—hence attractive.

Which is ...acquaintance—which is a very effective way or means of becoming well and quickly acquainted with a town or city.

Sequester—keep himself aloof.

Company—society.

Countrymen—men coming from the same country as himself. Cf. Life Vol. II, p “Restrain your affections and participation from your own countrymen of whatsoever condition.”

Diet—take his meals ; eat his food ; dine.

Places—Bacon is referring to public places for eating meals which are numerous in the big cities of Europe ; restaurants.

Good—enlightened. **Nation**—*i. e.*, of the people of the nation.

Para. 8. Upon—on the occasion of.

Removes—removals. (Rarely now used as a noun in the sense.)
Cf. and drags at each *remove* a lengthening chain. Goldsmith.
Traveller.

His removes—his shiftings.

Procure—secure ; obtain. **Recommendation**—letters recommending him to

• **Quality**—rank. (Bacon always panders to rank and position).

Whither—to which. **Removeth**—removes ; moves to ; goes to.

Page 29.

His—refers to men of quality. **Favour**—influence.

That.....favour—so that he might make use of the letter of introduction kindly given to him.

In—in respect of ; on behalf of ; for the attainment of.

Thus—by these means.

Abridge—cut short the duration of.

Profit—gain to himself ; with most advantage to himself.

Para. 9. Acquaintance—*i. e.*, of men ; of people.

Sought desired ; eagerly wished for.

Most of all—to the greatest degree or extent.

Profitable—from which advantage may be derived.

Employed men—private secretaries, ' attaches.'

So—by this means. **In**—by.

Suck—draw ; derive. Because these men attached to embassies have usually much knowledge of the manners of several foreign countries.

Experience—the knowledge of ; information concerning.

Eminent—great ; famous.

In—we should say *of*.

Kinds—departments.

Are of great name—have a great reputation—*are* famous

Abroad—outside their own country.

Life—the real person—the person as he really is.

Life.....fame—whether they come up to their reputation in point of character and manners.

Para. 10. For—as regards.

Quarrels—So Polonius advises his son Laertes to “beware of entrance into a quarrel”—Hamlet 1. 3.—A quarrel is a disagreement which ends in creating bad feeling between people.

Care—one should, whilst travelling take particular care—(even to the extent of putting himself out in so doing) not to quarrel with any one. Cf. the advice given to Milton when he was starting on his journey to Italy—“thoughts close, countenance open will go safely over the whole world” Pattison, *Life of Milton* E. M. L. S., p. 33.

Discretion—judgment, directed by considerations of prudence or circumspection.

They are commonly for—they principally take place over.

Mistresses—women in general. (Concubines).

Healths—Bacon probably means the refusing to join on the occasion of drinking healths when taking wine. (Like toasts). See the scene in *Cymbeline* where Posthumus pledges his mistress' health. Act 1. sc. 4.

Place—precedence.

Words—i. e., insulting words.

Beware—be careful. **How**—in what manner.

Choleric—(lit. abounding in the humour called *choler* or bile; hence, easily irritated or moved to anger).

Engage him into—entangle him in. At the present day we would use *in* and not *into*.

Para. 11. Traveller—a person who has been travelling.

Returneth home—comes back to his own country.

Leave.....him—break off all connection with the countries, &c.

Maintain—keep up. Continue.

Correspondence—communication (with the men of the foreign countries).

By—by means of.

Letters—the singular, *letter* would be used in modern composition. (Letters means culture as *e. g.*, men of letters).

Which—who.

Worth—worthy.

His travel—i. e., the fact that he has travelled.

Appear rather—be known more from.

Discourse—conversation (which will naturally bring out the experience he has acquired in his travels).

Apparel or gesture—cf. Portias description of the 'young Baron of England': "How oddly he is suited! I think he bought his doublet in Italy, his round hose in France, his bonnet in Germany and his behaviour everywhere."

Gesture—is the posing of the body and the moving about of ones arms and head whilst talking.

And let ..gestures—let the refining influence of his travel appear not in his dress and gestures but in his serious conversation—let him not foolishly imitate the externals of a foreign nation, but rather let him show the refining influence his travels have had on his mind in his conversation.

Rather—exceedingly.

Advised—thoughtful ; discreet ; deliberate.

Answers—replies.

Forward—over anxious ; over keen.

To tell stories—to narrate his experiences abroad. (There is a common belief that travellers are always given to exaggerating what they have seen in foreign countries). Cf. "Liars by a double right, as travellers and as Jesuites." Macaulay Essay on Ranke's history of the Popes.

Appear—be clearly seen or apparent.

Country manners—the manners of his own country (the expression country manners would now mean the manners of the country which are some what rude and rough, as distinguished from the more polished and elaborate manners of town life).

Prick in—introduce ; dovetail, the metaphor seems to be drawn from embroidery. Cf. "pricked them into paper with a pin"—Cowper, receipt of my mothers picture.

Flowers—graces ; desirable things.

That—that which.

Customs—ways and manners.

Analysis of the Essay.

I. If travelling is to be really travelling, and not merely going to a grammar school a young man should travel with some tutor who knows the language and customs of the country.

II. He should keep a diary, and should see every thing worth seeing, from royal courts down to processions and executions.

III. If he has to do much in little time, he must also have a map or guide book ; move from place to place ; shun his own countrymen : seek useful acquaintances ; and visit eminent person.

IV. Quarrel must be avoided.

V. When he has returned home, he should correspond with his foreign friends ; but his travels should appear in his knowledge and in his conversation rather than in his apparel and gestures or manners.

Explanation of the Essay, paragraph by paragraph.

Para. 1. 'Travelling educates the younger people, i. e., it teaches them something new, something of which before they had not even read in books ; on the other hand it enlarges the experience of the elder people by bringing them face to face with, and thus acquainting them at first hand with, conditions institutions and people of whom they possibly had read but did not directly know.

Para. 2. A youngman who visits a foreign country before he has acquired even an elementary knowledge of the language of that country does not benefit at all by his travels because most of his time is taken up in learning the language of the country thus leaving him little time to look about him.

Para. 3. It is desirable that young men should travel under the guidance of some tutor or experienced attendant ; but such tutor or attendant should be a person who knows the language of the country and who has visited the country before so that he may be able to supply information regarding the things which ought to be seen in the countries visited, the people whose acquaintance ought to be made, and the sports, exercises and branches of learning that are peculiar to the country ; unless a young man goes thus accompanied by a person able to enlighten him on these particulars, he goes as it were blind-folded and will derive little benefit from his travels.

Para. 4. It is a curious fact that when voyaging by sea men should make diaries, but should omit to do so when travelling on land. In the course of a sea voyage, accidental occurrences being

excepted, the traveller sees nothing but the sky above him and the water around him whilst, on the other hand, in travelling on land he comes across numberless objects of interest. We should expect therefore that men travelling on land who would see much and therefore have much to record would make diaries. But as a matter of fact they do not. This omission gives one the idea that travellers consider mere accidental occurrences more worthy of being recorded than one's impressions of the more permanent objects of interest to be met with in travelling by land. All travellers, whether they voyage by sea or journey by land, should keep diaries.

Para. 5. Young men who go abroad to travel for the sake of education ought particularly to attend to the courts of princes, especially at such times as they confer with the representatives of foreign sovereigns; to courts of justice when they are sitting to try cases; and to the Synods of churchmen:—to churches, monasteries and the monuments therein; to the walls and fortifications of towns, harbours both natural and artificial; to all antiquities and the ruins of ancient buildings; to libraries colleges and disputations and lectures if any are, at the time, being delivered in the place; to the state of the country's commerce and its navy; to public buildings and gardens, to armories, arsenals, magazines, exchanges, buisess, warehouses and the like; to exercises of horsemanship, fencing and the training of soldiers and so forth. Young men should also go to see the better class of the theatrical performances of the countries they visit. In short, young men should make it a point to see everything memorable in foreign countries and it is the duty of the tutors or servants travelling with them to gather information concerning what is or what is not worth seeing, so that their masters may, the more easily do that for which they have gone. It is not so necessary to witness masks, triumphs, feasts, weddings, funerals, executions, &c.. but these too should not be entirely neglected.

Para. 6. If a young man desire to complete his travel within a short space of time, and in that short period to learn as much as it is possible to learn he must, in the first place, before starting out on his travels acquire some knowledge of the language of the country in which he intends to travel; in the next place the tutor or servant who accompanies him should know that country well and lastly, the young man should take with him a guide book to the country, for such books supply the traveller with much necessary information. If the young man wishes to profit by his travels, he should also keep a diary.

Para. 7. A young man should not stay in any city or town longer than it is necessary for him to do in order to learn such matters concerning it as is the object of his travel. He should even go further, and whilst staying in any place frequently change his residence to different quarters of that town, as change of quarter is a very effective means of acquiring knowledge of a place. He should keep himself aloof from his own countrymen whilst he is abroad, and dine only at such restaurants where he is likely to meet the better classes of the people of the country in which he is travelling.

Para. 8. On removing from one place to another the young man should try to secure letters of introduction to persons of rank residing in the place to which he goes, so that he might make use of such person's influence in securing access to persons and things he desires to know.

Para. 9. With respect to the kind of people whose acquaintance should be cultivated by young men whilst travelling abroad, the most advantageous would be the acquaintance of secretaries and attaches of ambassadors, for, such men having travelled abroad much would be likely to have a wide experience of the men, manners and institutions of different countries; and thus by travelling in one country only the young man would get information concerning many other countries. The young traveller should also visit distinguished persons in all walks of life, especially those whose names have acquired celebrity in countries outside their own—as, by so doing he will find out how far the real person is deserving of his fame.

Para. 10. Whilst travelling abroad quarrelling with others should, as far as possible, be avoided. It is therefore desirable that the young man should know what matters most frequently form the subject of quarrels—they are, women, toasts, precedence, and words. By avoiding friction with others on these matters he will avoid quarrelling. And another caution which should be given to young men travelling abroad is that they should not become friendly with hot-tempered and quarrelsome men for such men have a tendency to drag their friends into their own personal quarrels.

Para. 11. One returning home after his travels the young man should not cut off all connection with the countries he has visited and the people whose acquaintance he had made abroad—but he should, on the other hand, keep up a correspondence by letter with such of his foreign acquaintances as are most worthy. The young man should show that he has travelled in his conversation which

should be enlightened by his travels and not in his dress or gestures acquired abroad. And further in conversing he should be grave and serious and not over anxious to communicate his experiences. Nor should young men on returning home after their travels abandon entirely the manners and customs of their native country and adopt these of foreign parts; they should rather dovetail into the ways of their own country that which is best in the ways of foreigners.

HINTS, &c.

Travelling for its own sake is quite a recent idea, for it is only recently that facilities have been afforded for travel. The steamship and the railway, carry persons to all parts of the world in such comfort as the traveller is able to pay for. The Telegraph has provided him with a means of communicating with whomever he likes and at any distance away within the shortest possible time. These facilities were not available in Bacon's time and hence his inability to grasp the fact that travelling may be a relaxation as well as a medium of instruction. A great impulse was given to travelling by the crusades, when men from all parts of Europe assembled on Asiatic soil to fight the cause of Christianity against Mahomedanism. An assembly of men from such distant and different parts of the European continent could not but prove a source of enlightenment. Mens minds were widened, their views expanded and they became more liberal. It was not long before this was observed throughout Europe. Men began to know their fellow men from foreign parts better than they had known them before. With better acquaintance many of the narrow social and national prejudices began to disappear. From the time of the crusades the idea that travelling is a means of education has become completely established.

ESSAY III. OF DELAYS.

The Antitheta are—

For.

Against.

- | | |
|--|--|
| 1. Fortune often sells to haste
what she gives without price
to delay. | 1. Opportunity gives you first the
jug's handle, but afterwards
the belly. |
|--|--|

*For.**Against.*

- | | |
|--|--|
| <p>2. While we hasten to grasp the beginnings of things, we clutch at shadows.</p> <p>3. While things are wavering, watch; when they turn, act.</p> <p>4. In actions the beginnings should be entrusted to Argus of the hundred eyes, the ends to Brivus of the hundred hands.</p> | <p>2. Opportunity like the sibyl, lowers her offers and raises her prices.</p> <p>3. Speed is the helmet of Plato, (<i>i. e.</i>, the invisible cap.)</p> <p>4. When one acts betimes, one can act like a judge; but when one is late in action, one must act like a courtier.</p> |
|--|--|

NOTES.
Page 14.

Para. 1. Like—may be compared to

Market—*i. e.*, the open market, where articles are brought and sold under conditions of free competition.

Fortune.....market—*Cf.* Shakespeare.

“There is a tide in the affairs of men,
Which, taken at the flood, leads on to fortune.
Omitted, all the voyage of their life
Is bound in shallows and in miseries.”

Where—in which market. **Many times**—often. **Stay**—wait.

Fall—*i. e.*, will be reduced; come down.

Fortune is like**fall**—just as a man who is anxious to secure a new article recently put upon the market, must purchase it at a high price, and another, who patiently waits, purchases the same article at a much cheaper rate when the demand for it decreases and the supply thereof increases,—so a man is favoured by fortune when he patiently watches and waits for a suitable opportunity. If he is impatient he will secure the same advantage at a much greater sacrifice.

[In a market where competition has free play, price depends upon demand and supply. If the demand is great price is high, if the demand falls off the price also falls. When a new article is introduced into the market, if the article is one which is serviceable, at first the demand is universal because every one wants the article, and the price is liable to be high. After the lapse of a

little time (delay) people's wants are satisfied and the demand falls off and with it the price also. This can best be illustrated by quoting the case of bicycles. When they were first introduced into the market their price was high, now the price has fallen to half what it was ten years ago.]

It—i. e., fortune.

Sybilla—the old woman who came to king Targuinus Priscus with nine volumes of Sybilline Verses (alleged to contain an account of the future history of Rome), and demanded an exorbitant price for them. The king refused ; and then she went away, burnt three of the volumes, and brought the remaining six for which, however, he demanded the same price. After a second refusal, she burnt three more, and asked the same price again for the three that remained. The strangeness of her conduct led the king to purchase the books this time out of curiosity. The Books were taken great care of by the Romans. The story however is now generally rejected as mythical. *Bacon means* "It often happens that if you neglect the proper opportunity; you may have to contend yourself with much humbler fortune than was once within your reach and have to secure it with equal pains or at the same cost."

At first—on the first occasion ; in the beginning.

At full—the whole of the commodity.

Consumeth—destroyeth (destroys).

Part—i. e., of the commodity.

Still—always ; each time.

Holdeth up—keeps ; demands the same price as before.

And again.....price—and again, on the other hand, if a man neglects to avail himself of the opportune moment, he may afterwards have to accept, to his regret, a much humbler lot than might otherwise have been possible for him to be favoured with, and that, at the same amount of pains and sacrifice, in the same way as Tarquinius Superbus had to purchase the 3 prophetic volumes out of nine offered for sale to him by the Sibyl at the same price as was originally demanded by her for the entire number.

For—because.

Occasion—opportunity. **Is**—is stated.

Common—commonly ; usually ; generally.

As it.....verse—as it is usually represented in poetry.

The common verse—the reference may be to *Adagia*, p. 687, ed. Grynaeus. Grynaeus was a Swabian by birth. He was born towards the end of the 15th century. He was well-known as a scholar and a theologian. (Selby).

Turneth—presents.

Bald—bare; with no hair on it to catch hold of.

Noddle—handle—The word has become vulgar now.

No hold taken—i.e. after she has presented her locks and found that no hold is taken of them. "Taken" depends upon "has." If we ever let slip an opportunity it may never recur.

Cf. Southwell's *Loss in delays*—

"Time wears all his locks before,
Take thou hold upon his forehead;
When he flies he turns no more,
And behind his scalp is naked.

Also cf. Spensers F. Q. ii, 4. 4.

"Her locks that loathly were and hoarie gray.
Grew all afore, and loosely hong unroid;
But all behind was bald and worne away.
That none thereof could ever taken hold."

For occasion ... taken—opportunity, as she is described in the proverbial verse, has long locks of hair on her forehead but none on the back part of her head, and thus symbolises the fact that if she is not seized, when she first presents herself. She can no more be seized once she turns away.

Of—attached to. First—in the first instance.

After—afterwards. Body—i.e. of the bottles—the thick portion. The ancient bottles were made of leather and were short-necked, and therefore provided with handles.

Hard—difficult. Clasp—catch hold of: grasp.

Or at least clasp—or if the matter stands not exactly thus, it may be at least said of opportunity, that if not seized at the right moment, is hard to catch hold of when she is gone, &c.

Para. 2. Surely—to be sure; indeed; in fact. Well—properly.

Beginnings—the commencement—not of dangers but of meeting dangers and generally of actions.

Onsets—now, only the beginning of a combat, but here, as in shakespeare, of taking the initiative generally.

More light—less serious. Once—in the beginning.

Seem—appear. More—i.e., a larger number of.

Deceived—i.e., taken men unawares than overpowered them with their eyes open.

Forced—overwhelmed; crushed by sheer force.

Better—advisable; more prudent. Some—certain kinds of.

Meethalf way—to anticipate and provide before hand against.

Though—although; even though.

Nothing—used adverbially; not all.

Come.....near—have not yet appeared; have not yet presented themselves.

Too long—for too long a time. Watch—lookout for.

Approaches—appearance—i. e., expecting their appearance. (The meaning is that we should act and prepare for meeting dangers, and not merely sit still expecting dangers to appear and act only when the dangers are upon us).

Odds—the chances are that; the chances are in favour of his falling asleep.

Para. 3. On the other side—on the other hand.

Long shadows—premature anticipations of evil; fancying dangers near when really they are distant.

Some—some people.

Moon—probably a general illustration, at any rate the particular reference is not known (Storr and Gibson).

Low—near the horizon (so as to cast long shadows). It is well-known that moonlight is very deceptive, and frequently causes illusions of the eye.

Shone on—i. e., the moonlight fell on.

Over early, &c.—prematurely preparing or going forward to meet them.

Buckling—preparing to meet them; to invite dangers by premature preparations.

Another extreme—a fatal error of the opposite kind.

[Aristotle in speaking of the 'virtues' says that the right thing to do is always a mean between the extremes].

Para. 4. Ripeness—propriety. Occasion—time. Ever—always.

Well—carefully. Weighed—considered. Commit—entrust.

Great—important; having momentuous consequences.

Argus—a monster whom Hera (or Juno) appointed to watch a maiden who had been transformed into a cow.

Briareus—was a famous giant, when a conspiracy was formed in Heaven to dethrone Jupiter this giant went and sat near him and frightened all the conspirators away.

Ends—the completions.

And generally.....**speed**—generally it may be laid down as a piece of sound advice that it is good to entrust the inception of an important undertaking to one's cool circumspection or vigilance whereas the execution of it ought to be left to an all-round activity.

Pluto—the God of Hell who had a helmet which rendered the wearer invisible (The myths of the invisible cap are said to have been originated by the phenomena of a cloud).

For—because Bacon introduces a comparison by the use of '*for*.'

Page 16.

The politic man—the politician. **Go**—work.

Invisible—in such a manner that his plans cannot be known by others.

Council—deliberations.

Celerity—swiftness; rapidity.

Execution—the carrying out of a plan or design.

Come to—arrived at the stage of; are ready for.

Motion, &c.—the simile is a very fine one. **In**—through.

Flieth—travelleth; moveth. **As**—that.

Outruns the eye—that the eye cannot follow its course.

~ Analysis of the Essay.

1. It depends on circumstances, whether one should wait, or take advantage of the present opportunity.

2. It is best to be prepared for a danger; but if one waits too long he may grow careless.

3. It is wise to foresee all dangers; but when a thing has to be executed, there is no secrecy so effective as swiftness.

EXPLANATION.

Para. 1. Fortune may be compared to a market. Just as in a market if only you can wait a little to buy your wares you will find that the price for them will fall, so, if you only can wait for a favourable opportunity you will find that your desires will be achieved at a small cost. Again Fortune at one time offers you a full advantage which if you fail to avail yourself of in time, you have to accept something inferior by paying the same price as for the more valuable thing. Opportunity, as the common saying goes, can be seized only at an opportune moment, if not then seized it is gone for ever. And after the proper opportunity is gone one finds much more difficulty in obtaining those things which he desired to obtain than he would otherwise have done.

Para. 2. We cannot be wiser in anything than when to know when to begin things or when to end them. Dangers are no more light if they once seemed light, and more dangers have deceived men than forced them. Nay, it were better to meet some dangers half way, though they come near nothing, than to keep too long a watch upon their approaches, for if a man watch too long he will most probably fall asleep.

Para. 3. On the one side to be deceived with too long shadows, as some have been when the moon was low and shone on their enemy's backs, and so to shoot off before the time; or to teach dangers to come on, by over-early buckling towards them, is another extreme.

Para. 4. The ripeness or unripeness of the occasion, as we said, must ever be well-weighed, and generally it is good to commit the beginnings of all good actions to Argus with his hundred eyes and to Baiareus with his hundred hands, first to watch and then to speed. For the helmet of Pluto, which maketh the public man go invisible, is secrecy in council and celerity in execution. For when things are once come to the execution there is no secrecy comparable to celerity, like the motion of a bullet in the air, which flieth so swift as it out runs the eye.

ESSAY IV. OF STUDIES.

[This is one of the most famous of the "*Essays*," remarkable for its sterling good sense, wit, and marvellous condensation of thought. Many of the thoughts in this essay are worked up at

great length by Bacon in his *Advancement of Learning*. 'Studies' as Bacon uses the word, is almost synonymous with 'Reading,' and a second title of this essay might run "what to read and how to read it"

In his *Advancement of Learning*. Book I, Bacon thus enlarges on the three chief varieties in studies which have brought disgrace on learning—(1) Fantastical learning, the hunting more after words and phrases than after the weight of the matter. (2) Contentious learning, the minute distinctions of the schoolman. (3) Delicate learning, the classicalities of the Renaissance. He then analyses the peccant humours, or defects of learned men. The chief of these is "a kind of adoration of the mind and understanding of men; by means whereof men have withdrawn themselves too much from the contemplation of nature, and the observations of experience, and have tumbled up and down in their own conceits." A learned commentator has remarked that it would betray a want of historical perspective to criticise Bacon from a modern stand point, but we may fairly point out that the founder of experimental philosophy only half realized the scope and bearing of his own principles, and was still half in bondage to the *idol* of the book.]

NOTES.

Page 16.

Para. 1. Studies—The Latin Version has "*Studia et lectiones librorum*" (Studies and the reading of books)—This shows that Bacon here uses the word in the restricted meaning of the Study of books. In a wider sense, the meaning would be, 'the habit of reading and its results.'

Serve for—provide; supply.

Delight—pleasure.

Ornament—to show a man to advantage.

For ability—i. e., to make men able (to conduct worldly affairs); for help in business (Cf. the Latin Version).

Their chief use for—they best provide.

Privateness and retiring—Seclusion and retirement; solitude and a retired life—a life spent far from the "madding crowd's ignoble strife" (as Bacon spent the latter part of his life when in disgrace).

For—they best secure. Is in—by.

Discourse—not only conversation but also writing.

And for ability—they best disclose.

Judgment.....business—arriving at correct conclusions in the affairs of daily life, and adopting the proper means of giving effect to those conclusions.

Disposition—disposing of ; conducting properly.

For—because. Expert men—men of experience ; i. e., men who have learned from experience only, without any knowledge of theory.

Execute—conduct ; perform. Judge of—think correctly about.

Particulars —details of business. One by one—one at a time ; singly.

General counsels—wise principles are maxims for the guidance of affairs generally.

Plots—planning ; contriving.

Marshalling—organizing ; disposing methodically.

Affairs—business in general ; concerns ; matters.

Come—proceed ; are done best by.

Learned—It was a saying with Bacon that a true philosopher could imitate the practical hawk as well as the soaring lark.

Comelearned—Cf. the following passage from *the Advancement of Learning*—"under learned princess and governors there have been ever the best times ; for if they be illuminate by learning they have those notions of religion, policy and morality which do preserve and refrain them from all ruinous and peremptory errors, whispering evermore in their ears, when counsellors and servants stand mute and silent " (The truth of this statement Bacon illustrates by several historical instances).

Para. 2. To spend, &c.—a paradox, or we might call it an oxymoron.

Is—amounts to ; is indicative of a slothful disposition.

Sloth—In the *Advancement of Learning*, Bacon, disproves the vulgar opinion that learning naturally inclines men to sloth in matters of business. Addiction to frivolous or desultory reading is spoken of at the present day, as a kind of "intellectual dissipation " —Bacon would have a man not only read but also observe (sloth=laziness.)

Is sloth—amounts to laziness.

To use—to make use of. Them—the information derived from studies or reading

Affectation—vanity ; idle display ; pedantry.

To make judgment—to arrive at conclusions on matters

Their rules—the principles arrived at by studies.

Cf. "the bookish theoric"—Othello 1. 1.

Humour—eccentric disposition ; peculiar temper or characteristic ; the foible ; the whim.

Scholar—one who gives himself up entirely to reading—Bacon means one who is devoid of practical knowledge and versed only in Book learning.

Is . . . scholar—is the peculiar temperament of one who is a mere scholar.

Para. 3. **Crafty men**—men of practical ability ; almost synonymous with "Expert men above." Such men condemn studies in the belief that their practical experience and ingenuity can supply the place of theoretical knowledge—[Prof. Selby interprets crafty as meaning what we now understand by the word, *i. e.*, cunning—but it is more probable that Bacon meant by the word, in agreement with the ancient use of the word *craft*, for an occupation—what we commonly call *practical men* ; those expert in the details of business, and exclusively conversant in these.]

Contemn—look with contempt upon.

Crafty . . . studies—"such men affect to despise what they themselves are wanting in ; and they attach undue importance to those "points of cunning" which learned men are ashamed to stoop to."

Simple men—include both the ignorant, who like Goldsmith's villagers stand agape at the schoolmaster's learning, and the theoretical scholar whose world is his library

Admire—wonder at (in a blind, foolish way, as something supernatural).

Them—*i. e.*, studies, hence theoretical learning.

Use—*i. e.*, make use of their theoretical knowledge.

For they . . . use—more book-learning will not teach you how to apply your theoretical knowledge to the conduct of practical affairs which is really the use one should make of book-learning.

Without—outside, i. e., not to be acquired by the mere reading of books.

That is a wisdom, &c.—To know how to apply our book-knowledge to the concerns of life, is a kind of wisdom which is independent of books and superior to mere book-lore; that wisdom has to be acquired by observing men and things. (This idea is expanded into several pages in Blackie's *Self-culture*).

Won—gained. By—by means of **Observation—**experience of the world.

They—studies. Perfect—make perfect; develop.

Nature—natural abilities. **And are—i. e.,** and studies are.

Perfected by experience—i. e., a man cannot turn his studies to worldly use, except by means of experience.

Experience—practical knowledge of the affairs of the world.

They perfect, &c.—The meaning is clear, but for the sake of the epigrammatic form Bacon in the co-ordinate sentence lets "studies" stand for the mind trained by studies.

For—because. Pruning—removing defects by culture (Lit. cutting off the excrescences or superfluous branches).

By—by means of. **Study—**reading.

[Note—"Bacon might have continued the simile by adding "manuring," but he insists here on the corrective discipline of studies to balance the corresponding statement about experience." The parallel is somewhat forced. Books are, as it were, bottled experience, though it is quite true that the student when he comes to put his book-learning into practice finds much to modify, much that will not work; but he enlarges even more than he prunes and corrects his theoretical knowledge.]

Studies—i. e., the mind trained by studies. **Give forth—**provide and supply.

Give forth directions—Give vague and general instructions.

Too much at large—too vague; in terms too general.

Except they be—unless they be. **Bounded in—**Limited; corrected—Selby remarks that English people have a special horror of "doctrinaire" politicians.

Para. 4. Read not to—do not read in order that you may be enabled to—your motive for reading should not be that reading will enable you to, &c.

Contradict—maintain the opposite of what another asserts.

Confute—prove others to be wrong—the reference is perhaps to the study of Aristotelian logic to which so great an importance was attached in the Middle ages.

Believe and take for granted—unhesitatingly accept opinions and facts out of respect for authority.

Page 17.

Find talk—to show off your knowledge in the course of conversation.

Discourse—discussion ; argument.

Weigh—ponder carefully ; think over the subject with a view to finding out whether the opinions you find in books are sound or not.

Para. 5. Tasted—Bacon himself explains this lower down as “read only in parts.”

Swallowed—hastily read through. Some few—and only a few.

Chewed and digested—Cf. the collect for the second Sunday in Advent, “Read, mark, learn, and inwardly digest”—means read carefully, with attention and diligence.

Curiously—carefully ; with great care

[“It would have been well if Bacon had added some hints as to the mode of study ;—how *books* are to be *cheered*, etc. For besides inattentive readers who measure their proficiency by the pages they have gone over. it is quite possible, and not uncommon, to read most laboriously, even so as to get by heart the words of a book, without really studying it at all :—that is without employing the thoughts on the subject [Whately].

Wholly—entirely ; i. e., the whole book through.

Diligence—care and attention.

Para. 6. By Deputy—at second hand.

By others—i. e., by other people—you yourself reading only the extracts. **That**—i. e., reading at second hand.

Would be—should be ; ought to be.

In—in connection with ; with respect to.

Arguments—subject.

Meaner—less important. **Sort**—kind.

Else—for the reason that : because.

Distilled books—Analyses, abridgments, catechisms of books ; so called because the essence of a thing is extracted by the process of distillation.

Common—ordinary.

Flashy—vapid ; tasteless ; dull.

Para 7. Full—*i. e.*, full of wisdom—*i. e.*, by reading, a man gains knowledge.

Conference—discourse ; conversation.

Ready—*i. e.*, by conversation we become enabled to command or have ready at hand our knowledge.

Exact—habitually correct.

[Note—‘ conference ’ as well as ‘ writing ’ are spoken of here as hand-maids to study. By conversing about what has been read, a man acquires the power of readily using his knowledge, and by writing—*i. e.*, making extracts and notes of what one has read, a man’s knowledge becomes definite and exact, instead of being vague.

And therefore—*i. e.*, it follows from this.

Write little—Seldom make abstracts of the books he reads.

He had need have—it would be necessary for him to have.

Great—very retentive.

Confer—discuss with others

Present wit—a ready wit ; presence of mind ; an intelligence very active and alert

Cunning—artfulness ; craftiness. **To**—in order that he may.

Seem to—appear to others to.

That he doth not—that which he does not in fact know.

Para. 8. **Histories**—books on history, *i. e.*, the reading of history.

Wise—here practical wisdom or wisdom in conducting practical affairs is meant.

Poets—*i. e.*, the readings of the works of poets—hence poetry.

Witty—the power of hitting upon happy analogies and illustration ; ingenious ; imaginative. Cf. Prior.

“ In gentle verse the witty told their flame,
And graced their choicest songs with Emma’s name.”

Subtle—of keen intellect ; sharp.

Natural philosophy—what we would now call Natural Science.

Moral—*i. e.*, moral philosophy, (not only ethics but also logic and metaphysics).

Grave—serious.

Contend—argue ; engage successfully in disputations.

Abeunt studia in mores—studies pass into character—*i. e.*, character is moulded by studies

Stond—hinderance, *i. e.*, an intellectual defect.

Impediment—obstruction ; defect. **Wit**—intelligence.

Wrought out—worked out, *i. e.*, cured. All defects in one's intelligence may be cured by the study of appropriate subjects.

Fit—appropriate—certain intellectual defects can be cured by the study of certain subjects.

Like as—just like ; in the same way as.

Diseases of the body—illnesses.

May have—*i. e.*, have.

Appropriate—*i. e.*, each illness has its peculiar treatment ; proper.

Exercises—treatment.

Bowling—playing at the game of bowls, a game which was the favourite exercise of Englishmen in Bacon's time.

Para. 9. So—in case if.

Wit—mind.

Wandering—wanting in concentration, or the power of fixing the attention on a subject for any length of the time.

Let him study—*i. e.*, he should study, for the study will gradually increase his power of concentration.

The mathematics—*i. e.*, the Science of mathematics.

Demonstrations—deductive proof. Arriving at conclusions deductively from premises.

Wit.....away—attention be withdrawn or distracted.

Never so little—ever such a little ; even to a small extent.

Begin again—commence the process of reasoning afresh.

Wit—intelligence.

Note apt to—(apt-ready)—be dull in the making out of distinctions.

The schoolmen—this name was given to a class of philosophers in the middle ages. Speaking generally, the scholastic philosophy was an application of the logic of Aristotle to the development and explanation of the doctrines of Christianity. It lasted from the 9th to the 14th century.

Cymini sectores—hair splitters. This Latin phrase¹ usually meant however 'a parsimonious or miserly person.' The Emperor Antoninus received this epithet because of his careful expenditure of public money. Cf.—

" In logic he (Sir Hudibras) was a great critic,
 Profoundly skilled in analytic ;
 He could distinguish and divide ;
 A hair 'twixt south and south-west side.'

Butler's Hudibras.

Page 18.

Apt to—able to.

Beat over—to take a wide sweep of the field of knowledge (a metaphor from beating a cover)

Call up—recall.

Lawyer's cases—i. e., the law reports, in which are to be found the arguments of advocates and the decisions of judges.

Defect of the mind—mental defect.

Special—appropriate.

Receipt—remedy.

Analysis of the Essay.

I. **Use of studies**—i—for delight, in retirement

ii—for ornament, in discourse

iii—for ability, in business, especially in planning, giving general directions, &c., though expert men excel in details.

II. **Abuses**—i—to spend too much time in study is sloth.

ii—to use them too much for ornament is pedantry.

iii—to be guided in business solely by them, is a scholarly whim. The rules got at by study should be modified by experience.

- III. Studies are regarded—i—with contempt by the crafty
 ii—and admiration by fools
 iii—but they are used by the wise,—
 their proper use depending upon
 observation.

- IV. How books } i—not to contradict, to take for granted,
 are to be used } or to find talk—but to weigh
 , ii—Different books are to be differently
 used, i. e., either.
 (a) tasted
 (b) swallowed
 (c) chewed and digested, or
 (d) read at second hand—the
 “manner sort” only.

- V. Modes of study—i—reading, for acquiring information
 ii—conversation, for readiness.
 iii—writing, to attain exactness

- VI. Different branches } i—History makes men wise
 of study } ii—Poetry makes men witty
 iii—Mathematics makes men
 subtle.
 iv—Natural Philosophy makes
 men deep
 v—Moral Philosophy makes men
 weighty in opinions
 iv—Logic and Rhetoric makes
 men disputations
 vii—The Scholastic Philosophy
 teaches hair splitting differ-
 ences.

Different studies correct different defects of the mind.

Explanation of Essay IV.

Para. 1. Study gives us delight when we are in retirement, it enables us to show ourselves off to advantage in our conversation with others and it assists us in conducting with ability our worldly affairs. Mere skill gained by doing some particular thing repeatedly, though it may be helpful in directing the details of any business, is of no avail when we are required to form schemes and plans in general, or when we are called upon to organize any affair. This can be done only by men who are versed in general principles, a knowledge which can only be gained by study.

Para. 2. Studies perfect one's natural abilities, and in its turn book learning is perfected by actual contact with the world. Therefore, to devote too much time to the reading of books and not sufficient time to the observation of the actual world is indicative of an indolent disposition. Again, one should not make too great a show of his book learning for that would amount to pedantry; nor should he judge all things only by the principles he has read of in books, for in so doing, he would show that he has no experience of the actual world, and hence that he has neglected 'observation.' Natural abilities are like natural plants and just as the more delicate of the latter are liable to be killed by the grosser kinds, if these grosser kinds are not weeded out, so natural abilities are liable to deteriorate and grow rusty if not constantly exercised by study. Further, study alone is not sufficient, for the knowledge derived from the reading of books is not practical and is of too general and vague a character to be of any use in the conduct of the affairs of actual life—our book learning must be supplemented by observation which will give us experience.

Para. 3. "Experts" affect to despise book learning for in it they are themselves wanting, and they attach undue importance to those "points of cunning" which learned men are ashamed to stoop to; uneducated persons wonder at the knowledge which study imparts; wise men, by reason of their wisdom, make use of the knowledge they have derived from the reading of books; for mere reading itself cannot teach one what use is to be made of the knowledge thus acquired—this can only be learned through observation and experience.

Para. 4. A person should not read a book with the determination of disputing and disproving everything he reads in the book; nor should he be inclined to accept blindly every thing he reads merely out of respect for authority, but he should weigh and bestow thought on whatever he reads so that he may judge for himself what ought to be accepted and what rejected. Again, a person should not read for the sole purpose of acquiring information in order that he may be enabled thereby to carry on discussions with others—this is not the proper object of study.

Para. 5. As regards the manner of reading books, some books are only to be glanced through, others to be read through hastily whilst only a few need to be thoroughly digested by being read with great care, thought and attention.

Para. 6. Some books may also be read at second hand, *i. e.*, through the medium of abridgments or epitomes made of them by

others. But only less important books ought to be read in this manner through epitomes because, all books lose their flavour and charm when abridged just as water after distillation becomes most insipid.

Para. 7. By reading, a man acquires knowledge and becomes well informed; by conversation and discussion he is enabled to command and have ready at his finger's tips the learning he possesses; the habit of making summaries and analyses of the books he reads will make his knowledge accurate, for in making analyses, ideas and thoughts which would otherwise have escaped his notice will be forced upon his attention. All three, reading, conferring and writing are necessary for proficiency. If, therefore, a man should not have acquired the habit of making summaries of what he reads, he must, in order to be proficient, necessarily have a very retentive memory; and so also in the case of the man who confers but little, he must have a very ready wit. But nothing except that cunning which can deceive others into a belief of the existence of that which does not exist can make up for the want of reading, since it is by reading alone that we become possessed of learning and knowledge — discussion and writing merely enable one to make the most of what he knows.

Para. 8. History teaches practical wisdom, poetry develops the imagination, mathematics sharpens the intellect, natural science produces profoundness, moral science seriousness, and logic and rhetoric impart skill in the ability to argue effectively. Our studies appear in or manners by passing into our character. Therefore there is no limitation or defect of the understanding which cannot be removed by the study of appropriate branches of learning, i.e., branches of learning which are adopted to cure those particular defects just as particular medicines are adopted to cure particular ailments of the body. Again, just as playing bowls is good for the spine, shooting for the lungs and breast, gentle walking for the stomach, riding for the head, so particular branches of study are calculated to remove particular mental deficiencies.

Para. 9. If the particular mental defect a person is suffering from be that he cannot concentrate his attention on any particular matter, he ought to devote himself to the study of mathematics, for where deductive reasoning is concerned, if the attention wanders away ever such a little from the particular chain of reasoning under consideration, the whole process will have to be commenced over again. This feature will supply an inducement why every possible endeavour ought to be made to concentrate attention. Thus the

mind will be trained into the habit of attending to the matters presented to it. Again, if the particular mental deficiency be a dulness in making out distinctions, the scholastic philosophy with its tendency to the drawing of hair splitting distinctions ought to be studied to remove the defect. If the deficiency be an inability to take a comprehensive view of things the proper subject of study is the reports of cases decided in courts of law for, by reading the arguments of counsels and the judgments of judges wherein comprehensive views of the points for determination will be found the reader will be trained into an ability to do the same for himself.

RICHARD STEELE.

Life.

Sir Richard Steele, a celebrated essayist, was born at Dublin, in 1671. His father, a barrister, acted in the capacity of Private Secretary to the Duke of Ormoud. Richard received his education at the Charter-House in London, and afterwards at Merton College, Oxford. From thence he obtained a commission in the Guards. In 1702 Steele commenced his career as a dramatic writer with the production of his comedy "*The funeral of Grief a la mode*," which met with great success. This play was followed by the "*Tender Husband*" and the "*Lying Lovers*"; but his best dramatic work was the "*conscious lovers*" acted in 1722. In 1709 Steele began the *Tattler* a periodical paper, in which he had the assistance of Addison, as he also had in the *spectator* and *Guardian*: the former started in 1711 and the latter in 1713. His reputation as a writer procured him the place of commissioner of the Stamp office. This post Steele resigned on being chosen member for Stockbridge. For writing two pamphlets, called the *English man* and the *crisis* he was soon afterwards expelled from the house of commons, which, says Lord Mahon, "was a fierce and most unwarrantable stretch of party violence." After the accession of George I, in 1715, Steele received the honour of Knighthood, was appointed surveyor of the stable at Hampton court, and governor of the royal company of comedians. He was also returned to Parliament for Boroughbridge, in Yorkshire, and made one of the Commissioners of the forfeited estates in Scotland. A distinguished critic observes of Sir Richard Steele, that he was a "man of undissembling and extensive benevolence. His works are chaste and manly. He was a stranger to the most distant appearance of envy or malevolence, never jealous of any man's growing to reputation, and so far from arrogating any praise

to himself from his conjunction with Addison, that he was the first who desired him to distinguish his papers. His great fault was want of economy ; and it has been said of him, " that he was certainly the most agreeable and the most innocent rake that entered the rounds of dissipation " Steele died near Carmarthen in 1729.

Estimate of Steele as a writer.

" The great charm of Steele's writing is its naturalness. He wrote so quickly and carelessly, that he was forced to make the reader his confidant, and had not the time to deceive him. He had a small share of book learning but a vast acquaintance with the world. He had known men and taverns. He had lived with gownsmen, with troopers, with gentlemen ushers of the court, with men and women of fashion, and with the frequenters of all the clubs and coffee houses in the town. He was not of those lonely ones of the earth whose greatness obliges them to be solitary ; on the contrary, he was admired, I think more than any man who ever wrote. He had a relish for goodness and beauty wherever he met it. He admired Shakespeare affectionately, and more than any other man of his time ; and, according to his generous expansive nature, called upon his company, to like what he liked himself. He did not damn with faint praise."

Steele compared with Addison.

Addison was reserved, calm, prudent, frugal, gentle and very fond of books. Steele was garrulous, vivacious, capricious, extravagant and mischievous. Steele lacked the refined ideas of Addison.

" Steele seems to have gone into his closet chiefly to set down what he observed out of doors. Addison seems to have spent most of his time in his study and to have spun out and wiredrawn the hints which he borrowed from Steele, or took from nature, to the utmost. I am far from wishing to depreciate Addison's talents, but I am anxious to do justice to Steele who was, I think, upon the whole, a less artificial and mere original writer. The humorous descriptions of Steele resemble loose sketches or fragments of a comedy those of Addison are rather comments or ingenious paraphrases of the genuine text. Several of the incidents related by Steele have never been surpassed in the heart-rending pathos of private distress. Addison's moral essays are exquisitely beautiful and quite happy. His critical essays are not quite so good. I prefer Steele's occasional selection of beautiful poetical passages, without any affection of analysing their beauties to Addison's fine-spun theories. Hazlitt, on periodical essayist.

State of English Society and Literature during the times of Addison and Steele—

The era of Addison and Steele "was a period when literary state was at its lowest ebb among the middle and fashionable classes of England. The amusements, when not merely frivolous, were either immoral or brutal. Gambling, even among women, was frightfully prevalent; and the sports of the men were marked with a general stamp of cruelty and of an indulgence in drunkenness which could be well called villainous. In such a state of things intellectual pleasures and acquirements were regarded either with wonder or contempt. The fops and fine ladies actually prided themselves on their ignorance of spelling, and any allusion to books was scouted as pedantry." Such was the disease which Addison and Steele tried to cure with the doses of good sense, good taste, and pleasing morality with which their essays abound.

Steele and Addison as joint-contributors to the *spectator*.

Addison contributed in all 274 papers to the *spectator* as against Steeles 236. Addison's papers were, as a rule, signed with one of the four letters C. L. I. O., either because, as Tickell seems to hint in his elegy they composed the name of one of the muses, or as more recent scholars have conjectured, because they were respectively written from four different localities, *viz.* Chelsea, London, Islington, and the office.

ESSAY V.

ALEXANDER SELKIRK.

[In this essay Steele describes the life of a man who was sent ashore on a lonely island. How at first life was intolerable, how it gradually became natural to him to be alone, cut off from the society of his fellows, and how when he finally quitted the lonely island for his home and the companionship of men, his heart yearned with longing for the surroundings and the conditions with which he had become so familiar. The story, if it has a moral at all, may have been intended to teach that life in any state may become tolerable, nay, agreeable, if we will but accept our lot and adapt ourselves to it. Kicking against circumstances is of no avail].

Page 18.

NOTES.

Para. 1. Title—heading; name. Paper—Essay.

Think—regard. Foreign to—out of keeping with. Design—plan.

To speak of—to treat of ; to deal with the subject of.

Her majesty's—*i. e.*, Queen Anne's.

Dominions—territories. Relate—narrate ; tell of.

Adventure—uncommon event.

Uncommon—unusual.

The like—another adventure like the one I am going to relate.

Other—other member ; other person. Of—belonging to.

Familiar to—known to.

Men of curiosity—men who take an interest in finding out what is going on in the world.

From—on account of.

Fame—reputation ; information well circulated.

Alone—*i. e.*, there being no human being on the island.

Juan Fernandez—“ the name is strictly applied to a small group of islands some distance from the east coast of Chili.

Para. 2. I had the pleasure—I had the pleasant experience.

To converse—of talking with.

Curiosity—interest.

It . . . curiosity—it was very interesting.

Hear him—Listen to him.

As he is—because he is. The fact that the man was a very sensible man excluded the possibility of his talking nonsense, and his narrative of his experiences was therefore all the more interesting.

Give an account of—tell of.

Different—the various ; several.

Revolutions—alteration ; changes.

Revolutionsmind—changes in his attitude towards his surroundings.

In that—during the course of that.

Long solitude—lonely existence extending over a long period of time, *i. e.*, four years and four months.

Consider—think ; reflect on.

When we consider—realizing.

How painful—of what painful a nature the experience is.

Company--the society of.

Space--length But--only

Generality--i. e., the average run

We maysense—we may be able to understand; we may be able to comprehend; we may be enabled to realize.

How—to what extent Constant—unbroken; continuous.

Solitude—loneliness; the being by himself. Bred—trained up as; accustomed to the life of.

Sailor—a person whose profession in life is to assist in the management of a ship whilst at sea

How painful... . sailor—the justification for this remark follows in the next few lines.....because a sailor is “ever accustomed to enjoy &c.....”

Ever—at all times; always

Accustomed to—habituated to

Enjoy and suffer—enjoy life and put up with, or endure its hardships (A sailor's life is contemplated).

Perform—execute; carry out; conduct.

Offices of life—the duties of life; the affairs or functions of life.

In—under circumstances of.

Fellowship—the friendship or acquaintance of others—i. e., with the co-operation of other people.

Company—the society of others

Para. 3. He—i. e., Alexander Selkirk.

Put ashore—sent ashore, i. e., sent away from the ship and put on land.

Leaky vessel—it is usual to speak of any vessel as leaky when it allows the escape of liquid placed inside it—but when used of a ship, the word leaky means a ship which allows sea-water to enter *inside* the ship through cracks or holes in its sides

Page 19.

Irreconcilable difference—a disagreement which cannot be made up.

He—i. e., Alexander Selkirk. Choose—elected; selected; preferred.

To take—to accept.

Fate—chance ; lot ; condition—whatever might come.

In this place—on the lonely island.

Crazy vessel—unsafe ship ;—a ship that was not all that she ought to have been and therefore in nautical language “behaved” erratically. A crazy person is one who is not quite right in the head ; the ship on which Alexander Selkirk was is compared to a crazy person because it was *leaking*.

Under—under the command of ; in a position of a subordination to.

Disagreeable—quarrelsome ; one with whom Alexander Selkirk could not agree.

Portion—share of worldly goods and chattels. (Lit. means the share of his property given by a father to his daughter on her marriage or to his son on his death).

Sea-chest—a box or chest carried by sea-men and containing their clothes and other worldly goods when going out to sea. Each sea-man has to provide his own sea-chest.

Firelock—a kind of gun.

A flint and steel—a piece of flint and a piece of steel. Before the days of “matches,” the only way in which a person could strike a light was to knock a piece of steel against a piece of flint (rock) and to ignite some combustible substance by means of the sparks thereby emitted.

A hatchet—an instrument with which to cut wood. It has a large heavy blade and a wooden handle.

A kettle—that vessel in which water is usually boiled.

Books of devotion—books on religion and religious topics

Pieces—instruments ; implements.

Concerned—were used especially for purposes of.

Navigation—the management of a ship whilst out at sea.

Para. 4. Resentment—Indignation ; irritation ; anger. **Officer**—superior officer ; officer in command, *i. e.*, the captain

Ill-used—badly used ; badly treated.

Look forward—regard anticipatively ; consider beforehand, *i. e.*, without first having any experience of his new conditions of existence.

As the more eligible—as the preferable. **One**—condition of life.

Till—until ; till the moment when. **Instant**—moment.

In which—when. **Put off**—sail away ; put out to sea—sail away from the island.

Yearned—longed ; craved. (His heart yearned for all that from which he was parting by leaving the ship and electing to be placed on land).

Melted—i. e., the resentment which he had felt against his commander disappeared when, with the sailing away of the ship, he saw his chances of fellowship and company vanish.

Comrades—companions ; fellow workers.

All human society—the society of every human being.

At once—at one and the same time, i. e., together.

In—in the shape of ; in the form of.

Provisions—supplies ; stores.

For—for the purpose of ; which might serve for.

Sustenance—maintenance—keeping alive.

But—only. **The Quantity of**—sufficient for.

Abounding with—Being found in large numbers.

Judged it—considered it. **Most probable**—more certain.

More immediate—quicker. **Easy**—easily obtainable.

Relief—i. e., relief from the pangs of hunger.

Shell-fish—a kind of fish that are covered with a hard shell, the inside being a sort of jelly—the best illustration of a shell-fish is perhaps the *Oyster*—shell-fish may be eaten uncocked.

Shore—sea-shore ; near the margin of the water.

Game—wild animals, the flesh of which can be eaten, i. e., goats ; deer, &c.

Para. 5. Accordingly—this has reference to what Alexander Selkirk consider to be the best course for him to pursue.

Found—i. e., by looking for shell-fish.

Extremely—exceedingly.

Delicious—tasteful. (Turtles are usually made into soup—an aristocratic dish in England).

Frequently—often ; with but short intervals between.

Very plentifully—in large quantities.

On his first arrival—when he first was left on the island.

Till—until at last.

Disagreeable to his stomach—did not agree with his digestion.

In—in the form of Jellies—extracts of meats which are cooled and allowed to settle down into a solid state.

Necessities of—*i. e.*, what he was compelled to do in order to satisfy, or find the means of satisfying, his hunger and his thirst.

Greatest—principal. Diversions—distractions, *i. e.*, that which distracted his attention from.

Reflections on—thinking on; the contemplation of.

Lonely—solitary. Condition—state of existence.

Para. 6. Appetite—longing for. Those appetites—*i. e.*, the longing for food and water.

Of—for. Desire of—wish for, the longing for.

Society—companionship.

Was as strong call upon him—*i. e.*, he longed now as much for society as before he had for food and water.

Powerful—strong; pressing. Call—demand.

[Note—the craving for society is looked upon as making, as if it were, a demand for satisfaction like a creditor would demand that his debt be satisfied].

To himself—because there was no one else on the island.

Necessitous—in necessity; in need.

Supports—commodities necessary to support or keep up.

Body—life. Attained—obtained.

Eager—keen; strong; ardent. Longings—cravings

Seeing—beholding; looking on.

Interval—interval of freedom from. Craving—sharp.

Bodily appetites—*i. e.*, hunger and thirst.

Supportable—bearable; endurable.

And he appeared . supportable—The meaning is expressed by the employment of a paradox. So long as the cravings of hunger and thirst were very keen, little time was left to Selkirk to reflect on his lonely condition, but when means were found for easily satisfying these cravings, Selkirk had little to occupy his thoughts and he naturally began to feel the want of human society. Therefore paradoxical as it may be seem, when the means of satisfying his bodily

cravings were found, so that how to get food and water was no longer a question of moment to him, Selkirk, though to all appearances well off, as a matter of fact was then most in want, for now he craved for human society, which unlike food and water, he could not obtain on the island.

Grew—became—the use of the word “grew” conveys the idea of a gradual process.

Page 20.

Dejected—downcast in spirit ; wanting in hope.

Languid—wanting in animation and activity ; lifeless.

Melancholy—the condition of being perpetually sad ; depression of spirits that lasts for sometime.

Scarce—hardly ; barely.

Refrain from—keep from.

Doing himself violence—taking his own life ; committing suicide.

By degrees—very gradually.—**Force**—power ; influence.

Reason—reasoning with himself. **Upon**—to.

Space—period. After the space of—after the lapse of the period of.

Thoroughly—perfectly ; completely.

Reconciled to his condition—he adopted himself to the circumstances in which he was placed ; he accepted his lot cheerfully.

Para. 7. Made—achieved. **Conquest**—i. e., over his longings.

When.....conquest—when he had succeeded in overcoming his longings.

Vigour—strength, giving rise to activity.

Disengagement—freedom from the cares and anxieties of a life lived in civilized countries.

Constant—perpetual. **Cheerful**—cheering.

Serene—bright ; clear. **Temperate**—neither very cold nor very warm ; moderate.

Air—climate. **Feast**—joy ; pleasure.

His being—His life ; his existence.

Joyful—full of joy ; full of gladness ; happy.

Irksome—wearisome ; unbearable. **Delight**—pleasure.

Lay--reposed ; slept. By--with.

Ornaments--decorations.

Spacious--extensive. Situated--located ; built.

Delicious--Delightful. Bower--shady nook ; shady retreat.

Fanned with--cooled by. Continual--constant ; perpetual.
Gentle--mild.

Aspirations--breaths. Repose--rest. Chase--i. e., pursuit
after wild animals.

Gentle aspirations of wind--i. e., the wind blowing mildly ;
mild breezes.

Equal to--equal in intensity to ; as pleasurable as.

Para. 8. Forgot--omitted. Observe--remark. Time--period.

Dissatisfaction--i. e., his lonely life on the island.

Monsters--huge creatures. Of the deep--natives of the seas.
Lay--reposed.

Added to--increased. The terrors--the horrors ; the fears.
Solitude--loneliness.

Dreadful--awful ; fearful. To be made for human ears--i. e.,
for human ears to hear. Recovery--getting back of ; obtaining
control over.

Temper--tranquillity of mind. He could--he became enabled to.

Hear--listen to the sound of. Approach--go near to. Intrep-
idity--courage.

Sea-lions--a kind of sea monster.

Para. 9. At that time--at the time of his sojourn on the island,
after the termination of his period of dissatisfaction.

Spirits--animal spirits. Life--joy in life. High--great.

Unconcernedly--fearless. Regularly--with so much dexterity.

Merely from being--simply because he was.

Unruffled--not disturbed ; not agitated ; not frightened.

In himself--i. e., himself. Them--the monsters of the deep.

Ease--facility. Imaginable--conceivable

Page 21.

Terrible--awful to look on ; fearful to behold.

Mighty slow--exceedingly slow.

In working themselves round—in moving themselves round. ("Working round"—conveys the idea of a laboured, slow, gradual motion).

Place himself—stand ; station himself ; take up his stand.

Dispatched—killed ; finished off.

Para. 10. Precautions—measures taken beforehand by way of caution, so that when the necessity arose that which would be required would be ready at hand.

Want—shortness of provisions. Kids—the young of goats.

Lame—*i. e.*, to make lame. Of speed—*i. e.*, of running fast.

He had—he kept. About his hut—in the neighbourhood of his hut ; round about his hut.

In full vigour—in possession of the full amount of strength and energy of an adult man.

Take—catch. At full speed—when running at full speed.

Running up a promontory—when running up hill. But—except.

Descent—stretch of land inclining downwards.

[The reason may have been that Selkirk was afraid to put on all his speed when running down hill through fear of losing his balance and thus stumbling].

Para. 11. Habitation—the place where he lived, *i. e.*, his hut.

Extremely pestered—very much troubled. With—by.

Gnawed—to holes into. Defend—protect ; guard.

Tamed—domesticated. About—round about ; near.

Preserved—protected ; defended. Enemy—*i. e.*, rats.

Quite—absolutely ; completely. Tacked together—joined together, sewed together.

Clothed—covered.

Was inured—became accustomed. Pass through—walk through ; make his way through.

Brambles—thorny bushes.

Precipitance—speed ; rapidity of movement.

[Being now dressed in skins he had no fear of tearing his garments against the points of thorns that might come into contact with his person].

It happened once to him—on one occasion his experience was.

Summit—top Made a stretch—stretched himself forward.

Seize—catch ; capture. With which—having caught which.

Precipice—a sheer descent of rock, not a gradual slope.

Space—period ; length.

Length—period of time, duration.

Measured—calculated. Observation—*i. e.*, of the moon. By noticing the increase in the size of the moon before his fall and after the restoration of his consciousness he was enabled to calculate that he must have been senseless about three days or so.

Para. 12. Manner—mode ; way ; style. Of life—of living.

Exquisitely—extremely. Pleasant—pleasing ; delightful.

Moment—*i. e.*, moment of time.

Heavy upon his hands—*i. e.*, during which time he did not know how to occupy himself, such periods are felt to be exceedingly monotonous and dreary and are consequently far from pleasant.

Untroubled—by dreams. Joyous—full of joyful experiences—he took a great interest in life.

From—because of Practice of temperance—abstinence from indulgence in spirituous liquors.

[Here Steele is giving to the world a portion of his own experiences for he was addicted to drink and his nights must therefore have been troubled by ghastly dreams]

Page 22.

Manner—practice ; habit.

To use—*i. e.*, to devote. Stated—fixed.

Exercises of devotion—repeating his prayers.

Performed—repeated. Aloud—in a loud tone.

In order to—so that he thereby might.

Keep up—keep himself in the practice of ; he might not forget the use of.

To utter himself—to give utterance to whatever he had to say.

With great energy—vehemently ; loudly ; energetically.

Para. 13. Let into—made acquainted with. Character—disposition.

Discerned—noticed ; observed ; perceived. **Company**—the society of other men.

Separated from company—kept away from the society of other men.

Aspect manner. **Gestures**—significant movements of the limbs.

Strong—well marked. **Cheerful**—*i. e.*, such a seriousness as is indicative of an otherwise naturally cheerful disposition.

Seriousness—gravity. **Looks**—appearance.

There was a**looks**—Steele means that this gravity which was observable in his looks was the result of his solitary residence on the lonely island. It was something that was added to the characteristic of his natural disposition which it had not been able entirely to eradicate. Hence both seriousness and cheerfulness were found blended together in his disposition—the former having been forced upon him by circumstances, the latter having been given to him by nature, as part and parcel of his constitution.

To—of. **Certain**—certain amount of. **Disregard to**—indifference towards.

About—surrounding ; around. **Sunk in thought**—immersed in thought.

Had been—*i. e.*, were.

As if... ..thought—Selkirk showed such want of interest in the ordinary things around him as to lead one to believe that the reason for his so doing was that he, was constantly engaged in thinking of some particular matter which so engrossed his attention as to leave him no inclination to attend to anything else.

Brought him off—brought him from off ; brought him away from.

Came in—went to his rescue. Arrived at the island where he was landed.

Them—*i. e.*, the crew of the ship—those on board of the ship.

Indifference—want of enthusiasm.

With relation to—in connection with the matter of.

Prospect—chance ; opportunity.

Going off—quitting the island ; going away with ; leaving the island.

In an—at obtaining an.

Refresh—cheer ; enliven.

Para. 14. Frequently—often ; repeatedly. Bewailed—beanoed regretted

World—*i. e.*, the civilised world. Which—*i. e.*, which civilized world

With all its enjoyments—full as it was of the means of enjoying life.

Restore him to—give back to him ; secure to him.

Tranquillity—the peace and quiet (of mind).

Of his solitude—which he enjoyed when he was alone on the island.

[In this passage Steele may have intended to hit the debased nature of the amusements which were prevalent among the middle and upper classes at the time when he entered life—see introduction]

Though—although.

Frequently—often.

Conversed with—talked with ; spoken to—(and therefore I should have recognized his voice and his manner of speaking).

Absence—*i. e.*, from me ; after I had not met him for a few months

Met me—came across. Recollect—remember.

Familiar discourse—the ordinary or usual life of the town.

This town—*i. e.*, London.

Taken off—removed. Aspect—behaviour. Air—appearance ; look.

Para. 15. Plain—simple ; unsophisticated ; untainted by the artificiality of civilized life.

Memorable—striking. Example—illustration.

Confines—restricts. Natural—*i. e.*, those demanded by nature, not those created by the artificiality of civilization.

Goes further in—indulges most. Desires—*i. e.*, for the luxuries of civilization.

Increases—multiplies.

In proportion to his acquisitions—*i. e.*, the more such a person obtains the more he desires to have.

The Moral of the Story.

The moral of the story is stated by Steele in the last paragraph of the essay. It may be summarised as follows :—He is happiest who confines his wants to natural necessities, for he who cultivates a longing for the luxuries of civilization will continually want more and more in proportion as his acquisitions increase.

This same view has been taken by *Pope* in his *Ode on solitude* :—

Happy the man, whose wish and care

A few paternal acres bound,

Content to breathe his native air

In his own ground.

Whose herds with milk, whose fields with bread,

Whose flocks supply him with attire,

Whose trees in summer yield him shade.

In winter fire.

Blest, who can unconcern'dly find

Hours, days, and years slide soft away

In health of body, peace of mind

Quiet by day.

How far modern Economists would be inclined to support this view is not very certain. In our own day it seems to be conceded that discontent with what we possess, with our conditions and surroundings is the necessary forerunner of progress. Satisfaction with what we have, though it may give peace of mind and freedom from the worries of this world, yet if universally adopted as the ideal, would certainly be hostile to the cause of civilization and the societies of this world would soon become stagnant. India illustrates the application of the principle excellently. In India the ideal of the ancient moralists and philosophers was the killing of desire in order to reduce our wants and thereby to acquire contentment and happiness. The tenacity with which this ideal has been adhered to by the people of this country has undoubtedly been the main cause of the country's stagnation.

Summary of the Essay.

Para. 1. This essay gives an account of the most uncommon adventure of a man named Alexander Selkirk who spent four years and four months alone on the island of Juan Fernandez.

Para. 2. Steele had the pleasure of meeting Selkirk on his return to England in 1711 and was much interested in hearing from him of the different revolutions which took place in his mind during his lonely stay on the island—and this, the more so, because the man was a man of good sense.

Para. 3. Selkirk was put ashore by the commander of the vessel on which he was engaged because he had an irreconcilable difference with his superior officer and elected to endure solitude rather than continue to work under a disagreeable officer who had ill-used him on board of a crazy (leaky) vessel. The only articles Selkirk took on shore with him were a sea chest, his wearing clothes and bedding, a fire-lock, a pound of gunpowder, a large quantity of bullets, a flint and steel, a few pounds of tobacco, a hatchet, a knife, a kettle, a Bible, and other books of devotion; together with pieces that concerned navigation, and his mathematical instruments.

Para. 4. Resentment against the officer who had ill-used him, at first made him look forward on his change of life as the more eligible one, till the instant when he saw the vessel put off. His heart then yearned within him, and melted at the parting with his comrades and all human society at once.

Paras. 5, 6. At first the necessity of finding food and water diverted his mind from thinking on his lonely condition—but when once he had found out how to obtain on the island a regular and plentiful supply of food and water, the eager longings for seeing again the face of man became hardly supportable, and he seriously contemplated committing suicide; but finally, by frequently reading the scriptures and devoting himself to the study of navigation he within the space of eighteen months grew thoroughly reconciled to his condition.

Para. 7. After he had made this conquest, the vigour of his health, freedom from worldly cares and a genial climate soon made his existence one continual feast, and his being, as joyful as before it had been irksome. He now began to take delight in everything around him.

Para. 8. During the time of his dissatisfaction, monsters of the deep, which frequently lay on the shore, had added terrors to his solitude; but upon the recovery of his temper he could not only with pleasure listen to their howlings,

Para. 9. but even approach them with intrepidity and kill them with the greatest ease imaginable—For, though these monsters had

terrible jaws and tails, they were exceedingly slow in working themselves round, and Selkirk by placing himself exactly opposite to their middle could dispatch them with his hatchet at will.

Para. 10. The precaution which he took against want in case of sickness was to lame kids when very young, so that they might recover their health, but never be capable of speed. These he had in great numbers about his hut.

Para. 11. His habitation was extremely pestered with rats. To defend himself against these enemies Selkirk fed and tamed numbers of kittens who lay about his bed and preserved him from the enemy. Once when chasing a goat on the summit of a hill he stretched out to catch it and with the goat under him he fell down a precipice and remained unconscious for three days, which period he measured by the increase in the size of the moon since his last observation.

Para. 12. When on the island Selkirk used to perform his devotions aloud and to utter himself with great energy in order to keep up the faculties of speech.

Para. 13. When Steele first saw him, it was possible to discern from his aspect and gestures that he had been much separated from company—there was a strong but cheerful seriousness in his looks, and a certain disregard to the ordinary things about him.

Para. 14. But when, after a few months' absence, Steele again saw him, he could not recollect having met him before—familiar discourse in this town had taken off the loneliness of his aspect, and quite altered the air of his face.

Para. 15. Moral—(See ante).

Explanation of Essay V. Paragraph by Paragraph.

Para. 1. Under the heading of this essay I do not think it inconsistent with the general plan of my work to give an account of a man born in Her Majesty's dominions, and in doing so to tell of an adventure which occurred in the course of his life of so unusual a character that it is doubtful, whether, a similar adventure, it has been any one else's lot to experience. The person whose adventure is herein related bore the name of Alexander Selkirk, a name which must be familiar to all men who are eager to know the news of the world from the fact of his having spent four years and four months on a lonely island in perfect solitude.

Para. 2. Steele had the pleasure of frequently conversing with Selkirk soon after his arrival in England in 1711. As Selkirk was a very sensible man, it was very interesting to listen to him giving an account of the different attitudes his mind assumed towards the circumstances in which he was placed. When we reflect how painful it is to the average man to be separated from the society of his fellow men, even for so short a period of time as the space of one evening, it will easily be realized how much more painful must have been this forced solitude to a man who had been brought up as a sailor, brought up to enjoy life and to suffer its hardships, to eat, drink and sleep, in short to perform all the functions of life with the co-operation of, and in the company of, his fellow workers.

Para. 3. Selkirk had been sent on shore from a vessel which was leaking because of a difference with his superior officer which could not be bridged over (made up); and he elected to take what would come on the lonely island rather than continue to work on an unsafe ship under an officer with whom he could not pull on. His share of worldly goods which were put on shore with him consisted of sea-man's box, his wearing clothes and bedding, a firelock, a pound of gunpowder, a large quantity of bullets, a flint and steel, a few pounds of tobacco, a hatchet, a knife, a kettle, a Bible and some other religious books, some articles that concerned navigation, and his mathematical instruments.

Para. 4. Indignation against his superior officer who had treated him very badly at first made him look forward to his life on the lonely island as preferable to his life on board the ship, but when after landing him on the island the ship sailed away, his heart sank within him and was filled with longing at the thought of his losing at once both his old companions and human society generally. Selkirk had provisions with him sufficient in quantity to satisfy his hunger for two days. He found that the island abounded only with wild goats, wild cats, and rats, and so he came to the conclusion that it would be easier for him to secure food immediately by looking for shell-fish along the sea shore than by going in quest of game into the interior of the island.

Para. 5. Having thus decided in what quarter to search for food, he found turtles in large numbers of which he ate plentifully until that particular kind of food ceased to agree with his digestion, unless made into jellies. At this period of his life on the island, the necessity of discovering means for the regular supply of food and water kept his mind continually engaged and prevented him from thinking on his lonely condition.

Para. 6. But the means whereby he could regularly get food and water were soon found, and when that burden was off his mind, though it appeared to him that he should for that reason be perfectly contented and happy, he then wanted most, for now the realization of the loneliness of his situation forced itself upon him and troubled him far more than the thoughts for procuring food and water had done before. So much so that at times he found life almost unbearable and contemplated committing suicide. But by reading the scriptures and engaging his mind with the study of navigation he gradually became accustomed to his position and within the space of eighteen months of his arriving on the island he was thoroughly reconciled to his condition.

Para. 7. After he had thus subdued the longing of his heart for human society, the vigour of his strength, his freedom from worldly cares, a continually bright and clear sky and the mild climate of the island made his existence one long pleasure, and his life became as pleasant as before it had seemed a burden. He now took a delight in everything around him, and therefore made his hut a charming bower by ornamenting it with the boughs of trees cut from the neighbouring wood by the side of which his hut was built. Being fanned with continual breezes and gentle aspirations of wind his repose in the hut after the fatigue of the chase was as pleasurable as the most sensual of pleasures.

Para. 8. During the period he was discontented with his solitary life on the island, the presence of huge sea animals, which often quitted the water and came to lie on the shore, increased the terrors of his solitude; their fearful howlings seemed to him too terrible for human ears to hear—but when he became reconciled to his condition, he could not only listen to the noises made by these sea monsters with pleasure but could fearlessly go quite close to them. He spoke of having sea-lions whose jaws and tails were capable of seizing a human being and breaking his limbs.

Para. 9. But when he was on the island his spirits were so high that he could, on seeing these monsters, retain his presence and tranquillity of mind and kill them with the greatest ease imaginable—for he had observed that though their jaws and tails looked so terrible, they could not with rapidity move themselves round; and a man had only to take his stand exactly opposite to their middle and as close to them as possible when it would become the easiest thing to kill them with a stroke or two of a hatchet.

Para. 10. In order to provide for his food in case he should fall ill and become weak, he lamed numbers of young kids whilst they

were very young, so that in growing up they might recover their strength but never be able to run fast or wander far away from his hut. He had a large number of such kids round about his hut. When, however, he was in the enjoyment of his health, he could catch the fastest goat if running uphill, nor could any goat escape him except when running downhill for in such case he was afraid to run too fast lest he should lose his balance and stumble.

Para. 11. His dwelling place was extremely troubled with rats, which ate holes into his clothes and nibbled at his feet. To protect himself against these enemies he fed and tamed numbers of young kittens, which thereafter lay around about his bed and saved him from the attacks of these enemies. When his clothes were worn out, he tacked together the skins of the wild goats, which he had killed, and thus clothed himself. In time he became so accustomed to his wild life that he could walk through thorny bushes and dense undergrowths in the woods as if such haunts were natural to him. And he could move about in such places with great rapidity. Once, however, in stretching out to seize a goat on the top of a hill he fell down a precipice and remained unconscious for three days--this space of time he measured by marking the increase in the size of the moon since his last observation.

Para. 12. This kind of wild life became so exceedingly pleasant to Selkirk that he never felt it at all monotonous but always had some occupation on hand ; his nights were free from disturbing and harassing dreams, and his days were spent joyfully by reason of the exercise he took and because of his abstention from spirituous liquors. He devoted fixed hours every day to prayer, and it was his habit whilst praying to repeat his prayers in a loud voice, so that he should not get out of the practice of speaking.

Para. 13. When I first met Selkirk, even had I not known the story of his adventure, I should have been able to tell that he had lived much by himself, separated from the society of his fellow men, from his behaviour and the gestures he made whilst speaking. There was a well marked but cheerful seriousness in his looks, and a certain disregard of the ordinary things surrounding him as if he were immersed in thought. When the ship which rescued him arrived at the island, he did not hail the idea of his leaving the island with ecstasy but went on board simply because by so doing he would get an opportunity of assisting and cheering the crew.

Para. 14. Selkirk often used to regret that he had come back to live in the civilized world for he declared that such a world could not, with all the facilities it afforded of enjoyment, secure

him the peace of mind which he had enjoyed in his solitude. Although I had often met and spoken to him, when on one occasion after a few months' separation, I by chance met him in the street, though he spoke to me I could not recollect ever having met him before, to such an extent had he become changed by familiar intercourse with his fellow men and by the conditions of life in a civilized town. The loneliness of his aspect had disappeared and this had quite altered the appearance of his face.

Para. 15. This simple man's story is a very good illustration of the fact that he is happiest who restricts his needs to the simple demands of nature without adding to them needs created by the conditions of life in an artificial society—for it is true that the more artificial we become the more will our wants be multiplied, and this will lead to discontent and unhappiness. Selkirk himself expressed the same opinion when he said "I am now worth eight hundred pounds, but shall never be so happy as when I was not worth a farthing."

ESSAY VI.

SIR ROGER DE COVERLEY.

[The essay which is a portion of the second paper contributed to the *Spectator* gives an account, by way of introducing him to the reader, of the character of one of the members of the Spectator Club, a club formed of a number of imaginary figures, types of the men of the time. Sir Roger represents the country gentleman, Will Honey-comb, the man of fashion and so on. The Spectator is, of course, the writer himself.

Prof. Henry Morley is of opinion that the character of Sir Roger de Coverley has been drawn from Sir John Pakington, of Worcestershire, a Tory, whose name, family and Politics are represented by a statesman of the present time.]

Page 23.

NOTES.

Para. 1. The first—the most important.

Our society—our club, *i. e.*, the Spectator Club.

Gentleman—*i. e.*, country gentleman.

Of—native of.

Worcestershire—one of the midland counties of England; it borders on Gloucestershire.

Descent—family.

Of ancient descent—descended from an old, respectable family.

Baronet—a relic of Norman phraseology. The position of a Baronet is subordinate to that of a Baron (or Peer as we should now speak) but superior to that of a mere knight. A Baronet's title is hereditary.

Inventor—originator, *i. e.*, he first thought of the peculiar steps of the dance. [It is only a fancy of Steele's to connect the Coverley dance with Sir Roger. The dance was invented by Sir Roger of Calverley who lived in the reign of Richard I.]

Famous—well-known and popular.

Country-dance—from the French, *contre-danse*, a dance in which the partners stand opposite each other. It has, however, also been said that the French term is derived from the English.

After him—by his name.

Para. 2. Know—in the sense in which a person living in a particular district knows that district—hence, know the people who live in that shire.

That shire—*i. e.*, Worcestershire. Well—perfectly, thoroughly.

Acquainted with—familiar with. Parts—qualities and abilities.

Merits—virtues. Gentleman—man of gentle breeding. That—who.

Very—exceedingly. Singular—peculiar. Behaviour—manners; ways.

Singularities—eccentricities. Proceed from—are the result or outcome of.

Contradictions to—opposed to; different from. Manners—ways; behaviour.

Of the world—of people in general. Only as—only so far as; only to the extent that.

He thinks—he is of opinion. The world—other people generally.

Are contradictions ... in the wrong—his singularities are not mere whims, and so they differ from the manners of the people in general, not because they are unreasonable whims, but because his views of right and wrong, as he thinks, are sound and so different from those of other people who hold different views.

Para. 3. However—be it as it may. Humour—whim ; peculiar attitude towards the ways of the world.

Creates him—makes for him. With sourness—out of malignity or ill-nature.

Obstinacy—perverseness ; head strongness. His being—the fact of his being.

Unconfined to—unrestricted by ; not bound by.

Modes and forms—the accepted ways and fashions of the world.

Makes him—enables him to be.

But the readier—all the more ready. Capable—able ; in a position to be able to.

Please—gratify. Oblige—render trifling services to.

When he is in town—when he is temporarily residing in London.

Soho Square—was then a new and most fashionable part of London. It was built in 1681. 'So ho' was the old call in hunting when a hare was found. At the present day Soho Square is the quarter in which poor foreigners in London live.

Keeps himself a bachelor—remains unmarried.

* By reason—by reason of the fact that ; because he was.

Crossed—disappointed. Perverse—obstinate, because she would not listen to his suit.

Of—native or resident of. Next—adjoining.

Para. 4. Before this disappointment—before he was crossed in love by this perverse beautiful widow.

What you call—of the kind you would term or designate.

Fine—fashionable and gay—(well dressed, well groomed, &c., and fond of pleasure).

Had often supped with—had often partaken of supper with ; hence the meaning is that at one time he had kept the company of such men as, &c.

Lord Rochester—John Wilmot, Earl of Rochester, was born in 1648. His licentious wit made him a favourite of Charles II. His strength was exhausted by licentious living at the age of 31. His chief work is a poem upon 'Nothing.' He died repentant of his wasted life, in which, as he told Burnet, he had for five years been continually drunk, or so much affected by frequent drunkenness as in no instance to be master of himself.

Sir George Etherege—was born in 1636 and died in 1694. "Gentle George" and 'Easy Etherege' was a wit and a friend of the wits of the Restoration. He bought his knighthood to enable him to marry a rich widow who required a title, and died of a broken neck, by tumbling down stairs when he was drunk and lighting guests to their apartments. His three comedies, 'The comical revenge,' 'She would if she could,' and 'The man of mode' or 'Sir Fopling Flutter,' excellent embodiments of the court humour of his time, were collected and printed in 1704.

Fought a duel—Duelling was quite common in England at the time of the Restoration, though now absolutely prohibited in England is to some extent indulged in on the continent of Europe. Duelling consists in a combat between two persons with swords or pistols, in the presence of witnesses, to have 'satisfaction' for a wrong done or an insult offered by one of the parties to the other.

His first coming to town—when he came down to London from the country for the first time.

Bully Dawson—a swaggering sharper of White Friars. He is said to have been sketched by Shedwell in the Captain Hackum of his comedy called 'the Squire of Alsatia.'

Public—open to the public.

Coffee-house—a tavern where coffee was principally supplied—In a coffee house alcoholic liquors cannot be procured.

For calling him—because he called him.

Youngster—Lit. a young person, lad. The word is often used contemptuously in the sense of a baby and therefore a person without sense.

Ill-used—badly treated—(by being refused her hand in marriage).

Serious—grave; wanting in joviality; wanting in merriment.

Temper—disposition; nature. **Jovial**—merry; gay.

Got over—overcame. It—his temporary seriousness caused by the shock of the widow refusing her hand to him.

Heit—he in the end overcame the shock caused to his mind by his disappointment.

Page 24.

Grew—gradually became. **Careless**—neglectful. **Of himself**—of his personal appearance

..... sed fashionably. Dressed stylishly or

Afterwards—after his refusal by the widow.

He continues to wear—he still wears ; he wears even now ; he puts on even now.

Doublet—a garment corresponding to the modern double-breasted waistcoat

Of the same cut—of a shape similar to that, &c.

In fashion—fashionable ; generally in vogue ; generally worn.

Repulse—refusal by the widow. Which—which shape or pattern ; style.

Merry humours—jovial moods ; moments when he is merry.

In and out—*i. e.*, in and out of fashion ; has been fashionable and not fashionable in turns.

Para. 5. Cheerful—full of cheerfulness ; pleasant. Gay—merry ; fond of pleasure.

Hearty—capable of enjoying life ; able thoroughly to enjoy pleasures

Keeps—maintains ; keeps up.

House—establishment. Good house—fashionable and hospitable establishment.

Keeps a good house—hospitably entertains guests and visitors ; keeps a well-appointed and hospitable house.

Mirthful—full of merriment ; full of innocent, playful mischief.

Cast—inclination ; tendency.

Behaviour—manner. Beloved—regarded with affection.

Esteemed—regard with respect.

Rather esteemed—rather loved as a friend than respected as a superior.

Grow rich—on account of his kindness to them—he does not extort excessive rents from them.

Satisfied—contented. (This is a humorous hit at servants who seldom look satisfied with the conditions of their situations).

Profess—confess ; declare. Company—society.

He.... names—this shows that Sir Roger was neither proud nor haughty—but familiar even with the servants. This was an act of condescension which greatly endeared him to the servant class.

All the way upstairs—all the way whilst going up a stair case.

To a visit—to visit or call upon any one in the upper storey of the house.

Justice of the quorum—"Quorum is Latin for 'of whom,' and was the first word of a commission formerly issued to certain justices, *of whom* a certain number had always to be present before the judicial duties could be performed. The word quorum has therefore come to mean a certain number necessary for the transaction of business"—Here means a bench of county magistrates.

Fills the chair—acts as a magistrate.

Quarter-session—the county magistrates sit once every three months to try criminal cases committed for trial from the petty sessions. The trial is by jury.

With great ability—very ably. Gained—earned.

Universal applause—the praise of every one.

Game Act—There is a little sarcasm here. Sir Roger is not a lawyer, but the reference suggests that he can understand what is beyond ordinary comprehension—*Game Acts* are a remnant of the Conqueror's forest laws. The first was passed in 1496. The reference in this paper is evidently to the Game Act passed in the reign of Charles II (1682-3) in which landowners worth less than £100 a year were forbidden to keep guns, bows, &c.

Summary of the Essay—(para. by para.).

Para. 1. The principal member of Spectator Club is a gentleman of the name of Sir Roger de Coverley. He is a baronet and of ancient descent. His great grand-father invented the country dance known by his name.

Para. 2. Sir Roger is very singular in his behaviour, but his singularity proceeds from good sense and his manners are opposed to the manners of the world only when he is convinced that the world is in the wrong.

Para. 3. His peculiar attitude towards the ways of the world however creates for him no enemies for he does nothing with sourness or obstinacy.

When in town he lives in the fashionable quarter of Soho Square. He keeps himself a bachelor because he was once crossed in love by a perverse beautiful widow.

Para. 4. Before his disappointment in love Sir Roger was what you would call a fine gentleman—the associate of Rochester and

Etherege. He even fought a duel and kicked Bully Dawson in a public coffee-house for calling him a youngster. But on being refused by the young widow he became serious for a year and a half and, though after the lapse of that period, his natural joviality of disposition asserted itself, he grew careless of his personal appearance and has since utterly disregarded fashion.

Para. 5. He is now in his 56th year, cheerful, gay, and hearty. He keeps a good house both in town and in the country, and is a lover of mankind. He is a justice of the quorum and once gained universal applause for explaining a passage in the Game Act.

Explanation of the Essay.—(Paragraph by Paragraph.

Para. 1. The principal member of the Spectator Club is a country gentleman, a native of Worcestershire. He is a Baronet and is descended from a very ancient family. His name is Sir Roger de Coverley. It was this gentleman's great grand-father who first thought out the steps of that dance so fashionable in the country which is called after his name.

Para. 2. Every one who knows Worcestershire is thoroughly familiar with the qualities and virtues of Sir Roger. It is true that Sir Roger is very eccentric in his manner, but his eccentricity is the outcome of good sense, and he opposes the manners and ways of the world only when he considers the world to be wrong and not out of sheer love of doing just the opposite of what other people do.

Para. 3. This peculiarity of his, however, makes him no enemies because he does not act thus out of ill-nature or perverseness but from conviction, and the very fact that he does not consider himself tied by the conventionalities of the fashionable world enables him to be the better able to please and to oblige people. When he lives in London, he resides in the fashionable quarter of Soho Square. The general belief is that he continues to remain unmarried because he was once, long ago, refused by a beautiful, perverse widow to whom he offered his hand.

Para. 4. Before he was crossed in love, Sir Roger was a gentleman of the stamp known as the fine or fashionable gentleman. He had been the associate of such men as Rochester and Etherege, he had even fought a duel when he first came to town and had kicked Bully Dawson in a public coffee-house for having contemptuously called him a 'youngster'—thus showing that he was a man of great.

spirit. But after the bad treatment, in being refused, which he received at the hands of his beautiful, perverse widow, he became for about a year and a half very serious and grave in his manner, and though ultimately the natural joviality of his disposition asserted itself, he nevertheless grew neglectful of his personal appearance and his tasteful dress disappeared. Though many years have now elapsed since he was rejected, he yet wears the coat and double-breasted waistcoat which was in fashion at the time he was rejected; and when in a merry mood he often has said that the shape of his coat and doublet has come into and gone out of fashion twelve times since they were made.

Para. 5. Sir Roger is now 56 years of age. He is cheerful, gay, and capable of thoroughly enjoying life. He maintains a fashionable and hospitable house both in the country and in town, and is a great lover of mankind. There is, however, in his behaviour, a tendency to mirthful mischief, and this makes people love him more than esteem him. He is kind to his tenants, and by abstaining from extorting high rents from them he is causing them to grow rich; he is generous to his servants so that they too are satisfied; young women declare that they love him and young men are happy in his society. When he goes to pay a visit to a friend, he calls the servants in his friend's house by their names and talks to the servant conducting him all the way upstairs to his friend's room. It must not be omitted however that Sir Roger is a justice of the quorum and that he discharges his duties at a quarter sessions very ably, and it is only three months ago that he earned the praise of everyone by explaining a passage in the Game Act.

JOSEPH ADDISON.

Life.—Joseph Addison, poet and essayist, the son of an Oxford divine, was born in Wiltshire in 1672 and died at 'Holland House' in 1719. He was sent early to the Charter House, a school in London, when he contracted a friendship with Richard Steele. In 1687, he entered Queen's College, Oxford, but was afterwards admitted to Magdalen College, and took his M. A. degree in 1673, even then being eminent for his Latin Poetry. At the age of 22, he addressed some verses to Dryden in English, and wrote the arguments to several books of Dryden's translation of Virgil's *Aeneid*. In 1699 he was granted a pension of £ 300 a year by Lord Somers in order to enable him to travel. He travelled through France and Italy, and while on his tour, he addressed his "Letter to Lord Halifax,"

one of the best of his poetical pieces. On his return to England he found his party, the whigs, out of power; but in 1702 he was introduced to Lord Godolphin, the Tory Prime Minister who, on his writing the "*campaign*," a poetical ode in celebration of the battle of Blenheim, appointed him Commissioner of Appeals. Addison accompanied Lord Halifax, in 1704, to Hanover, and was soon afterwards made Under Secretary of State. About this time he produced "*Rosamund*" as a protest against the prevalent rage for the Italian Opera. He next accompanied the Marquis of Wharton to Ireland as his secretary, and whilst there, was made keeper of the Records of that country. It was at this time that Steele started the '*Tatler*,' and Addison was asked to contribute papers to it, a request which he liberally responded to. The *Tatler* was soon merged into *The Spectator*, to which Addison contributed many papers, which are distinguished by one or other of the letters forming the word *clio*. In 1713 Addison's '*Cato*,' the only Tragedy which he attempted, appeared. Soon after the publication of *Cato*, the *Guardian* was started, and Addison contributed many papers to it. His marriage with the countess Dowager of Warwick, to whose son he had been tutor, took place in 1716, but the marriage proved unhappy. In 1713 he was appointed Secretary of State, but he soon after resigned, retiring on a pension of £ 1,500 a year. He employed his retirement in writing a "Defence of the Christian religion," but his death, which took place in 1719, prevented him from completing the work.

A short history of the Spectator.

In March 1711 the *Spectator* was started by Steele. It grew out of the *Tatler*, Addison, Swift, Barkeley, Budgell and a few others were its chief contributors. The paper was published daily. After reaching 555 numbers, the publication of the paper was discontinued for a short time, after which it was again resumed in 1714, and extended to about 80 numbers more. Addison's contributions amounted to nearly one half of the total number of the papers in the *Spectator*. The essays, published every Friday and Saturday, were chiefly devoted to literary and religious subjects respectively. Dunton's *Athenian Gazette* afterwards named *Athenian Mercury* suggested the idea of the *Spectator*.

The *Spectator* aimed at the improvement of the state, the manners and the morals of the society of the time. The method employed to attain the end was by the combination of good sense and good taste with mild irony.

A few of the important characters in the Spectator.

The several characters which Addison has depicted in his papers show great delicate observation of nature. *Sir Andrew Free-port* is an exact photograph of the English merchant, *Captain Sentry* of the soldier, *Will Honeycomb* of the man of fashion and pleasure, and *Sir Roger de Coverley* of the old fashioned country gentleman of the time. "The account of Sir Roger's visit to London, of his conduct at the club, of his expedition by water to Westminster Abbey, of his remarks on the states and curiosities he sees there, is perfection of tender, delicate, loving humour."

"We should look in vain in the pages of Fielding, of Scott, or of George Elliot, for a more perfect sketch of character than that of Sir Roger de Coverley. And the minor personages are little less delicately and naturally drawn. There is the Bachelor of the Inner-Temple, an excellent critik 'to whom' the time of the play is the hour of business"; Sir Andrew Free-port, the Typical merchant; Captain Sentry, "a gentleman of great courage, good understanding, but invincible modesty"; Will Honeycomb, "an honest, worthy man where women are not concerned"; the clergyman, who has ceased to have "interests in this world, as one who is hastening to the object of all his wishes, and conceives hope from his decays and infirmities." There are my ordinary companions" says the Spectator (the writer himself) "whom we too soon learn to know very well."

The State of English Society at the Restoration and its effect on the literature of the age.

During the Commonwealth the Puritan Government forced every body to appear good, whether he were really good or bad. All kinds of amusements were considered sinful, and were therefore prohibited. Dancing, bell-ringing, the chase and wrestling were prohibited by Parliament. The theatres and Gambling houses were closed. Even such an innocent entertainment as the listening to the songs of minstrels was prohibited in that "iron time."

"The bigots of the iron time
Had called his harmless art a crime."

—(*Lay of the last minstrel.*)

With the return of the pleasure-loving Charles II, to the throne of England, all restraints were removed and the people plunged headlong and unbridled into all sorts of pleasures and wickedness. "Immorality was a thing men boasted of; they took a party-pride in vice. The wars had demoralised the people by breaking up the

habits and regularity of domestic life. Households were destroyed, and their proprietors found a residence in Taverns. Often beggared by the wars the sufferers were driven to steep their thirsty grief in wine." Clever writers bofooled the good and landed the evil to the skies to eke out a living. They pandered to the folly and the vicious tastes that prevailed among the noblemen. "Every pure and noble sentiment, every generous emotion, every lofty thought became a jest. The dramatists wrote the most immoral plays. In short the literature of the period was clever, indeed, and very entertaining but earthly, sensual and devilish."

The great service which Addison rendered to his countrymen.

With solemn reproof and delicate raillery, Addison urged women to lay aside coarseness and folly, and preached against the licentiousness, swearing, gambling, duelling, and drunkenness of the men. He attacked with both argument and ridicule the idea so prevalent since the Restoration, that vice was necessarily associated with pleasure and elegance, virtue with Puritanism and Vulgarity. To teach people to be witty without being indecent, gay without being vicious, such was the object of Addison. As M. Taine says, he made morality fashionable. To do this he exposed the folly and ugliness of vice. But he did more. He held up to the public view characters who exemplified his teachings, and were calculated to attract imitation. In the creation and delineation of these characters he unconsciously began the English Novel.

Sir Roger de Coverley.

"All who know Worcestershire" says the Spectator, "are very well acquainted with the parts and merits of Sir Roger." His fame has spread from Worcestershire throughout the English speaking world, where he has been loved and admired for over a hundred and fifty years. Sir Roger de Coverley is not to be described by any pen but that of Addison. He exhibits, joined to a perfect simplicity, the qualities of a just, honest, useful man, and delightful companion. Our acquaintance with him is a personal one. We know how he appears at his country-house surrounded by admiring tenants and servants, and how he occupies himself in London, and whom he meets there. We know his ancestry, the extent and management of his estate, his long-standing love affair with the beautiful widow; all his thoughts, opinions and surroundings. All who read about Sir Roger remember him with affection. Addison dwelt with tenderness on every detail regarding him, and finally described Sir Roger's death to prevent any less reverential pen from trifling with his hero.

Dr. Johnson's estimate of Addison.

"Addison's sentences have neither studied amplitude nor affected brevity; his periods, though not diligently rounded, are varible and easy. Whoever wishes to attain an English style, familiar but not coarse, and elegant but not ostentatious, must give his days and nights to the study of Addison."

Macaulay's estimate of Addison.

Never, not even by Dryden, not even by Temple, had the English language been written with such sweetness, grace and facility. But this was the smallest part of Addison's praise. As a moral satirist, he stands unrivalled. In wit, properly so called, he was not inferior to Cowley and Butler. We own that Addison's humour is, in our opinion, of a more delicate flavour than the humour of either Swift or Voltaire."

"Addison's writings rest on the solid basis of real excellence, in moral tendency as well as in literary merit; vice and folly are satirised, virtue and decorum are rendered attractive; and whilst polished diction and Attic wit abound, the purest ethics are inculcated."

Thackeray's estimate of Addison.

"It is as a Tatler of small talk and a spectator of mankind that we cherish and love him (Addison), and owe as much pleasure to him as to any human being that ever wrote. He came the gentle satirist, who hit no unfair blow; the kind judge who chastised only in smiling. While Swift went about, hanging and ruthless—a literary Jeffrys—in Addison's kind court only minor cases were tried; only peccadilloes and small sins against society; only a dangerous libertinism in tuckers and hoops; or a nuisance in the abuses of beaux's canes and snuff-boxes. Addison wrote his papers as gaily as if he were going out for a holiday."

"When Steele's Tatler first began its prattle, Addison then in Ireland, caught at his friend's notion, poured in paper after paper, and contributed the stores of his mind, the sweetest fruits of his reading, the delightful gleanings of his daily observations with a wonderful profusion, and as it seemed, an almost endless fecundity. He was six and thirty years old; full and ripe."

He does not go very deep. There are no tracts of suffering in his writing. He was so good, so honest, so healthy, so cheerfully selfish, if I may use the word. There is no deep sentiment. His writings do not show insight into, or reverence for, the love of women. He was one of the most resolute clubmen of his day."

The character of Sir Roger de Coverley.

None of the characters were elaborated with so much care—to none was imparted such thorough completeness, as that of Sir Roger de Coverley; between which (to quote the saying of Sir Horace Walpole) and Sir John Falstaff though a wide interval nothing like it exists in English literature for truthfulness and finish. Sir Roger's eccentricities do not, as some have written, disturb the consistency of his character; on the contrary they strengthen its individuality. If they be discords, instead of jarring, they enrich the harmony. They are precisely the humours of an honest old bachelor, whose early history has been dashed with the romance of his having been jilted. Sir Roger does nothing, and says nothing which might not have been said and done, in his day, by any warm hearted rustic gentleman who had been irredeemably crossed in love. Indeed, turning thus from nature to the consummate Art which copies her, it can scarcely be derived that the character owes its immortality to the quaint traits of extravagance which have been stigmatised as blemishes without impairing the efficacy of Sir Roger as a special admonitory example to the country squire of the reign of Queen Anne; his oddities however destined to rivet the interest and excite the affectionate smile of all readers in all times.

The figure of Sir Roger de Coverley, though it belongs to a by-gone stage of society, is as durable as human nature itself; and while the language lasts, the exquisite beauty of the colours in which it is preserved will excite the same kind of pleasure. Scarcely below the portrait of the good knight will be ranked the character of his friend and biographer, the Silent Spectator of men. A grateful posterity, remembering what it owes to him, will continue to assign him the reputation he coveted. "It was said of Socrates that he brought philosophy down from heaven to inhabit among men; and I shall be ambitious to have it said of me that I have brought philosophy out of closets and libraries, schools and colleges, to dwell at clubs and assemblies, at tea-tables and in coffee-houses." The language of Addison.

"Addison's essays afford an interesting study in the history of words. They contain many words of classical origin, which have since altered in meaning, but are used by Addison in their original significations, *e. g.*, accidental, casualty, determine, engine, habit, humanity, proper, magazine, officious, obnoxious, fact, polite, presently, singular, vest."

"The article *an* is invariably used before the aspirate, *e. g.*, an hedge, an head, an hare, &c. Although in all cases it was correct to sound the aspirate as at the present day."

"A number of words appear which have either disappeared or have quite lost their first meanings, *e. g.*, cast, nice, put (a noun), parts, familiarities, punt, quarry, quality, smoke (a verb), virtues, weeds."

Strong Verbs—These appear in an unsettled state, and past tenses and past participles are interchanged with great frequency. Thus *bid* for *bade*; *drew* for *drawn*; *forbid* for *forbidden*; *loaden*; for *laden*; *run* for *ran*; *rid* for *rode*; *sunk* for *sank*; *writ* for *wrote*; *wearied* for *woven*; *begun* for *began*.

Addison uses the relative *who* in reference to a neuter antecedent, or to the name of an animal, *e. g.*, to 'lion'; to 'shop'; to 'fortune,'

'So' is used for 'if' to introduce a conditional clause.

'His' appears as a substitute for the apostrophe, or apostrophe and s as an indication of the possessive case of a proper name ending in 'es.'

ESSAY VII.

'THE SPECTATOR' VISITS SIR ROGER. (Addison).

[This essay formed paper number 106 of the Spectator. The motto prefixed to the paper, which is not reproduced by Mr. Wilson, was as follows:—

—"Hinc tibi copia

Manabit ad plenum, benigno

Rwis honorum opulenta cornu."—Horace, 1 odes. XVII, 14.

Translated, it is as follows:—"Here plenty's liberal horn shall pour

Of fruits for thee a copious shower
Rich honours of the quiet plain]

Page 24.

NOTES.

Para. 1. Often—repeatedly; on many occasions.

Received an invitation—been invited; been requested.

Pass away—spend; we should now omit "away." Accompanied him—went with him.

Thither—to the country; *i. e.*, to Sir Roger's country seat or home.

Am settled with him—am living with him; am residing with him; am staying with him.

For some time—this expresses intention as to the future.

Am settled.....house—am comfortably lodged in his country seat, to live in it for some time without any intention of leaving it soon.

Where—i. e., at Sir Roger's country house.

Form—formulate; give shape to.

Ensuing—following. Speculations—series of thoughts; conclusions arrived at by meditation (from Lat. *speculatio*, I see).

Explanation of the paragraph.

I have often been asked, by my friend Sir Roger de Coverley, to pass a month with him. I therefore accompanied him to his country home, last week. I am going to live with him for some time. And whilst there, I intend to meditate as a spectator of mankind and draw those conclusions which will appear later, (in the coming numbers of the magazine).

Para. 2. Very well acquainted with—knows well. Humour—temperament (not wit); mental disposition.

Rise—get up from bed. When I please—at the time and hour it pleases and suits me.

Page 26.

Dine—have my meals. (Dine here does not mean only the dinner meal).

At his own table—at the table common to all the inmates of the house.

My chamber—my private room. As—accordingly.

I think fit—it best suits me.

Sit still and say nothing—i. e., Sir Roger allows me to remain silent whenever I am inclined to do so.

Without bidding me be merry—without insisting on my being jovial—as many hosts are likely to do. Addison, though of urbane manners and cheerful disposition, was never known to indulge in noisy mirth. Indeed, so marked was this characteristic of his that he got the name of a “parson in a tie wig.” We can thus easily understand how he must have felt grateful for this forbearance of Sir Roger's (we also notice an admirable trait in the host's character).

Of the country—of the neighbourhood.

Shows me at a distance—points me out from a distance without insisting on an introduction. (Addison was very reserved in manner).

As—during the course of ; when. Observed—noticed ; seen.

Stealing a sight of me—stealthily looking at me ; quietly having a look at me in such a manner as not to let me know what they were doing.

Over—*i. e.*, from behind. Hedge—a fencing made by plants.

The knight—Sir Roger. Desiring them—asking them ; requesting them.

For that—for the reason that ; because (' for that ' is an expression now gone out of use).

Hated—disliked very much Stared at—looked inquisitively at.

Explanation of para. 2.

Sir Roger understands my disposition thoroughly and leaves me perfectly free to follow my own inclinations, whether it is to retire early, to dine in my own room, or to sit still and take no part in conversation. And he never insists on my being merry as many hosts are likely to do. Whenever the gentlemen of the neighbourhood come to visit him, my host only points me out to them from the distance and does not insist on an introduction to them. And often when I have been walking about in Sir Roger's fields I have seen these gentlemen trying stealthily to catch a glimpse of me from behind some hedge, and I have heard my host request them not to let me see them because if they did, I might think that they were staring at me and I hated being stared at.

Para. 3. The more—all the more. At ease—at home. Staid—serious.

For as—because of the fact that. The knight—*i. e.*, Sir Roger.

Best—kindest : most considerate. Master—in the sense of Lat. "*Dominus*"—*i. e.*, employer of domestic servants.

In the world—Lit. anywhere to be found in the world ; hence, possible.

Beloved—very much liked ; regarded with affection by.

About him—around him ; surrounding him.

Care—desire ; wish. Leaving him—*i. e.*, leaving his service.

By this means—for this reason ; on account of this fact,

Domestics—domestic servants ; servants who work in the house.

All in years—all advanced in years ; are all of them pretty old men.

Grow old ..master—grow old as their master grows old.

You would take—a person would think that.

Valet-de-Chambre—the servant who attends his master in his room and has charge of his ward robe.

For his brother—were his own brother—(Sir Roger was 56 years of age, therefore his brother too would be advanced in years).

Butler—a servant of superior rank whose duty it is to attend to the wines at dinners.

Groom—(from A. S. Guma—a young man, which meaning still survives to the expression, Bride-groom)—Syce ; the servant who attends to the horses.

Gravest—most serious-looking.

Has the looks of—looks as grave and as sedate as.

Privy-Counsellor—a judge of the highest tribunal.

House-dog—a dog kept to protect the house by barking on the approach of strangers.

You see.....house-dog—the kindness of the master is perceptible even in the condition of the old house-dog and which is now too old to do any real service.

And—and it is perceptible also in the fact that Sir Roger keeps, &c.....

Pad—A horse that goes at an easy pace. **Kept**—retained, as one of the horses forming part of.

Tenderness—affection. **Out of regard to**—out of consideration for.

Explanation of para. 3.

I am all the more at home in Sir Roger's family because there are only grave and steady going persons in it. The Knight is a good master and as such, rarely changes his servants. His servants, too, love him and do not want to leave him, so that in his service they have grown old with their master. His valet-de-chambre looks as respectable as if he were the knight's brother and is old enough to be his brother ; his butler is grey-headed, and his groom is one of the most serious and sober looking men I have ever seen ; whilst

his coachman has the serious and sedate appearance of a judge of the highest tribunal. The kindness of the master is perceptible even in the condition of the old house-dog, and in the fact that an old pad which had rendered good service in the past is kept in his stable and attended to with great care and affection simply out of consideration of the services he had rendered in the past, though for several years past he has been useless.

Para. 4. I could not but—I could not help. Observe—notice. Pleasure—i. e., to myself. Joy—the indication of joy.

Appeared—showed itself. Countenances—expressions of the faces.

Ancient domestics—old, and aged servants. Upon—at the fact of.

Country seat—country house, (after having spent sometime, perhaps a season, in town).

Refrain from tears—keep from shedding tears of joy.

At the sight of—on getting a sight of ; on seeing.

Pressed forward—eagerly came forward and in doing so, pressed against one another.

To do something for him—to render him some service.

Seemed—appeared to be. Discouraged—disheartened.

Employed—asked to do something ; engaged to do something.

Some of thememployed—some of the servants shed tears of joy on seeing their old master. Every one crowded round him and eagerly pushed forward to be of some service to him and appeared to be disheartened if his or her services were not required.

Good—kind.

With a mixturefamily—speaking at once affectionately and authoritatively as befitted one who was, as if it were, both father and master ; with a blending of the feelings which would be natural to the father of those who composed the household and the feelings belonging to the master of the house.

Tempered—varied ; mixed His own affairs—his own matters i. e., matters relating to his house and his estate.

Tempered thethemselves—Sir Roger made enquiries after ~~the~~ affairs, but they were not made in the unfeeling manner of a Care—desire. His enquiries were varied by questions relating By this means ^{the} care of the persons he was questioning.

Page 27.

Humanity—kindness (noun from humane). **Good nature**—generosity of disposition.

Engages—attaches ; attracts ; draws.

Pleasant upon any of them—we should now say 'pleasant with any, &c.' the meaning is,—if he cracked a joke with any of his servants (This is one of the peculiarities of Sir Roger due to the fact that he had not married).

Family—here includes domestic servants, for he had no wife or children.

Are in good humour—i. e., are put into a joyful mood.

Diverts himself with—amuses himself at the expense of (by jokes of course)

Betrays—shows ; indicates (coughing is here humorously taken to be an indication of old age because most old men are afflicted with a constant cough).

Any—i. e., any other.

Infirmity of old age—weakness, incidental to old age ; any such infirmity as old men are subject to.

It is easy to observe—because it is so evident from the faces of his servants.

Secret—i. e., not expressed, a concern that is felt but not expressed.

Concern—anxiety. **Looks**—countenances.

Explanation of paragraph 4.

It was impossible for me not to notice the look of joy that showed itself on the faces of his old servants when their master returned to his country house. And I admit I observed this with some feeling of pleasure to myself. Some of the servants went so far as to shed tears of joy on seeing their old master. Every one crowded round him and eagerly pushed forward to be of some service to him and seemed disheartened if his or her services were not required. The kind old knight on his part put them several questions, varying the inquiries concerning his own affairs with questions concerning their own personal welfare. This kindness of disposition endeared the knight to everybody. If he ever chooses to be funny, all his servants feel happy and especially the person at whose expense he amuses himself. If, however, he shows by even a cough or any other such infirmity that he is

suffering from the illnesses and weaknesses incidental to old age, all his servants feel anxious on his account.

Para. 5. Worthy—estimable ; noble. Put me—placed me.

Particular—special. Care—charge, i. e., made my the butler's special charge.

Prudent—discreet ; judicious ; cautious ; careful.

As well as—together with. Wonderfully—astonishingly ; immensely.

Particular—very great ; special ; intimate.

Explanation of paragraph 5.

My noble friend (Sir Roger) has made me his butler's special charge. This butler is a very careful man and, like the rest of the servants, exceedingly anxious to please me, because Sir Roger has often spoken of me to them as his very intimate friend.

Para. 6. Chief—principal. Diverting...fields—amusing himself with shooting or hunting in the woods or on the commons.

[Note the urbane reserve in avoiding to mention the forms of amusement].

Vray venerable—worthy of great honour and respect.

Ever—always. In the nature of a chaplain—In the capacity of a chaplain. [Bishop Hurd remarks that, "the word *nature* is used here a little licentiously" He should have said in the office "or" in the quality of a chaplain."]]

Chaplain—Domestic clergyman ; a clergyman who has the spiritual charge of a person of a high family.

Above—far more than.

A person of good sense—i. e., a very sensible person to talk to.

Some learning—of some little learning though not very learned.

Of alife—His habits of life are very regular ; his way of living is very regular.

Obliging—very polite in his conversation. Heartily—sincerely.

Very much.. esteem—is very highly regarded and respected by the old knight.

So that—and therefore.

Rather as.....dependant—more like a dear and esteemed relative than like a person paid for his work.

[Note—'Rather' is the comparative degree of an old adjective and adverb 'rathe' which means early, ready].

Explanation of paragraph 6.

My principal associate during the time that Sir Roger is engaged in amusing himself in the woods or the fields is a very worthy and respectable man who is always with Sir Roger, and has lived in Sir Roger's family for over 30 years in the capacity of a domestic chaplain. This gentleman is very sensible to talk to and is possessed of some, though not of much learning; he is very regular in his habits of life and very polite in his conversation. He regards Sir Roger with great affection and knows that in turn he is much esteemed by the old knight, so that his position in Sir Roger's establishment is more that of a dear relative than that of a paid servant.

Para. 7. Observed—stated; remarked. Papers—Essays on Sir Roger contributed to the 'spectator'—this essay was paper No. 106.

Amidst—side by side with, notwithstanding *i. e.*, though he possesses many good qualities he is yet something of a humourist.

Good qualities—virtues.

Is.....humourist—is somewhat eccentric and whimsical.

Virtues—good qualities. Imperfections—shortcomings; failings.

As it were—as if they were. Tinged—coloured; characterised; marked.

Certain—peculiar kind of. Extravagance—eccentricity.

Them—*i. e.*, the virtues and imperfections of Sir Roger. Particularly his—peculiar to himself.

Makes themhis—stamps them with his individuality; *i. e.*, Sir Roger does things in a way which indicates that they have been done by him only and by no one else.

Distinguishes—differentiates. Those—*i. e.*, the virtues and failings.

Cast of mind—disposition; tendency of mind, *i. e.*, his quaintness or eccentricity.

Generally—usually. Innocent—inoffensive. In itself—in its nature.

So—therefore. Renders—makes. Highly—very. Agreeable—pleasant.

Degree—amount. **More delightful**..... **colours**—Remarks made by Sir Roger appear more delightful and rich than those made by others, even though in their substance both contain the same amount of sense or virtue *i. e.*, other men express these same thoughts in their naked form without any admixture of humour.

In their common and ordinary colours—*i. e.*, without being tinged with the kind of eccentricity peculiar to Sir Roger.

Explanation of paragraph 7.

I have already remarked in several of the papers on Sir Roger contributed by me to the 'Spectator' that he, though he possesses a large number of good qualities, is also a little eccentric. But his virtues and failings alike seem to be of a nature peculiarly his own. They have something out of the way about them which distinguishes them from those of other men. This peculiar disposition of the knight's imparts a quaintness, a raciness, and a high degree of agreeableness to his conversation. Remarks made by him appear more delightful and rich than those made by others, even though in the substance both contain the same amount of sense or virtue.

Page 28.

Para. 8. As—whilst. **With him**—in his company. **How**—to what extent or degree.

Liked—estimated approvingly.

The good man—this is only a way of speaking, the adjective good in this context does not signify anything in particular—if there be any particular meaning, it would seem to be "gentleman."

Staying—waiting. **For my answer**—for me to answer him, *i. e.*, before I had time to answer him. Necessarily, to answer such a question as was put to him by Sir Roger would require a few seconds for reflection.

Answer—reply. **Told me**—informed me; communicated to me.

He—Sir Roger. **Insulted with Latin and Greek**—when people are in company it is not "good manners" to speak a language which all the people do not understand. If, on such an occasion, any one of the company speaks in a language, which some other does not understand, it is regarded as an insult offered to him who does not understand, for the inference is, that the remark was directed against him, that it was unfavourable, and therefore not intended that he should understand it. Sir Roger did not understand Latin and Greek, so he speaks of being insulted if either of these languages had been spoken at his table.

At his table—at the dining table. It is usual for all the inmates of a house to assemble together during 'dinner time' if at no other time of the day.

[Note—It seems to have been a wide spread practice in Addison's time for people versed in Latin and Greek to air their learning by constantly dovetailing quotations from these dead languages into sentences in the English language. The time had not long elapsed when treatises in England, by Englishmen having some pretensions to learning, were written in Latin. Even in Addison's day many 'learned works' were written in Latin. Happily however, the practice is now almost dead.

Desired—requested. Particular—very intimate.

At the university—most probably a 'fellow' of a college. 'Fellows' of colleges at Oxford and Cambridge were and are required to reside in the college itself, and so long as the 'fellowship' lasts to remain unmarried.

Find him—got for him. Rather of—having more of.

Plain sense—common sense.

A good aspect—a good appearance.

Clear voice—a voice that could be heard distinctly.

Sociable—disposed to society ; not reserve. Temper—disposition.

Backgammon—a game played by two persons on a table divided into as many portions, on which there are twenty-four black and white spaces called "points." Each player has at his disposal fifteen dice, black or white, called "men" which he manœuvres on the points.

Explanation of paragraph 8.

Whilst I was walking with Sir Roger last night, he enquired of me how I liked his domestic chaplain ; without waiting for my reply however, he informed me that he had a great dread of any one insulting him at his own dining table by speaking in the Latin or Greek languages, which he himself did not understand ; and because very learned men inevitably got into the habit of quoting from the dead languages in the course of their conversation, he had requested a very intimate friend of his residing at the University to get him a clergyman who would be a man more of strong common sense than of great learning. All that Sir Roger insisted on was that the candidate selected should have a good appearance, a clear voice and a sociable disposition—and, if possible, that he should understand

something of the game of backgammon so as to be able to play with Sir Roger.

Para. 9. Found me out—selected for me. Endowments—acquirements ; qualifications.

Besides—in addition to ; over and above. Required of—demanded from.

Does now show it—does not display his learning.

Given himparish—given him the appointment of parson of the parish.

Value—merit ; worth.

Settled upon—bestowed upon him ; to settle anything upon any one is to do so in such a manner as to make it legally enforceable.

Good—handsome ; not scanty or mean.

Annuity—pension. A fixed sum of money payable yearly.

If he outlives..... is—If he lives longer than I live, he will find (from the legacy I shall leave him by my will as a token of my esteem and regard) that my regard for him is greater than he considers it to be.

Taken notice of it—have marked it and remember it.

In all that time—during the 30 years he has been with me.

Anything—a single favour. Of me—from me.

Soliciting—asking ; requesting ; begging. In behalf of—on account of ; for.

One or other—some one or other.

Parishioners—persons belonging to a parish. A parish is a small portion of country under the supervision of a junior clergyman. Often a single squire's property comprises a parish, in which case the parsonage is in the gift of the squire, as in the case of Sir Roger.

Law suit—a suit at law ; a single instance of litigation ; any difference between the parishioners which it has been necessary to settle by recourse to the courts of justice.

Apply themselves to him—apply to him ; ask him to decide the dispute.

For the decision—i. e., to decide the dispute.

Acquiesce in—agree with. Judgment—verdict ; decision.

At his.....me—when we first agreed upon our terms : *i. e.*, when he first entered my service.

Pronounce—deliver. In—from.

Pulpit—the platform from which a clergyman conducts that special portion of the church service known as “The delivering of the sermon”—*i. e.*, the platform from which the clergyman preaches to his congregation.

Accordingly—in pursuance of my directions. Digested—arranged.

Page 29.

Such a series—into such an order.

Naturally—*i. e.*, in such a manner as to be of practical use.

Make—constitute.

Continued systemdivinity—A body of religious teaching which a person can follow in practice.

Into suchdivinity—in such an order of gradual transition of thought and subject matter that they succeed one another in the due course of things without any break in the chain of thoughts and arguments,—so that they form one unbroken and connected course of theological discourses fitted to mould the lives and morals of his parishioners.

Explanation of paragraph 9.

Sir Roger said that his friend at the University in response to his request found out for him the gentleman in question, who, in addition to the qualifications required of him by Sir Roger, possesses also the qualification of being a good scholar, though he does not make a display of his learning. Sir Roger appointed him the parson of the parish since the living was within his power to give, and because he knew his worth, allotted to him a handsome pension. Provision has also been made for him in Sir Roger's will, and should he outlive the old baronet, he will learn that he was esteemed by his patron even more than he believes he is. The parson has already been in the baronet's service for thirty years and Sir Roger has observed that during all these years, the clergyman has not asked a single favour for himself though, on behalf of his parishioners, Sir Roger's tenants, he has always been requesting something of the baronet. It is also a fact worthy of notice that since the parson has taken over charge of the parish there has not been a single occasion

on which any of the parishioners have been driven to the law courts. If any dispute arises between them, they go to the parson to decide it, and if they are dissatisfied with his decision, a circumstance which is very rare, they go in appeal to Sir Roger himself. At the time when he was engaged by Sir Roger and the terms settled between them, Sir Roger handed over to him a pile of all the good sermons which were to be had in print in the English language and requested him to repeat them in Church instead of delivering any sermons of his own authorship, which were most likely to be inferior to these. The parson has, in pursuance of these instructions, arranged the sermons given to him by Sir Roger into such an order as to form a series, in which the order of the subjects will be such as to form a body of religious teaching which a person can follow in practice.

Para. 10. Going on—proceeding; continuing. In—with.

Upon the Knight's asking him—when the Knight put him the question.

Who—whose sermons. Preached—are to be preached; will you preach.

[The parson never preached sermons of his own authorship but repeated the sermons which had been preached by other famous divines, and which for that reason had been printed and could be bought by the public]

Archbishop Tillotson—Tillotson's sermons appeared in 14 volumes, published at intervals; the first in 1671; the second in 1678; the third in 1682; the fourth in 1694; and some others after his death in that year.

Bishop Saunderson—Robert Saunderson, who died in 1663, was a friend of Land and Chaplain to Charles I, who made him Regius Professor of Divinity at Oxford. At the Restoration he was made Bishop of Lincoln. His fame was high for piety and learning.

Doctor Barrow—Isaac Barrow, Theologian and Mathematician, Cambridge Professor and Master of Trinity College, died in 1677. His works were edited by Archbishop Tillotson, and include sermons, *c. g.*, "Against Evil Speaking," that must have been very much to the mind of Sir Roger de Coverley.

Doctor Calamy—Edmund Calamy, who died in 1666, was a non-conformist, and one of the writers of the treatise against episcopacy called, from the initials of its authors, *Smectymnus*, which Bishop Hall attacked and Milton defended. Calamy opposed the execution of Charles I, and aided in bringing about the Restoration. He

became Chaplain to Charles II. but the Act of Uniformity again made him a seceder. *His name, added to other three, gives breath to the suggestion of Sir Roger's orthodoxy.*

Explanation of paragraph 10.

Whilst Sir Roger was narrating to me the story of his chaplain the gentleman himself of whom we were talking came up to us. Sir Roger, it being Saturday night, asked him whose sermons he would preach on the morrow. The parson replied that he would preach one of the sermons of the Bishop of St. Asaph during the morning service, and a sermon of Dr South's in the course of the evening service. The parson then showed us a list of the preachers from whose sermons he intended to preach during the course of the year, and I was delighted to observe among the names on the list those of Bishop Tillotson, Bishop Saunderson, Dr. Barrow, and Dr. Calamy, together with the names of several living divines, who had published their sermons. It was particularly gratifying to see the name of Dr. Calamy, for it indicated that in his religious views Sir Roger was not bigoted and narrow minded.

Para. 11. I no sooner—as soon as I saw. Venerable—worthy of veneration

Pulpit—platform from which a clergyman preaches.

Insisting on—requiring Gracefulness of figure—a charming comeliness of form.

Delivery—manner of speaking ; mode of uttering his sermons

Discourse—the sermon Pronounced—delivered.

To my satisfaction—with more satisfaction.

Repeated—delivered. Is like—resembles

The compositionactor—good acting (The simile is very appropriate). [Note, the substance and words of the sermon were not the parson's just as the words uttered by an actor are not his own composition]

Country clergy—clergymen who fill offices in the country.

Wasting—dissipating. Spirit—energy.

Laborious compositions—sermons written out with great labour.

Endeavour after—try to acquire ; try to cultivate.

Handsome—good ; pleasing ; attractive.

Elocution—delivery ; mode of uttering or delivering a sermon.

Talents—arts ; faculties. Enforce—execute in good style or properly.

Penned—written.

Insteadmasters—instead of attempting to produce what are after all only inferior compositions by the expenditure of great labour, thus dissipating their energies; country parsons would do well to cultivate the art of speaking well and also to cultivate those other arts which are required to enable them to deliver in an impressive manner, the works written by great masters.

Edifying—profitable. People—the congregation.

Explanation of paragraph 11.

As soon as I saw and heard this venerable man (the chaplain) in the pulpit, I recognized my friend's wisdom in insisting upon the qualifications of a good appearance, of his form, and a clear voice, for I was so fascinated with the graceful comeliness of his form, his mode of uttering the sermon, and the manner in which the subject was treated, that I do not think I have ever spent my time so thoroughly to my satisfaction. A sermon, delivered in the way in which the parson delivered his sermon, resembles good acting. I do heartily wish that a larger number of our country clergymen instead of attempting to produce, by the expenditure of great labour, what after all are only inferior compositions, thus dissipating their energy uselessly, would cultivate the art of speaking well and also those other arts which are necessary to enable them to deliver in an impressive manner, the works written by great masters. By so doing they would make their task more light and at the same time be more instructive and entertaining to their congregation.

Summary of the Essay—paragraph by paragraph.

Para. 1. Having often been invited by my friend Sir Roger de Coverley to spend a month with him at his country seat I accompanied him thither last week.

Para. 2. Sir Roger is an admirable host; he allows his guests to do just as they like, and he humours all their fads and whims.

Para. 3. Sir Roger's family consists of none but sober and staid persons from his *valet-de-chambre* to his groom. Sir Roger is very kind hearted, a circumstance which may be noticed even in the condition of his old house-dog and in the ease and affection which is bestowed on an old horse which has ceased to be serviceable for years.

Para. 4. Sir Roger's kindness of disposition has endeared him to all his servants. Some of them could not refrain from shedding tears of joy on his return to his country seat, whilst all pressed

Para. 11. After hearing the parson deliver his sermon I became convinced that it would be far more instructive and entertaining to their respective congregations if country parsons would devote their attention and energies to the cultivation of elocution than to the laborious composition of sermons which would necessarily be inferior to the compositions of the masters.

ESSAY VIII.

SIR ROGER AT CHURCH.

[This essay forms paper no. 112 of the Spectator. It shows us some of the oddities of Sir Roger. The motto prefixed to the essay, is in Greek, a quotation from Pythagoras, and may be translated thus.

“First, in obedience to thy country’s rites
Worship th’ immortal gods”].

Page 30.

NOTES.

Para. 1. Very well—exceedingly ; immensely.

Very.....with—exceedingly fond of.

Country Sunday—a Sunday spent in the country.

[A Sunday in the country is a much more quiet day than it is in town, where except, during church hours, it is difficult to distinguish a Sunday from a week day].

Think—believe ; am of opinion.

Keeping holy the seventh day—observing the Sabbath. In the Old Testament, the people are enjoined to “keep holy” the Sabbath day for in six days God made heaven and earth, &c, &c, and on the seventh day He rested. On that day no one should do any manner of work, neither his servant, nor his ox, nor his ass, and so on.

If keeping institution—If observing the Sabbath on the seventh day of the week were only a custom instituted by man, apart from its Divine character.

Were only a human institution—were only something devised and established by man—(but it is not ; it is a Divine institution).

Method—means. Thought of—devised

Polishing—culturing.

If keeping mankind—had the institution of observing the Sabbath been made by man, only for the purpose of civilizing society and imparting a grace and culture to it, it would have been the very best idea that could have been hit upon to produce the desired result. Being a Divine institution, it does more than merely polish and civilize society—as a day set apart entirely to devotional duty it brings us nearer to God

Country people—i. e., people living in the country.

Degenerate—deteriorate (in quality). Kind of—sort of.

Such frequent returns—i. e., every seventh day. Stated—fixed ; determined beforehand.

With their best faces—in the best temper or mood of their minds —(the face is an index to the mind).

Cleanliest—cleanest. Habits—clothes. All over England, most people set apart a suit of clothes exclusively for wear on Sundays and other festive occasions—and this suit is usually the best in the word robe.

Converse—talk ; discourse.

Indifferent subjects—various subjects ; not settled as are the subjects connected with business

Hear—listen to. Duties—to God and to man.

Explained to them—in the course of the church service.

Join together—unite, in church. Adoration—profound reverence ; the worship paid to God

Supreme Being—i. e., God.

Explanation of para. 1.

I am always immensely pleased with a Sunday in the country ; and I am of opinion that if keeping the Sabbath had been only an institution made by man for the purpose of civilizing society and imparting a grace and culture to it, it would have been the very best idea that could have been hit upon to produce the desired result. Being a Divine institution it does more than merely polish and civilize society—as a day set apart entirely to devotional duty it brings us nearer to God. The country people (from their hard labour of the work, its worries and troubles, and their distance from all the refining influences, which are to be met with in a big town, such as London) would soon be transformed into semi-civilized savages, if the Sunday did not periodically appear. On a Sunday, the Divine Service at church reminding us of our duty to God and

His love for us ; the social gathering after service, each with his or her most cheerful face and cleanest dress ; the pleasant conversation (being disassociated from business) in which for once self-interest is not predominant, these have a refining, softening and soothing influence.

Para. 2. Sunday clears away, &c.—An admirable metaphor. "Sunday brushes away the 'rust' and roughness which daily work has produced, brightens their minds, refreshes their religious ideas, and leads them to show themselves at their best"—(the mind is compared to a clear, bright surface—a sheet of steel for instance, which readily receives the image of God. The more we are absorbed in our worldly thoughts the less disposed and fitted are we to approach God and, rusty and tarnished grows the sheet and more and more indistinct, the image) just as iron works covered with rust are kept bright and prevented from becoming useless, are cleansed by the rust being brushed off, so the mind and spirits of men are restored to their health and vigour as soon as they are freed, by the observance of the sabbath, from the worry and vexation caused by the week's labour and the wear and tear of life.

Not only as it—not only by &c Refreshes—revives.

Not only....village—not only for the reason that it revivifies in their minds their notions of religion which had grown dim during the interval, but also for the fact that it affords to the villagers—both men and women—an opportunity for showing themselves at their best and cultivating, with their utmost efforts, all those qualities which lend them an importance in the eyes of their fellow villagers.

Notions—ideas. But as it—but also by.

Both the sexes—i. e., persons of both sexes.

Puts forms—leading people of both sexes to show themselves at their best.

Exerting—putting forward. **Qualities**—accomplishments ; humours

Figure—distinction—favour. **Eye of the village**—opinion of the villagers.

Change—Exchange ; the money market. So "upon the change" means engaged in money or business speculations.

A country-fellow....Change—An odd remark, worthy of the author but by no means one of his best—means—the churchyard is on such occasions to the villager just as good a theatre for the

display of his acuteness as the Exchange is to the stock broker or merchant speculating in the funds or in merchandise.

Parish-politics—matters relating to the parish (a big name for petty affairs)

Before the bell rings—Before the bell, which summons people to church, begins to toll.

Sermon—is the name given to the lecture delivered by the clergyman after prayers. It is generally based upon some text or portion of the Bible which has been read during the day and is full of instructions for guidance, spiritual and moral.

Explanation of paragraph 2.

Sunday brushes away the 'rust' and roughness which daily work has produced, brightens their minds, refreshes their religious ideas, and leads people of both sexes to show themselves at their best. Just as the inhabitant of a town, where business is transacted, distinguishes himself by his business or money transactions, so a rustic distinguishes himself by his appearance and behaviour in the country church-yard, i e. whilst waiting there before the hour at which the church service commences or whilst parading there after the service is over. It is there that the people of the village meet together once a week and discuss the affairs of the parish, a subject which to villagers is of as much moment and importance, as are the diverse considerations which influence the fluctuations of the money market to business men who reside in towns.

Para. 3. Good Churchman—one who favours church-going and appreciates the benefits to be derived from church going.

Beautified—rendered beautiful ; ornamented.

Beautified ... choosing—Texts or sentences taken from the Scriptures. The meaning is that Sir Roger has caused several extracts from the scriptures to be posted up or painted on the walls inside the church building, and these texts serve both to ornament the church as well as to render its religious character more conspicuous and palpable.

Likewise—in like manner ; also.

Handsome—Exquisite—very well embroidered and worked upon ; magnificent.

Pulpit cloth—A cloth to hang over the railing, which is usually erected round the platform, from which the preacher delivers his sermon

Railed in—surrounded with a railing.

Communion-table—a table on which are placed the bread and wine of the communion of the Lord's Supper. [Every Sunday, during the morning service generally, such of the congregation as care to do so may symbolically partake of the body and blood of Christ by eating a small piece of bread and sipping a few drops of communion wine, both of which have been previously blessed by the clergyman, the minister of God, on earth]

At his.... estate—when he first succeeded by inheritance to his estate.

Irregular—i. e., as regards their attendance at church.

Page 32.

In order to—so as to. **Make them**—induce them; persuade them.

Join in—take part in.

Responses—Lit. answers—here means the replies which the congregation make to certain parts of the church service. [To understand this part of the essay, the student would do well to attend a service at any church which it may be convenient to him to visit. What these particulars mean will then, in the light of the explanations given, become evident to him].

Hassock—is a low pad on which people kneel in church so as not to spoil their clothes by contact with the dust on the floor.

Common Prayer Book—this does not mean a cheap, ordinary prayer book, but a book of common prayers—i. e., a book containing those particular prayers which are repeated in all churches which follow the practice and ritual of the established church, i. e., Church of England. Dissenting religious bodies, such as the Presbyterians, the Wesleyans, the congregationalists have books of prayers peculiar to themselves.

And at the same time—i. e., and also.

Employed—engaged in return for a payment.

Itinerant—Lit. wandering—therefore, one who goes about giving singing lessons from one house to another—not one who asks all his pupils to assemble at one place for their instruction.

Singing-master—a person who gives instruction in singing. (Singing is a very material function in an English Church Service).

Country—i. e., the parish—Sir Roger's estates (no larger area is meant).

Rightly—how to sing correctly. Tunes—airs.

Psalms—the only parts of the church service (apart from the hymns) which are sung. *Note*—Versions of the Psalms in rhyme were used where hymns, which are of more recent introduction, are now used. This was so in Addison's time

Upon which—*i. e.*, upon their singing of the Psalms.

Now—at the present time.

Value themselves—pride themselves; are proud of.

Out-do—*i. e.*, the singing of my tenants is better than the singing to be heard at most country churches, Lit. excel or surpass.

Explanation of paragraph 3.

My friend Sir Roger, who is a good churchman, has ornamented the inside of the church with texts from the Scriptures which he has selected himself; he has also made a present of a magnificent pulpit-cloth to the church and has the Communion-table railed round at his own expense. He told me that when he first succeeded to his property, his tenants were very irregular in the matter of church-going, and that to encourage and induce them to go he presented each of them with hassock and a book of common prayers; he also engaged a singing master who would go from the house of one tenant to another on his estate and instruct them in the airs of the psalms. By these means Sir Roger has converted a set of tenants, who were reluctant church-goers, into people who now are very keen on doing so; and indeed, Sir Roger says that the singing in his church is better than the singing he has heard at any other country church—a circumstance of which the tenants themselves are not a little proud.

Para. 4. *As*—Since; because; owing to the fact that.

To—of. Whole congregation—all those persons who attend this particular church, *i. e.*, they are all Sir Roger's tenants

Is landlord . . . congregation—stands in the relation of landlord to the entire body of parishioners who are his tenants.

Keeps.....very good order—Sir Roger himself regularly goes to church, and as the rest of the congregation are his tenants, his presence keeps them all thoroughly under control and makes them behave themselves properly.

Suffer—permit; allow.

It—*i. e.*, the church, during church service.

Besides—except.

[Note the humour. This is one of Sir Roger's eccentricities or oddities].

Been surprised into a short nap—unconsciously fallen asleep for a short while.

At—during the delivery of. upon—on.

Recovering out of it—awaking from sleep. It—sleep; the short nap.

About him—around him. Nodding—drooping the head through sleepiness, *i. e.*, falling asleep.

To them—*i. e.*, to wake them.

Explanation of paragraph 4.

Since Sir Roger is the landlord of the whole congregation and himself a very regular church goer, he keeps the congregation whilst at church in perfect order and on their most proper behaviour. For instance, he will allow no body but himself to sleep in church, and if it should happen that some how or other he himself unconsciously falls asleep for a short while whilst the preacher is delivering his sermon, immediately on waking up he stands up and looks around him to see if any one else is also sleeping, and should he observe any one nodding, he either goes and wakes him up himself or sends his servant to do so.

Para. 5. Other—*i. e.*, others Several other—many others.

Particularities—oddities; eccentricities, peculiarities.

Break out—show themselves; exhibit themselves (implies want of conscious intention on Sir Roger's part).

These occasions—*i. e.*, during the service at church on Sundays.

Sometimes—on some occasions.

Lengthening out—drawing out—continuing to sing even beyond the proper time.

Singing-psalms—*i. e.*, those psalms which are sung, as distinguished from those which are merely repeated

Have done with it—have finished singing it.

Matter of his devotion—the subject or substance of his prayer.

Pronounces—repeats; utters.

Amen—means “so be it” and is the usual response of the whole congregation to a prayer. (Sir Roger when specially pleased with the subject or substance of the prayer used to repeat *Amen* twice or three times instead of once only.)

To the same prayer—after the one prayer.

Upon their knees—in the kneeling posture.

To count the congregation—to count the number of people constituting the congregation.

Missing—absent.

Explanation of paragraph 5.

Many of the old knight's oddities betray themselves during church service on Sundays. For instance, sometimes he will draw out and continue to sing a verse of the psalms for half a minute after every one else has finished singing it; again, sometimes when he is pleased with the substance of any prayer he will repeat *amen* three or four times at the end of it instead of merely once;—and occasionally too, he will stand up during service, at a time when every one else is kneeling, to count the number of people constituting the congregation or to find out whether any of his tenants is absent from the church.

Para. 6. Surprised—taken unawares; struck with a novel feature of his eccentricity.

In the midst of—in the middle of, i. e., whilst the service was going on.

Calling out to—shouting to.

One John Matthews—a certain person whose name was John Matthews.

To mind what he was about—to take care of what he was doing.

Disturb—to throw into confusion; to create a scene; cause an agitation.

This—particular person, John Matthews by name.

It seems—it appears.

Remarkable—is notorious.

Kicking his heels—knocking one heel against another—this is a favourite occupation of the idle.

Diversion—amusement.

Authority—authoritative manner. This authorityof life—This command of the knight, Sir Roger, although exercised in that eccentric fashion which clings to him in all the incidents of life.

Exerted—exercised. **Odd**—eccentric; peculiar.

Page 33.

Manner—method; way.

Accompanies him—is exhibited by him.

Circumstances—affairs; matters.

The parish—those residing within the parish.

Not polite enough to see ..behaviour—**Polite**=polished. The meaning is that the manners of the parishioners were too rough and uncultivated to observe anything absurd in Sir Roger's manner of behaviour.

Besides that—in addition to the above consideration.

Worthiness—nobleness. **Observe**—notice. **Little**—insignificant.

Singularities—oddities; peculiarities.

Foils—things which, by contrast, show the beauty or excellence of others.

These little... qualities—these eccentricities in Sir Roger's character, petty though they are, serve to heighten the effect of his noble qualities rather than mar them, in the same way as pieces of tinfoil, trifling though they are in themselves, serve to enhance the brilliancy of precious stones rather than tarnish them in their setting on rings or other articles of jewellery.

Rather—more. **Set off**—show off.

Blemish—mar; blot; stain.

Besides that the general . qualities—The wisdom and virtue of the knight make his friends consider that his oddities far from marring his good qualities, serve to set them off better, by contrast.

Explanation of paragraph 6.

Yesterday, in church, I was astonished to hear Sir Roger, in the middle of the service, shout out to a person, John Matthews by name, to take care of what he was doing and not to throw the whole congregation into confusion by making a noise by kicking one of the heels of his boots against the other. It seems that this person, John Matthews, is notoriously a lazy fellow, and was kicking his

heels for his own amusement during the continuance of the service. This authoritative manner of the knight, though it is exercised in such a peculiar fashion and in all affairs of life, has a very wholesome effect on his parishioners who are too rude and uncultivated to observe anything absurd in it. His friends, on the other hand, who are capable of noticing the absurdity of this kind of behaviour, out of regard for his wisdom and virtue, look upon his oddities, more as serving to show off, by contrast, his good qualities, than as marring his virtues.

Para. 7. As soon as, &c.—It is not usual for a negative to follow a clause commencing with “as soon as.”

Finished—over. Nobody—no person ; no one.

Presumes—attempts ; ventures Stir—move. Is gone out of—has left.

In—situated in.

Chancel—the east end of a church, so called because it was formerly cut off by a screen with openings in it. (Latin—*cancellus*, a lattice window). The gentry usually sit in the chancel.

Bowing—bending their heads.

Such an one's—a particular tenant's—so and so's.

Do—Subjunctive mood, because used in an indirect question. The indicative *does* is more usual now—*do*=keeps ; is keeping.

Understood—is taken to be.

Secret—quiet

Reprimand—rebuke. When an enquiry is made after the health of any body absent, it is taken as a mild reproach.)

Explanation of paragraph 7.

When the sermon, which is the last function of the church service, is over, no one ventures to move from his seat until Sir Roger has left the church. He occupies a seat in the chancel, and he walks down to the door of the church between a double row of his tenants who stand up and bow to him reverentially as he passes between them. He often enquires of a person present how his father or mother or son whom he does not see in the church is, and such enquiries about the health of an absent person, when proceeding from him, are understood to be a mild and gentle rebuke.

Para. 8. Catechising-day—catechism is the name technically given to the system of questions asked regarding the elements of Christianity. Therefore, *catechising-day* would be a day on which young boys were to be 'confirmed' in the Christian faith.

Boys, when they attain the age of 14 or thereabouts, are asked questions to test whether they understand the principles of Christianity and then they are confirmed in the Christian religion. The ceremony is a mere formality, for the boys are taught the answers to the questions which will be put them beforehand. These answers they usually learn off after the manner of a parrot.

Pleased—delighted. **Answers**—i e, the questions put to him.

Well—satisfactorily, (i e, to Sir Roger).

Ordered—directed. **For**—for the purpose of.

Encouragement—so that by receiving the present he may be induced to still further cultivate his acquaintance with the Scriptures.

Accompanies it—sends at the same time.

Fitch—piece. **Added five pounds to**—increased by five pounds.

Clerk—the duty of a clerk in a church is to lead the responses, to say aloud 'Amen' at the end of each prayer, to give out the hymns, and generally to attend to the minister. Modern progress has almost reformed the clerk out of existence.

Place—i e, to the salary of the clerk's office.

He—Sir Roger. **Fellows**—people

Perfect—proficient. **Church-service**—church ceremonial and ritual

Incumbent—the holder of an office. The word is now almost entirely restricted to the holder of a church living, a vicar or a rector.

Bestow it—give it to a successor.

According to merit—not out of considerations of favouritism but purely out of considerations of desert.

[This is to encourage young fellows to make themselves perfect in church service].

Explanation of paragraph 8.

Sir Roger's chaplain has told me that on a day on which young people were to be "confirmed" if the knight was pleased with the answers given by any boy to the questions put to him, Sir Roger

would order a copy of the Bible to be presented to him and would often also send a piece of bacon to his mother for the purpose of encouraging the youngster to become more proficient in the Scriptures. The present to the mother was added to induce her to use her influence with her son to the same end. Sir Roger has also increased the clerk's salary by five pounds a year, and on the death of the present incumbent, who is a very old man, he has given it out that he will appoint his successor purely out of consideration of the merit of the candidate not out of any considerations of favouritism. This declaration of intention has been made in order to encourage the young fellows to perfect themselves in the church-service.

Para. 9. Fair understanding—the good understanding; the friendliness.

Concurrence—agreement of purpose. Mutual concurrence—the agreement between them.

Remarkable—noticeable

Very next—adjoining. Famous—notorious.

Differences—disagreements, misunderstandings

Contentions—disputes; quarrels.

Rise—arise; take place.

Live in—are always in. State—condition.

Perpetual—continual. Warfare—quarreling.

The parson'squire—attacking the squire; 'squire has the same derivation as esquire. The former denotes the chief landowner of a village, the latter one entitled to bear a coat of arms.

Page 34.

Comes to—attends or is present at Divine service.

Atheists—persons who do not believe in the existence of God.

Tithe-stealers—Tithe, properly 'tenth part' is the name given to the contribution that is made towards the support of the church. Tithes were paid in produce of the land, and the squire encouraged his tenants to defraud the parson by not giving a tenth.

The squire has tithe-stealers—on account of his difference with the parson, the squire does not himself attend church nor show any respect towards it. Following his example his tenants too, defraud the church by withholding their tithes.

While—on the other hand.

Instructs—informs ; endeavours to impress on them.

Instructs them in—preaches to them on.

Them—the congregation.

Dignity—high rank and worthiness.

His order—i. e., the clerical order.

Insinuates—indirectly hints. Note—the parson cannot say directly for otherwise the squire will dismiss him.

His patron—i. e., the squire who had presented him to his living.

Mattersextremity—matters have come to such a bad pass
Extremity—extremity of evil.

Are—have.

Mend his manners—improve his behaviour towards the church.

To praycongregation—That the parson would offer up, publicly, prayers to God for removing the Godlessness of the squire. This would have the effect of exposing his wickedness to the whole congregation, who are mostly, the tenants of the squire, and these would in consequence lose their respect for him.

Explanation of paragraph 9.

The good understanding which exists between Sir Roger and his chaplain, and their unity of purpose in doing good is all the more noticeable because the adjoining village is notorious for the dissensions and quarrels which exist and take place between the parson and the squire, who for that reason live in a condition of continual warfare. The parson is always attacking the squire, and the squire retaliates by not attending Divine Service. Whilst, on the one hand, the influence of the squire has converted his tenants into atheists and tithe-stealers, on the other hand, the parson, every Sunday in his sermons, strives to impress upon the minds of the congregation the dignity of the clerical office and hints indirectly that he is a better man than his patron. Things have come to such a bad pass owing to this difference between the squire and the parson that the squire has not said his prayers either in public or in private for the past half year ; and the parson threatens to expose to the tenants their landlord's Godlessness if he does not improve in his behaviour towards the church.

Para. 10. Feuds—quarrels ; dissensions Nature—kind.

Too frequent—of very common occurrence.

Fatal to—have a very mischievous influence on.

Ordinary—common, uneducated. So used—so liable.

Dazzled—blinded. With riches—by the show of riches.

Are so used .. riches—are so accustomed to be struck with wonder at the wealth and pomp of rich men.

Understanding—intelligence.

Man of an estate—a landed proprietor.

That they pay learning—they attach as much importance to the power of understanding of a rich man as to that of a learned man—i. e., they cannot persuade themselves to believe that the opinion of a learned man upon such matters is more to be relied upon than that of a rich man, in case of a difference between the two.

Very hardly—with great difficulty.

Regard—pay heed to Several—many.

Men of five hundred a year—men with an income from their estates amounting to £500 a year. This was a very large income in Addison's time, especially in the country—the purchasing power of money having been very much greater in those days than now.

Are very hardlyyear—are with the utmost difficulty so to be convinced as to accept a truth, however weighty it might be, that the preacher wishes to impress upon them, when they are aware that there are several rich men who have no faith in it.

Explanation of paragraph 10.

Such differences between the squire and the pastor of a place have a very pernicious effect upon the morals of the poor and ignorant people who entertain as much respect for the learning of a man as for his income. In their estimation a rich man is quite of as much importance as a learned man. Thus, when the parson and the squire disagree these common people do not know whom to believe. It is with very great difficulty that they are persuaded to accept a truth, however beautiful and important it may be in itself, when they know that many men with incomes of £500 a year do not believe in those truths.

Summary of the Essay—para. by para.

Para. 1. The keeping of Sunday prevents country people from degenerating into a kind of savages and barbarians because on that day the whole village meet together and people put on their most cheerful faces and cleanest costumes, and converse with one another on indifferent topics and join in adoration of the Supreme Being.

Para. 2. Sunday clears away the rust of the whole week, it refreshes in the minds of the people their notions of religion, and it puts both the sexes upon appearing in their most agreeable forms, and exerting all such qualities as are apt to give them a figure in the eye of the village.

Para. 3. Sir Roger is a good churchman. He has beautified the inside of his church with texts of his own choosing, he has made a present of a handsome pulpit-cloth to the church and has railed in the communion-table at his own expense. To encourage his tenants to go to church he has presented each with a hassock and a book of common prayers. And he has engaged an itinerant music master to teach them the tunes of the singing psalms.

Para. 4. Sir Roger being himself a very regular church-goer, and he being the landlord of the whole congregation, his presence keeps the congregation in excellent order. He does not allow any one but himself to sleep in church

Para. 5. Many other of the old knight's peculiarities betray themselves when he is attending Divine Service. For instance, he will often lengthen out a psalm tune for half a minute after every one else has finished—or he will repeat *Amen* three or four times after a prayer the matter of which pleases him.

Para. 6. Or again, as yesterday he did, he will shout out in the midst of Divine Service to some one to mind what he is doing and not to disturb the congregation.

Para. 7. When the service is over, no one presumes to move from his seat until Sir Roger has left the church. He walks to the church door between two rows of his tenants, who bow to him as he passes.

Para. 8. At a "Confirmation," if he is pleased with the answers given by a boy to the questions put to him, he will order a Bible to be given to him and often accompany the present of the Bible with a piece of bacon to the boy's mother. He had increased the salary of the clerk of the church by £5 a year, and to encourage young fellows to perfect themselves in the church service he has declared that the next incumbent will be selected according to merit.

Para. 9. The good understanding between Sir Roger and his parson is all the more noticeable on account of the fact that in the very next village the parson and the squire are at perpetual warfare—the one making atheists and tithe-stealers of his tenants, the other threatening to offer up public prayers for his patron if he does not mend his ways towards the church and indirectly hinting that he is a better man than the squire.

Para. 10. Feuds of this nature are very demoralizing to the common people, who regard wealth with as much respect as learning. And truths, however lofty and important they may be, preached from the pulpit do not appeal to poor and ignorant people if they know that there are many rich people who do not believe them.

ESSAY IX.

SIR ROGER AT THE ASSIZES.

[This essay forms paper No. 132 of the Spectator, the motto pre-faced to the essay is "comes jucundus in via pro vehiculo est."]

The meaning of this motto when translated is as follows :—"An agreeable companion upon the road is as good as a coach."

Assizes—formal sessions or sittings of a court for judicial purposes.

Page 34.

NOTES.

Para. 1. First—chief ; principal. Care—concern. Should be—ought to be.

To avoid—so to act as to prevent.

Reproaches of his own heart—stings of one's own conscience.

Next—the next in importance. Escape—avoid.

Censures—reproaches. Adverse criticism.

Of the world—of the public generally ; of society at large.

The last—the latter, *i. e.*, 'reproaches of the world.

Interferes with—collides or clashes with.

The former—*i. e.*, the reproaches of his own heart.

Entirely neglected—utterly or absolutely discarded—no notice or thought ought to be bestowed upon it.

But otherwise—when however the 'censures of the world' are not in opposition to the reproaches of his own heart.

Honest mind—sincere, straight forward person, a good man.

Those.....itself—that self-satisfaction or self approval.

Page 35.

Seconded--supported.

Approbations and applauses—are now always used in the singular in the sense of *praise in general*.

But otherwise.....public—if the voice of the public is in no way contrary to the dictates of one's own conscience, the greatest satisfaction a man can have is to gain both public approval for his conduct and the approval of his own conscience.

Sure—certain of the rectitude of. Conduct—acts.

Verdict—judgment ; opinion. Behaviour—actions.

Warranted—assured ; guaranteed. Confirmed—strengthened.

Explanation of paragraph 1.

A man's principal concern should be so to act as to avoid the stings of his own conscience and next to avoid the reproach of society at large. If, however, there be conflict between the dictate of his own "inner sense" and what the public would approve of, he ought unhesitatingly to abandon the latter consideration. But if it is otherwise, there can be no greater satisfaction to an honest mind than to note that what his own conscience approves of is also approved of by public opinion. A man is always more certain of the rectitude of his conduct if he can have the approval of his conscience assured and strengthened by a verdict of approval of society.

Para. 2. At peace within himself—Always finds the approval of his own conscience for his acts ; always enjoys self-satisfaction on account of his conscientiously discharging his duties

About him—around him.

Suitable—fitting.

Tribute—homage.

Universal—widespread.

Benevolence—generosity.

To mankind—to every one alike.

He receivesneighbourhood—For his wide-spread generosity to all men round him, he deservedly gets repaid in the shape of the homage, consisting in the love and the good will, of all those that live near him.

Lately—recently.

Met with—noticed ; came across.

Odd instances—curious cases ; peculiar instances

General—universal.

To—towards.

Needs—an old genitive of the noun 'need,' meaning 'of necessity' and used adverbially. 'He had made up his mind to carry, &c.'

Carry—take.

Will Wimble—the imaginary character who represents the man of fashion of Addison's time.

County Assizes—the Assizes are the highest of the local courts of justice, held in each county twice a year, by judges going on circuit.

Upon the road—on the way to the county Assizes, i. e., to the Assize court.

Plain men—simple and unpretending men of the county as distinguished from the fine and fashionable gentle men of the town.

Rid—old past tense, for rode.

Before us—in front of us.

Conversed—talked—held conversation ; discoursed ; chatted.

During—i. e., during the time that Will Wimble and the 'plain men' were thus chatting and riding ahead.

Acquainted me with—made known to me.

Explanation of paragraph 2.

My friend Roger is one of those men who has not only the absolute approval of his own conscience for whatever he does, but has also the affection and regard of all men around him. He is suitably repaid for his wide-spread generosity by the love and good-wishes of every one who lives in the neighbourhood. Only recently I came across two or three peculiar causes of that universal respect which is shown to the good old knight. For instance, he insisted on Will Wimble and myself accompanying him to the county Assizes. As we were proceeding to the Assize court Will Wimble joined a couple of plain men who were riding in front of us and engaged for a time in conversation with them. Whilst Will Wimble was thus riding ahead and conversing with the simple men of the country, my friend Sir Roger informed me of their character.

Para. 3. That hath—who has.

Spaniel—a species of dog with long hair on its body and long pendant ears.

By his side—by the side of him.

Yeoman—A class of people now become extinct in England. They were well to do peasant proprietors. Not recognized as gentlemen "they had none of the absurd prejudices of the aristocrats. Comfortably off as they were, as men of substance they were an important element in the state. Their order furnished the best class of soldiers. (Scott's *Ivanhoe* gives the reader a good idea of the yeoman) *yeoman*=a village man; a country man.

Of about . year—with an income of about a hundred pounds a year—a considerable sum in those days.

Just within . Act—The Game Act permits a certain class of people *only* to have the right of shooting at pleasure. The income of a hundred pounds is the lowest limit, which entitles a man to shoot. This man's income being a hundred pounds precisely, he is just entitled to shoot.

Qualified—entitled under the Game Act by virtue of his property qualification.

Hare—an animal something like a rabbit, only larger in size—'hare' comes under the head of 'game.'

Pheasant—a bird with bright coloured feathers—it is game and its flesh is considered a great delicacy.

Knocks down a dinner—shoots with his gun and kills game sufficient to provide him with his dinner.

Lives.....than—lives at a much less cost than.

So good an estate—an estate producing so much as £100 a year in the form of income.

Would ..partridges—As he shoots partridges and lessens their number, he reduces the chances of the knight's own sport; he is not therefore a desirable neighbour so far as the knight is concerned.

Very sensible man—a man of great common sense.

Shoots flying—shoots birds whilst they are on the wing, *i. e.*, whilst they are flying (shooting a bird on the perch is considered unsportsmanlike)

Foreman—spokesman; head man.

Petty-jury—A jury of twelve men, selected at the Assizes, to give a verdict on cases tried. The *Grand Jury* only decided whether a case was fit to go before a judge and jury. The petty jury were therefore a body of jurors whose duty was similar to the duty of jurors and assessors in this country. The Grand Jury performed the functions of a committing magistrate.

Explanation of paragraph 3.

'The first of them' said Sir Roger, the man who has a spaniel by his side is a yeoman with an income of a hundred pounds a year. He is therefore just entitled, under the Game Laws to use a gun for the purposes of shooting game, such as a hare or pheasant, or a partridge. He kills on the average two or three birds or hares a week, and by so doing he lives much cheaper than those who are not entitled to shoot game—for he gets his meat free when he shoots game. He would be a very acceptable neighbour to me were it not for the fact that he shoots too many partridges and thus reduces my chances of sport. Otherwise I have no other complaint to make against him. On the whole, he is a very sensible man and a thorough sportsman, for he shoots birds whilst they are on the wing, (*i. e.*, whilst they are flying) and not whilst they are on the perch. He has moreover several times been appointed the foreman of the petty-jury.

[Note.—“Note the humorous sketch given and how it brings out the knight's own character of a sportsman. The introduction begins with “he is just within the Game Act.” Then he is a good and an honest man and “would be a good neighbour if he did not shoot too many partridges.” Then the knight goes on “in short, he is a very sensible man” and perhaps to prove his assertion mentions “shoots flying.” But the knight has some sense of the importance and the respectability of a person connected with the judicial department, so he mentions, rather as a second thought, “has been a foreman of the petty-jury.”]

Para. 4. The other—*i. e.*, the other man.

Along with—together with ; in the company of.

Tom Touchy—a humorous name, the word *Touchy* denoting the character of the man. In ordinary language '*Touchy*' means a sensitive or an easily irritable person.

Famous—notorious (note the humorous use of the word).

For...everybody—for going to law with everybody on the least provocation.

Not one—*i. e.*, not one person.

In—living in.

Sued—brought a suit against.

Quarter sessions—see ante, notes on Essay VI. para. 5.

Rogue—rascal.

Page 36.

Impudence—cheek ; impertinent assurance.

To go to law—to file a suit in court against.

The widow—the reference is to that particular widow with whom Sir Roger was in love—the perverse, beautiful widow of Steele's Essay on Sir Roger. It has been surmised that the widow referred to was Mrs. Catherine Boevy, widow of William Boevy, Esq., who was left a widow at the age of 22, and died in January 1726.

His head is full of—he is always thinking of such matters as.

Costs—*i. e.*, the costs of a lawsuit, which are *usually* awarded by the court to the winning party. The rule of law is that costs "abide the event."

Damages—*i. e.*, the compensation awarded by a court to a party who has been prejudiced or injured by the acts of another.

Ejectments—an ejectment as used in the context means "a legal writ, issued by a court, commanding a tenant to quit."

Plagued—worried ; annoyed ; troubled ; vexed, (*i. e.*, by a lawsuit).

Honest—not crafty ; straightforward.

• **So long**—For such a long time, (Cf. "The law's delay" Hamlet).
For—on account of a trespass committed by them.

Trespass—is a civil wrong, technically called a Tort. It is used roughly speaking of all sorts of intrusions and encroachments.

In—committed by.

Hedges—fences, enclosing a field.

Forced—compelled, on account of the costs of litigation.

Ground—land.

It—*i. e.*, the fence.

Enclosed—*i. e.*, surrounded ; enclosed by surrounding.

Defray—meet ; pay. **Charges**—costs ; expenses.

Prosecution—technically, only applicable to criminal cases but here means the conduct of a case, Touchy being the plaintiff or the person who complains of the injury.

Left him—left him heir to an estate worth £80 a year.

Score—twenty.

Cast—defeated in a lawsuit.

So often—in so many cases ; so frequently.

He has cast and been cast, &c.—he has defeated others and been defeated himself so often that the costs of the litigation have made him poor.

Going upon--going to the Assize court in connection with.

The old.... willow-tree—this was an old case about which Sir Roger had seen him go into court several times before. (Note.—How insignificant is the ground of the prosecution—only a willow-tree).

Explanation of paragraph 4..

The other man that is accompanying him is Tom Touchy, a fellow notorious for his propensity to go to law with every one. There is not a person living in the town in which he lives with whom he has not gone to law. The rascal had even the cheek on one occasion to sue the widow in a court of law. He is always thinking of costs, damages and ejectments. He once vexed a couple of honest gentlemen for committing a trespass by breaking down one of his fences for so long a time that in the end he was forced to sell the field, which that fence hedged round, in order to meet the costs of conducting the litigation. His father left him property which once yielded him an income of £80 a year, but he has spent so much in litigation that he barely has now property worth £30 a year.

Para. 5. As—whilst.

Giving.....account—narrating to me the story or history of.

Stopped short—came to a standstill.

Came up to—came equal with.

Appeal to him—ask him to decide for them : (note, this few minutes' conversation had been sufficient to set on foot a disagreement between Will Wimble and Tom Touchy).

Dispute—quarrel.

Arose—had arisen.

It seems—it appeared.

Angling—fishing.

In such a hole—in a particular pool of the river concealed from public view.

Hearing out—listening to the end of without interrupting.

Such an one—So and so. (Addison does not give the man's name).

If he pleased—if he so desired it.

Might take the law of him—might sue him on a charge of trespass and demand damages for that.

When Touchy.....river—Touchy's head is full of lawsuits only. Without listening to the end of the story he cried out Mr. so and so if he wished to do so might prosecute him for fishing there. The chances of a prosecution are all that interest him.

Upon a round trot—whilst trotting on hard, *i. e.*, he never paused to give them much attention.

With the air of a man—with the demeanour of a man.

Give—deliver. Rashly—without careful calculation ; hastily.

Much might sides—Notice that with all Sir Roger's mock gravity, what he gives out is not a decision at all—much might be said in support of the contention of either party.

Determination—verdict ; opinion ; decision.

Neither by it—because from what the knight said neither of them found his own conduct censurable.

Weway—we hastened onwards as quickly as possible.

Explanation of paragraph 5.

Whilst Sir Roger was giving me the above account of Tom Touchy, Will Wimble and his two companions came to a standstill until we got level with them. After having paid their respects to Sir Roger Will told him that Mr. Touchy and he would have to appeal to him in connection with a dispute which had arisen between them. It appears that Will had been giving his fellow-traveller an account of his fishing one day in a certain concealed pool of a river and that Touchy instead of hearing the story out had said that Mr. so and so, if he pleased, might sue Will for having so fished there. Sir Roger heard them both, all the time proceeding forward trotting fast, and after some hesitation, told them, with the air of a man who would not say anything hastily, that much might be said on both sides. This decision, not throwing the blame exclusively upon either of them, neither of them was dissatisfied with it, and so we proceeded on our way to the Assizes in the best possible spirits.

Para. 6. Was sat—we would say 'had sat'—*i. e.*, the business for the day had begun.

Justices—judges. Places—seats. Bench—the raised platform on which the judges sit—the part of the court room where the judges sit.

Made room.....knight—provided Sir Roger with a seat.

Atthem—at the position of honour on the dais.

Who for his reputation—who for the purpose of maintaining his reputation as a man of importance and credit with the judge, made a point of whispering in his ear as if he had something important to tell him.

Took occasion to whisper--availed himself of the opportunity of whispering.

Page 37.

He was circuit—A commonplace observation of politeness. Circuit—rounds. In England there are no permanent courts and judges in every country as there are in every district in India, The judges go round the country during the sessions time.

Proceedings—work ; the transaction of its business.

Infinitely—very much ; very greatly.

Great—grand. Appearance—show ; (manner).

Solemnity—gravity.

So properly—so correctly—as it ought to be ; so fitly.

Getting up—rising up.

In some pain—I felt anxious lest he should make himself ridiculous.

For him—one his account. The spectator was afraid that the knight would be called to order as his was an eminently indecorous proceeding. But it seems that the knight's oddities were known to everybody.

Acquitted himself of—uttered ; said.

With a . business—with a very business like look.

Intrepidity—courage.

Explanation of paragraph 6.

The court was already sitting when Sir Roger arrived ; but this notwithstanding all the judges made room for him and gave him a seat at their head. Sir Roger for the sake of his reputation in the country took advantage of the opportunity to whisper in the judge's ear, that he was glad that his lordship had met with such fine

weather whilst out on circuit. I was listening to the proceedings of the court very attentively, and was exceedingly pleased with the solemn manner in which the laws of our country are administered, when I observed, to my great surprise, Sir Roger, getting up, in the midst of the trial to speak. I became very anxious on his account lest he should make himself ridiculous, until I found he had uttered two or three sentences with a very business like look and courage.

Para. 7. Upon his first rising—when Sir Roger first rose up to speak.

Hushed--became quite.

Generalpeople—the country folk present began to whisper the one to the other.

Was up—was on his legs and about to speak.

So littlepurpose—had so little to do with the business in hand.

Designed—intended.

Inform—instruct.

To givemy eye—to make himself look important in my eye.

Keep up—maintain. Credit—reputation, prestige.

And I believe.....country—The knight's speech had nothing whatever to do with the business on hand, and I therefore think that his intention in delivering that speech was perhaps not so much to help the judges in the trial that was going on, as to make himself look important in my eyes and to preserve his reputation as a good speaker in the country.

Explanation of paragraph 7.

As soon as Sir Roger rose up a silence fell upon the court, and it was whispered among the country people that Sir Roger had risen to speak. What however he had to say had so little to do with the business on hand that I shall not trouble the reader by repeating it. And I am convinced that Sir Roger's intention in making the speech was more to make himself look important in my eyes than to assist the judges and to preserve his reputation as a good speaker in the country.

Para. 8. Highly—greatly. Delighted—pleased.

Court rose—the “Sittings” of the court was concluded. See—notice; observe; mark.

Gentlemen of the country—the gentry of the neighbourhood.

Gathering about—collecting round. Striving—endeavouring—the idea is that every one tried his best or to the utmost extent of his ability.

Compliment—show indications of his esteem and regard for Sir Roger by saying something or doing something.

Striving who . most—the gentry of the neighbourhood vied with each other in paying Sir Roger the highest compliment.

At the ..that—and at the same time; whilst the gentry were striving to compliment Sir Roger, the common people gazed upon, &c, 'that' is a relative pronoun having for its antecedent "him" understood.

Ordinary people—common people. Gazed—stared in an attitude of astonishment, (but the word 'gaze' always implies intentness and thoughtfulness).

At a distance—from a respectful distance.

Not a little admiring—admiring very much.

Explanation of paragraph 8.

When the sittings of the court was concluded, I was highly pleased to observe the deference and respect paid to Sir Roger by the gentry of the neighbourhood, who vied with each other in their endeavours to compliment him. And at the same time the ordinary people stared at him from a respectful distance wondering very much at his courage in not being afraid to speak to a judge.

Para. 9. In our return—on the return journey. During the course of our return journey.

Met with—came across. Odd—strange; peculiar.

Accident—event (Lat. accidere, to happen). The modern meaning is different.

Forbear—refrain from. Relating—narrating. Shows—makes quite evident.

Giving him—showing him. Marks—indications.

Esteem—regard. Were arrived upon—had arrived at.

Verge—boundaries; confines. His—Sir Roger's.

Estate—property (zamindari). Stopped—halted; waited for a time.

Little inn—small tavern. In the England of Addison's time there were in the country no *hotels* such as we now understand by the word—but in their stead there were taverns where travellers could "put up" their horses, refresh themselves both with food and drink and stay some days for rest or pleasure if they so desired.

The man of the house—the man who owned the inn—the host. It was usual in those days to speak of the proprietor of the inn where one was putting up as his host, for properly speaking that man was entertaining the other though in return for a payment.

Page 38.

To do--to show. **Honour**—respect. **Old**—former, (not aged).

Since—ago. **Put him, &c.**—caused a portrait of Sir Roger to be painted on the signboard of the Inn (Formerly it was the general custom for inns to have up a sign before their door. If it was under the special patronage of any body, his head, or that of any local magnate painted on a board, served as the "Sign.")

Before—in front of. **So that**—and therefore ; consequently.

Had hung out—i. e., had been hanging out. **Upon**—on.

Had hung road—the signboard bearing the portrait of Sir Roger had been posted along side the road, to indicate the situation or locality of the inn. The signboard being posted high above the road is spoken of as looking down upon the road from its position of eminence.

Explanation of paragraph 9.

On our return journey a very singular occurrence took place. I cannot refrain from narrating it because it shows admirably the extent to which all who know Sir Roger are desirous of showing him indications of their regard for him. On arriving upon the verge of Sir Roger's estate our party halted for a while at a little inn to take rest. The proprietor of the inn, it appeared, had formerly been a servant of Sir Roger's, and to honour his former master had caused Sir Roger's portrait to be painted on a board to serve as the sign of his inn and further had called the inn "the Knight's Head." This the man had done without having previously taken Sir Roger's consent—and therefore Sir Roger knew nothing about it until he himself saw the signboard.

Para. 10. Acquainted with—made aware of the fact that his portrait had been made the sign of the inn.

Finding—realizing. **Indiscretion**—want of proper judgment ; thoughtlessness.

Proceeded wholly from—was entirely the result of.

Affection and good will—esteem and regard.

Only—simply, *i. e.*, without rebuking him for his indiscretion.

Made him—paid him. Too high—too great, *i. e.*, a compliment which exceeded that which was deserved.

Compliment—an expression of civility, respect or regard; tribute.

Fellow—this word is generally used to denote a person of mean birth and low position in life

Seemed to think—expressed his opinion that.

That could hardly be—*i. e.*, that it was impossible that any compliment could be too high for Sir Roger—[hence, the meaning is that the host considered Sir Roger's merit to be above all praise].

Added—*i. e.*, Sir Roger added.

Decisive—determined. Look—appearance; aspect.

Under—below the rank of.

Told him—suggested to him.

At the same time—in addition.

Altered—changed; modified. With—by means of.

Touches—*i. e.*, of the paint brush.

Be at the charge of—would pay the cost of.

It—*i. e.*, the alteration. Sir Roger offers to pay the painter for modifying his features on the sign-board.

Accordingly—in accordance with Sir Roger's suggestion.

By—in accordance with. Directions—instructions.

Add—*i. e.*, to the knight's portrait. Whiskers—the hair growing on the sides of the face.

Aggravation—increase; hence alteration by adding fresh features, (from Latin *gravis*, heavy).

Features—outlines of the face.

To change.....Head—so to alter the features as to make Sir Roger's features resemble the features of a Saracen.

Saracen's Head—originated in the times of the Crusades. It became a very common sign throughout the country.

Explanation of paragraph 10.

As soon as Sir Roger came to know that his portrait was hanging up as the sign of the inn, he, realizing that his former servant's want of proper judgment was the result of the great regard and esteem in which he held his former master, instead of rebuking him for thus making use of his portrait without his consent, merely told him that the compliment which had been intended to be paid to him was too high a compliment for any one below the rank of a duke. This however the landlord of the inn was not willing to admit. With a more determined look therefore, Sir Roger told him that at any rate the features ought to some extent to be modified, and that it could very easily be managed with a few touches of the paint brush. Accordingly, Sir Roger's features on the sign-board were slightly modified, a pair of whiskers were added, and the face on the sign-board made to resemble a "*Saracen's Head*."

Para. 11. This story—i. e., the entire story I have related above.

Alighting—getting down from his horse.

In—within.

Inhearing—standing so close to me that I could hear whatever was being said.

His honour's head—the portrait of Sir Roger's head and face.

Brought back—i. e., from the painter.

Alterations—modifications ; changes.

Ordered—directed. In it—to it. —

Usual—habitual.

Related—told me. Particulars—the details of the story.

The head—the sign-board with the 'head' painted on it.

Forbear—keep from. Discovering—showing. .

Greater.....ordinary—more marks or signs of pleasantry than I am accustomed to do—I laughed loud instead of smiling silently as is my way.

Than ordinary—than I usually do.

Upon.....face—when the fierce looking face of the Saracen was brought and displayed before us.

Under which ..old friend—In which although efforts were made by the painter with his touches to make the face frown and look with an uncommon degree of fierceness, I could yet detect a faint likeness of my old friend Sir Roger.

Monstrous—exaggerated. Distant—faint.

Resemblance—likeness. Upon—on.

Truly—truthfully ; accurately.

Page 39.

Know him—recognize the face as being his.

Conjuring me—pressing me ; entreating me. Still—even after the alteration.

Composed my countenance—settled my features—so as not to laugh or smile whilst speaking.

Much.....sides--the very same reply that Sir Roger gave to Will Wimble and Tom Touchy.

Explanation of paragraph 11.

I would not have known the story I have related, had it not been for the fact that as soon as the knight got down from his horse, the 'host' of the inn informed him that his 'head' had been brought back the previous night with those alterations made to the features which Sir Roger had suggested. Sir Roger thereupon directed the sign-board to be brought into the room and proceeded in his habitually cheerful manner to tell me the whole story from the beginning. On the sign-board being brought into the room I could not help appearing more amused than I usually allow myself to appear, at the monstrous face which was exhibited, and though the face was made to frown and the eyes to stare, I could still detect in the features, some resemblance to the features of my friend. Seeing my look of amusement Sir Roger asked my faithful opinion on the point whether or not he could be recognized in that disguise. At first I remained silent as is my habit, but on being pressed to answer the question, I replied that much might be said on both sides.

Para. 12. Adventures--peculiar and funny incidents. With—together with. Behaviour—i. e., the part played by the knight in connection with these incidents.

Gave--afforded. Pleasant--enjoyable.

As.....with—as I have ever experienced.

Explanation of paragraph 12.

The several incidents which had taken place during the day, and the part the knight played in connection with them, gave me so much pleasure that I don't, in the course of my travels, recollect having experienced so pleasurable a day.

Summary of the Essay.

1. A man should always act according to the dictates of his conscience. Popular applause is worth gaining also. But if it interferes with the judgments of one's own conscience, it should be totally disregarded. It is most satisfactory to have both self-approbation and public applause.

2. Sir Roger is a man who gains, for all his actions, both the approval of his own conscience and the approbation of the public. Instances of willing tribute of affection and esteem paid to Sir Roger in return for his general goodness and universal benevolence, abound everywhere.

3. The author (Spectator) and Will Wimble were one day compelled to accompany Sir Roger to the county Assizes. On the road they fell in with two "plain men"—one a yeoman with a hundred pounds a year and therefore just within the Game Act, whom Sir Roger admitted to be a sensible fellow but objectionable as a neighbour because he shot too many partridges; and the other, Tom Touchy, a fellow notorious for his litigious spirit, who once had the impudence to go to law with "the" widow, and who by litigation has materially reduced his means.

4. A quarrel occurred between Tom Touchy and Will Wimble, and they referred the matter in dispute to Sir Roger who, after listening to what both had to say, satisfied both parties by gravely saying that much might be said on both sides.

5. The party arrive at the Assize Court late but room is made for Sir Roger who, on taking his seat, whispered some commonplace remarks of politeness to a judge seated by his sides in order to secure the respect of the people. In the midst of the trial, Sir Roger made a speech not much to the purpose, perhaps for the purpose of making an impression upon the "Spectator." For this he is immensely applauded after court.

6. On the journey home a curious incident happened at an inn, the host of which was a former servant of the knight's. To testify to his respect and affection for the knight, he had his head hung out to serve as the sign of the inn. Sir Roger demurred to this as too high a compliment. As the fellow had thus acted with indiscretion sheerly out of his affectionate zeal, the knight had his portrait altered into the Saracen's Head at his own expense.

7. This story is told to 'the Spectator,' and on his being asked by the knight if the likeness had not been changed sufficiently, he replies "much might be said on both sides."

8 The spectator said that he had spent that day as pleasantly as any he had spent in the course of his travels.

ESSAY X.

SIR ROGER AT THE HUNT.—Addison.

Para. 1. At present—at the time when the essay was written.

Too old for—so old as not to be able to pursue the particular form of sport, i. e., fox-hunting.

Fox-hunting—a form of sport which consists in pursuing a fox on horseback accompanied with a pack of hounds until the fox is tired out and is overtaken by the huntsmen and the hounds. Fox-hunting is a specially English sport, and has been introduced by Englishmen into various countries, although other animals may have to be hunted instead of the fox. Fox-hunting is a privileged pursuit, no one being challenged for trespass when engaged in it except there be wilful mischief, though it is tacitly understood that all who take part in it, actively or as spectators, shall do the least damage possible.

To keep...action—in order to continue his active habits by some sort of physical exercise.

Disposed of—parted with; given away or perhaps sold.

Beagles—a species of hound or dog which tracks by scent, smaller in size than the English hound, with large, pendulous ears, a strong muscular body and legs, and usually black-and-tan or white-and-tan in colour.

Got—bought. Pack—a number of dogs kept together and taken out together for the purpose of hunting. Hounds are always employed in numbers for the purpose of hunting—the particular number of hounds taken out on any particular hunt is called a "pack."

Stop hounds—dogs trained to hunt slowly and to stop at the huntsman's signal.

These—i. e., the species of hounds known as stop-hounds.

Want—lack—stop-hounds are not very swift runners.

He—Sir Roger. To make amends for—to make up for.

Deepness of their mouths—i. e., "depth and volume of voice" when "giving tongue" in hunting.

Deepness—loudness. **Mouths**—cry. (The meaning is that their cry was trained by Sir Roger). **Notes**—sounds made by them.

Variety of their notes—diversity in the pitch of the sounds made by them.

Suited—fitted; adapted. The whole cry—i. e., when all the dogs cry together **Makes up**—results in; constitutes. **Complete consort**—perfect harmony.

Nice—particular; exacting. **Particular**—matter; connection i. e., the cry of the hounds.

The other day—not long ago.

By—through. **Expressions**—statements expressive of.

Civility—courtesy; thanks. **Expressions of civility**—i. e., thanking him for the kind present, and apologizing for declining to accept it. **Desired**—requested.

Base—The low or grave notes in music; therefore, deep voiced.

Counter-tenor—"or alto, a part higher in pitch than the tenor, sung by a high male voice; then a man who possesses such a voice. The humour of the passage consists in the application to hounds of terms usually applied to men. (*Deighton*).

The meaning of the passage from—But ..tenor is—what Sir Roger at that time most wanted was a hound possessing in its voice the note of the highest pitch of a male human voice, called *counter-tenor*, in order to complete the harmony of the cry of his hounds; but as the hound that was sent as a present had the deepest note of the male voice called *base*, so, with many thanks and apologies he returned it, though it was a very good hound in every other respect.

Could I—If I only could—Addison slyly insinuates that Sir Roger had not read Shakespeare.

Page 40.

Taken the hint from—borrowed the idea from.

Theseus—King of Athens—a character in Shakespear's play—*'a Midsummer night's dream.'*

Are bred of—belong to the species of.

Spartan kind—the Spartan species of hounds represented as famous in ancient times. Sparta was the rival state to Athens.

So—just as the Spartan hounds are—just in the fashion of the Spartan hounds.

So flew'd—having large dependent chaps like the Spartan-hounds.

So sanded—of the same sandy colour, a colour which is one of the true denotements of the blood-hound.

With earsdew—with ears so long that they almost touch the ground.

Their heads ..dew—such long ears hang down from their heads, &c

Crook-knee'd—having supple knees, suited to easiness of movement.

Dew-lapp'd ..Bulls—with dew laps as broad as those of the bulls of Thessaly, a state of ancient Greece. Dowlap "is the loose flesh hanging down from the throats of cattle, and is so-called from its lapping up the dew as they graze.

Slow in pursuit—lacking swiftness.

Matched in .. each—with their voices perfectly adjusted, so as to produce a well-attuned harmony, as if they were a set of bells arranged, each under the other in a perfect musical scale.

A cry moreto—a more tuneful pack of hounds was never summoned for chase by huntsmen.

Cheer'd...horn—encouraged or aroused to activity by sounding blasts from the hunting horn.

Explanation of paragraph 1.

Being now too old for fox-hunting, which form of sport calls for a great deal of energy, strength and agility, Sir Roger, in order to keep himself in practice, and so that he should not give up hunting altogether, has disposed of his beagles and purchased a pack of stop-hounds. The peculiarity of these dogs is that though they are not very swift runners, yet they have a most musical cry which compensates their lack of speed. Sir Roger is so particular in this respect that when the other day a friend of his presented him a very fine hound, he returned it because the cry of the dog was not in keeping with the harmony of the cry of his pack. If I could only believe that my friend Sir Roger had at any time read Shakespeare's *Midsummer Night's Dream*, I would be inclined to think that he had borrowed his idea from Theseus speech in that play.

Para. 2. Keen at—eager in connection with ; takes so much interest in. This sport—hare hunting. Out—i. e, out hunting. Offering—volunteering. Easy—easy going, having an easy going pace. Pad—riding horse (see ante).

Prevailed—induced ; persuaded.

To make one of the company—to become one of the party of hunters.

Rid—rode. Observe—notice.

General benevolence—universal or wide-spread courtesy shown as a mark of regard or esteem.

Thought—regarded ; considered. Happy—fortunate and therefore happy.

Generally—usually. Requited—returned. Nod—inclination of the head.

[In England the fields of different farmers are divided off from each other by means of hedges or fences, and to allow of passage across such fields, gates are fitted to the hedges. These gates are referred to in this paragraph].

Explanation of paragraph 2.

Sir Roger is a very keen huntsman, indeed, so keen is he that he has been out a hunting nearly every day since I came down to stay with him. I too was induced to accompany the knight yesterday morning on his chaplain offering to let me have the use of his easy going horse. It gave me great pleasure, as we rode along, to notice how everyone in the neighbourhood thought himself happy if only he could get the opportunity of doing the knight some small service, such for instance, as opening a gate for him to pass through. These little marks of regard and esteem the knight on his part usually recognized by a nod or a smile accompanied by kind enquiries concerning the relatives of the person who had done him the service.

Para. 3. Rid—ridden. Large—expansive ; wide.

Heath—a stretch of country covered with coarse grass (maidan).

Sportsmen—those who were to take an active part in the hunting.

Began to—commenced to.

Beat—i. e., to beat the bushes growing on the heath in order to drive out any game that might be concealed under the 'covers'.

Done so—had been beating the bushes. When—at which moment of time.

As I was.....company—I being at a little distance from the rest of the party.

I saw—the meaning is, that the author having been at a little distance from the rest of the party, was by reason of that fact enabled to see the hare, &c.

Hare—a common field-animal like a rabbit, but larger, having a divided upper lip and long hind legs. .

Pop out—rush out suddenly. Small—low.

Furze-brake—furze bush Almost under—quite close to.

Almost... feet—the hare popped out so close to my horse's feet that it seemed as if it had emerged from under my horse's feet.

Marked—noted well.

Way—road; course. Sensible of—aware of.

Extending—stretching out in the direction in which the hare had run

Extraordinary . insignificant—(insignificant-meaningless). The meaning is—those who are in the habit of motioning with their hands often do so without intending to convey any particular meaning by so doing, but those who are not thus habituated seldom motion with their hands without meaning something exceptional by it The author was not given to motioning with his hands—and therefore Sir Roger knew that when he did so, it must have had some significance or meaning attached to it.

Puss—Lit. a cat, here means the hare which had been under cover (hiding).

That way—i. e., the way in which the author had pointed.

Put them upon the scent—started them off in pursuit of the hare Hounds usually follow a hare by smelling the ground over which the hare has run and thus discovering exactly the course it has taken.

Page 41.

Going off—starting off.

Muttering—saying in a low voice.

'Twas a wonder—it was really astonishing; it was a miracle.

They hadsport—had not been deprived of all chances of finding any game at all.

For want....."stole away"—because the author instead of shouting out "stole away " had kept quiet and morely motioned with his arm—a motioning which might not have been understood.

'Stole away'—the huntsman's cry when the fox or hare beaks cover on seeing that the hounds have viewed him or her, as a hare is usually styled. (*Deighton*).

Explanation of paragraph 3.

About a mile's ride from home brought us to an expansive plain on which were growing many small bushes. The sportsmen began to beat these bushes, and whilst they were doing so, I being some little distance from them, saw a hare rush out from under a furze-brake almost under my horse's feet. I noted well the direction in which the hare ran and tried my best to make the company aware of it by stretching out my arm. But this motioning on my part was to no purpose because no one seemed to understand me, until Sir Roger saw it, and knowing that I never motioned without meaning something thereby, he rode up to me and asked me whether 'Puss' had run in the direction I was pointing. On my answering "yes," he immediately called together the hounds and put them upon the scent. As the hounds were starting off, I heard one of the villagers say to a companion that it was really wonderful that by reason of my silence they had not been deprived of a whole day's sport,—a calamity which had been averted only by the action of Sir Roger.

Para. 4. Aversion—dislike. Leaping—jumping. Hedges—fences.

Made me—inclined me. Withdraw—retire.

A—a stretch of. Rising ground—raised ground; highland.

Picture—sight; view. Whole—entire—the meaning is, that from the raised ground it was possible to view the chase as a whole.

Chase—the pursuit of the hare by the hounds and riders which constituted the hunt

Fatigue—exhaustion experienced by.

Keeping in.....hounds—following the hounds.

Threw them—placed them. Above—more than.

Straight forward—straight ahead.

Flying the country—running away (and thereby spoiling sport).

Might—would. Wheeled—turned round.

Station—position. Manner—way; fashion.

Gave—afforded.

Distinct—clear—(comprehensive). View—sight.

Explanation of paragraph 4.

The remark of the country fellow which led me to realize that my want of knowledge of the ways of hunting might really spoil the day's sport, together with my dislike of jumping hedges and fences induced me to retire from active participation in the hunt, and I took up my station on the top of a plot of rising land from where I could command a comprehensive view of the hunt. I thus shared in all the pleasures that could be derived from the sport without experiencing any of the fatigue that would have followed had I chosen to follow the hounds. Very soon after popping out from under cover the hare managed to leave the hunters and the hounds about a mile behind her—and I thought at first that the animal might run on straight ahead, but with feelings of great pleasure I noticed from my position on the elevation that instead of so doing she turned round and commenced to run round and round the hill on the top of which I had taken up my position—thus giving me a very distinct view of the sport.

Para. 5. Her—i. e., the hare. First pass by—i. e., pass by first.

Unravelling—clearing up, i. e., discovering by means of their scent

Track—path ; course. Made—described ; covered.

Following—i. e., following up.

Doubles—meanderings ; wandering over and over again over the same path or course.

Delighted—greatly pleased. In observing—to observe.

That—the. Deference—respect ; a yielding to the opinion of another.

Best—the remainder. Character—reputation. Them—i. e., the hounds.

At fault—i. e., following up a false scent.

Of reputation—i. e., among the pack for accuracy of scent.

Opened but once—It is customary with hounds to commence crying as soon as they are on the scent of their prey—whether the scent be true or false. The meaning therefore is, when an old hound known to have a true scent began to cry out, the other hounds would abandon any other scent they had been following up and would follow the lead of the hound, the correctness of whose scent was a recognised fact.

Raw dog—A dog fresh to the sport of hunting.

Noted liar—*i. e.*, as given to indicating false scents.

Yelped—cried ; barked.

Yelped out—cried till it grew faint with crying.

Explanation of paragraph 5.

From my station on the raised ground I saw the hare first of all pass by and then the pack of hounds following the scent round and round the hill I was further delighted to notice that some of the hounds of the pack were, in a manner, highly respected by the others inasmuch as, if the whole pack were on a wrong scent, and some particular dog, an experienced hunter, were to cry out as having got the right scent, all the other dogs would abandon their former path and follow the lead of the senior dog. This respect, and the degree to which it was paid, seems to have been governed by the extent to which any particular dog had acquired a reputation among the fellow dogs for truthfulness and correctness—for, if a new dog, or one known to be a liar, were to indicate a new scent by crying out, that dog might have yelped his heart out without being taken notice of.

Para. 6. Squatted—sat down.

Put up again—started off again.

As often—*i. e.*, as often as the hare squatted. (Note—the hare was now beginning to feel fatigued).

Where—*i. e.*, from where. These—*i. e.*, the dogs.

Jolly—merry—full of spirit.

Gelding—a castrated horse.

Encompassed—surrounded.

Cheering—encouraging. Gaiety—vigorous merriment.

Page 42.

Of five and twenty—of a young man aged twenty-five. (Note.—It is idiomatic, when stating the age of any person above twenty to inverse the natural order of the tens and the digits and to speak of the number of units first and the tens next, *e. g.*, five and twenty, not twenty-five)

Sportsmen—*i. e.*, of the party accompanying Sir Roger.

Rode up—came riding up. Told me—informed me.

Sure—certain ; positive. Chase—Lit. pursuit, here means the 'hunt.'

Almost—nearly. At an end—concluded.

Old—experienced ; practised. Hitherto—up to now.

Lain—remained ; lagged. Headed—lead.

Took—took to ; entered. Large—extensive ; wide ; roomy.

Under—below. Note—The spectator was stationed on elevated ground).

Followed—pursued. The full cry—the whole pack crying loud because it had got on the right scent.

In view—before our view—both the hare and the hounds being seen by us.

Explanation of para. 6.

The hare had by now become tired and two or three times stopped in its flight to rest, but as often as it squatted, it was started off again. Gradually the hare came nearer and nearer the place from which she had first been started. The dogs continued to pursue the hare, and the hounds were followed by our jovial knight on a white gelding, who was riding surrounded by his tenants and servants, and was occupied in encouraging his hounds by shouting to them a performance which he executed with all the vigour of a youth of five and twenty. About this time one of the hunters rode up to me and suggested to me that in his opinion the hunt was nearly concluded because the experienced hounds, which had up till now lagged behind, were now leading the pack. This indicated that they had got upon the right track. The fellow was right. For just then I noticed that the hare entered a large field immediately below the place where we were standing, and was followed by the whole pack who were hot on her scent.

Para. 7. Confess—admit. Brightness—therefore, cheerfulness. Cheerfulness—animation.

Of everything...me—of the whole scene.

Chiding—clamouring.

Returned upon us—thrown back to us ; re-echoed.

With—*i. e.*, together with—(*i. e.*, in addition to the chiding of the hounds).

Halloing—shouting. Lifted—raised.

Spirits—turn of mind ; temper.

Into—*i. e.*, into a turn of mind of.

Lively—animated ; spirited ; gleeful ; gay.

Lively pleasure—a pleasure keenly or intensely felt.

Freely—without restriction or restraint.

Explanation of paragraph 7.

The brightness of the weather, the cheerfulness of the whole scene surrounding me, the clamouring of the hounds, which was re-echoed from two hills, and the shouting of the huntsmen with the blowing of their horns, all this raised my spirits into a state, which was capable of experiencing the keenest pleasure, and I allowed myself to enjoy the pleasure without restraint because I knew it was innocent.

Para. 8. If I was concerned—if I was concerned about anything—if I had any care.

On account of—on behalf of.

Quite spent—thoroughly exhausted

Almost.... enemies—the hounds had almost got up to the hare.

Getting forward—getting ahead of the hounds.

Pole—a long stick resembling a rod.

Before—in front of.

That game—i. e., the hare.

Signal—sign.

Before-mentioned—mentioned above, i. e., the throwing down of the pole before the hounds by the huntsman.

Made a sudden stand—came suddenly to a standstill; stopped suddenly.

Opening—yelping; crying.

Durst not—dare not. **Pass beyond**—go beyond—cross.

Alighting—coming down from his horse.

Delivered up—gave over.

With an order—with the directions.

Let her go—set her free. **Great**—big; extensive.

Orchard—garden of fruit trees.

Prisoners of war—The men of one opposing force who are, during the active conduct of a war, captured by the other force, are called prisoners of war. They are usually released after the termination of the war. These *hares* are called prisoners of war because they are captured after a 'hunt.'

Captivity—because though free within the bounds of the orchard they could not get beyond its limits.

The discipline of the pack—The manner in which the hounds completely obeyed the orders given to them.

Good-nature—kind-heartedness.

Find in his heart—whose heart, or kindness of feeling, would not permit him. [Heart stands symbolically for kindness of feeling.]

Murther—murder. Knowingly and wantonly kill.

Diversion—amusement.

Explanation of paragraph 8.

If I had any care at all in the moment of my excitement, it was on behalf of the poor hare, which was now quite exhausted and almost overtaken by her enemies, being no more than about eight yards ahead of them. But just at this moment *the huntsman* getting forward throw down his rod in front of the hounds, who thereupon immediately came to a standstill, and though they continued their yelping, they dared not cross the rod. At the same time Sir Roger rode forward, and getting down from his horse, took the hare up in his arms and handed her over to one of his servants with the instructions that he should, if the hare should live, set her free in his spacious orchard, there to live a life of comfortable captivity. It seems that Sir Roger had several other hares, captured under similar circumstances, under confinement in his orchard. It gave me very great pleasure to observe how obedient to orders the hounds were and also to find out what a kind-hearted man Sir Roger was, in as much as he could not bear the thought of permitting an animal which had given him so much amusement to perish by being killed by the hounds.

Summary of the Essay.

Para. 1. Sir Roger being too old for fox-hunting has disposed of his pack of beagles and purchased a pack of stop-hounds. He is very particular that their cry should be musical and harmonious and not discordant. He therefore refused a present of a fine hound because its presence in the pack would have produced discord in the cry.

Para. 2. Sir Roger is an exceedingly keen sportsman, so much so that ever since I have been staying with him he has scarcely missed a single day's sport. Sir Roger is further regarded with such esteem that all the people in the country, when he is out, are eager

in doing small services for him, such for instance as the opening of a gate. Sir Roger never permits such services to go unrecognised but returns the good will with a nod or a smile and kind enquiries after their relations

Para. 3. Having obtained the loan of the chaplain's pad I accompanied Sir Roger yesterday to the hunt. When we got to a large heath about a mile from home, a hare broke forth from under cover, and though at first I thought that she would 'fly the country', I noticed that after running ahead for a time she turned round and began to circle round and round a small hill.

Para. 4. Being averse to jumping hedges, and not wishing to fatigue myself, I took up my position on the top of this hill, and from there I commanded a complete view of the hunting.

Para. 5. I was much amused by observing the deference which some of the pack paid to the others, according to the character the particular dog had acquired amongst them. The cry of an experienced and honest dog would attract all the others to follow it, but the cry of a raw dog or a noted liar would not be noticed.

Para. 6. Sir Roger rode on a white gelding surrounded by his tenants and servants. The hare by now was spent out and one of the sportsmen suggested to me that the chase was almost at an end, because the old dogs, which had hitherto lain behind, now headed the pack.

Para. 7. The brightness of the weather, the cheerfulness of everything around me, the chiding of the hounds which was echoed from two hills, lifted my spirits into a most lively pleasure, which I freely indulged in because I was sure it was innocent.

Para. 8. Sir Roger rescues the poor hare from being killed by the hounds and delivers her over to a servant with instructions that should she live, she was to be set free in the orchard where he had several other such captives of war. The good-nature of the knight and the discipline of the pack highly pleased me.

ESSAY XI.

SIR ROGER IN WESTMINSTER ABBEY.—Addison.

[This paper was published on March 18th, 1712.]

Page 44.

Para. 1. My...Abbey—i. e., the paper published on March 30, 1711.

Quoted—cited passages and statements from.

Sir Andrew Freeport—a member of the spectator club, who has been described as "a merchant of great eminence in the city of London."

His last coming to town—the last time that he went to town.

Accordingly—since Sir Roger had expressed his desire to visit the Abbey.

Explanation of paragraph 1.

Sir Roger told me the other night that he had been reading my paper on Westminster Abbey, which, to his mind, contained many valuable and stimulating thoughts. He said that he had further noted that I had promised a paper on the tombs, and having been fired with curiosity through reading my former paper, he would like to go and see the tombs in company with me, as he had not seen them since his childhood days when he had read history. I could not at first think of what had put this idea into the old knight's head, but then I soon recollected that he had been busy the whole of last summer, during his stay in town, in reading Baker's Chronicle and had often quoted from it in the course of his discussions with Sir Andrew Freeport. As Sir Roger had made the request, I promised to call upon him the next morning and accompany him to the Abbey.

Para. 2. Found—discovered; saw when I called upon him in the morning.

Under his butler's hands—i. e., being shaved by his butler.

No sooner—as soon as he was, &c.

Called for—asked for in a loud voice.

Widow Trueby's water—a cordial or specific against infection. "Every lady could distil strong "water" of which the essential part was brandy. The old comedies constantly ridicule the ladies' fancy for these mixtures."

Abroad—out of his house.

To a dram—to drink a dram. $\frac{1}{16}$ of an oz. avoirdupois, formerly with apothecaries $\frac{1}{8}$ of an oz., hence to drink measure or dose of it.

Heartiness—sincerity; eagerness. *Forbear*—refrain from.

Got it down—swallowed the dose; drank it down.

Unpalatable—distasteful. *Wry*—distorted.

Wry faces—grimaces. Knew—knew from beforehand.

Best thing...complaints—the diseases referred to result from an excess of mineral water in the blood, and the theory of Sir Roger and the ladies is that the concoction purifies the blood.

Explanation of paragraph 2.

When next morning I called upon the knight, I found him being shaved by his butler, who always shaved him. As soon as he was dressed, Sir Roger called for a glass of the widow Trueby's water, which he told me he always drank before going out any where. He pressed me so much to drink a little of it myself, that I could not refuse his request and drank some. Whilst drinking it I found it very distasteful, and consequently pulled faces, whereupon the knight told me that he knew from before that I would not at first like the taste of it. But at the same time he told me that it was the very best thing in the world as an antidote against several complaints.

Para. 3. Acquainted me with—informed me of. **Virtues—**good qualities—[Addison could have excused himself by saying that he did not suffer from the diseases mentioned above].

It—i. e., the widow Trueby's water.

I could have ... sooner—I would have been glad to have known its nature and properties before I had drunk it—because then, I would not have taken it.

Too late to complain—properly *not* too late to complain, but too late to hope to mend that which had already been done.

Page 45.

What he had done—i. e., his pressing me to drink the "water."

Good-will—i. e., was the result of his good wishes on my behalf.

Further—in addition. Looked upon it—regarded it; deemed it.

It—i. e., the widow Trueby's water. **Good—**beneficial.

Staid—stayed; the form 'staid' is now used only as adjective, meaning 'grave.'

To keep off—to prevent; to ward off; is an antidote against.

Infection—contagion of disease. **Got together—**provided himself with. **Quantity—**large quantity.

Upon the first news of—as soon as he got news of; as soon as he was informed of.

The sickness—the well-known sickness i. e., Plague of 1709.

Being at—having broken out at.

Sickness at Dantzic—in 1709 a plague swept away almost one-half of the inhabitants, chiefly of the poorer classes, of the town of Dantzic in west Prussia.

When—after remarking which ;—and then.

Turning .. servants—turning round suddenly and addressing one of his servants.

Bid him—ordered him ; directed him. Hackney—let out on hire. Hackney-coach—a coach or carriage let out on hire

Take care—make sure. An elderly man—Sir Roger had more confidence in old men than in young ones.

Explanation of paragraph 3.

The 'water' was so nasty to the taste, and was intended to prevent and cure such maladies, that I wished I had been informed of its virtues before I had taken it, for then I could have told Sir Roger that I did not suffer from the diseases it was intended to cure ; it was now, however, too late to mend matters, as I had already swallowed the draught. But I knew that what Sir Roger had made me to do was dictated solely by his interest on my behalf. Sir Roger further told me that he regarded the 'water' to be very good for any person whilst he stayed in town as an antidote against disease, and that as soon as he heard that the plague had broken out at Dantzic, he hastened to provide himself with a supply of the antidote. Then, suddenly turning round, he ordered a servant standing at the back of him to bring him a hackney-coach but to take care that the driver was an elderly man.

Para. 4. Resumed—took up again, from the point at which he had broken off

Discourse—talk in praise of. Was one—was a person.

Apothecaries—an inferior kind of medical practitioners. They were not allowed to charge any fees for their advice but they made it up by charging extra for the drugs they sold to the patients.

Did more good . country—widow Trueby's waters possessed an efficacy greater than that of the medicines prescribed by the doctors and apothecaries.

Distilled—"The *still* room" was used by the lady of a mansion when distilling her "strong waters." Great houses even now have a '*still* room' and a "*still* room maid."

Poppy—the flower, from the seeds of which opium is prepared.

Gratis—free of charge. **Sorts**—kinds, *i. e.*, people of all classes.

To which—to which remark. **Jointure**—the property settled on a wife to be enjoyed by her when left a widow.

Fain—gladly.

The whole her—the whole country would be glad to see him marry her.

Truly—really.

Engaged—attached; bound by affection—not used here in the modern sense of “betrothed.” Sir Roger’s affections are engaged to the “beautiful, perverse widow.”

Done better—found a better partner.

Explanation of paragraph 4.

After ordering his servant to bring a hackney-coach with an elderly driver, Sir Roger returned to his conversation about ‘widow Trueby’s water,’ now telling me that she did more good to the people than all the doctors and apothecaries put together could, and that as she distributed her decoction free among the people, the demand first was so great that, to meet it, she had to distil every poppy she could find within a radius of five miles of her residence. The knight also added that she had been handsomely provided for by her husband, and that the whole country would be glad if she and he got married. Sir Roger also admitted that had he not already been attached to (or in love with) the perverse, beautiful widow, perhaps he could not have found a better partner than widow Trueby.

Para. 5. Discourse—conversation on any particular subject.

Broken off—cut short—abruptly terminated.

His man’s—his servant’s. **Called**—brought (by calling).

Upon—on. **Going to it**—going up to the coach.

Cast his eye upon—glanced at; looked at.

Axletree—the horizontal rod running through the centre of a pair of wheels, on which they turn.

Good—in good condition—strong.

[**Note.**—Sir Roger is a very cautious person, and I would venture to suggest somewhat nervous too. Perhaps his cautiousness in the maturity of his years is due to foolhardiness during his younger days, a rashness which might have been productive of injury. It is

quite usual to read of English country squires breaking their necks in consequence of rash riding and too much whisky.]

Fellow—an appellation of contempt, usually used of low, mean people

Warrant it—guarantee it; be a surety for its strength.

Honest—truthful.

[Note—A person's nature or disposition is to a great extent discernable from his expression.]

Further ceremony—without further formality, as for instance, asking me to get in first—[it may also mean without any further examination of the carriage, the horse or its harness, &c.]

Explanation of paragraph 5.

Sir Roger's conversation about widow Trueby's 'water' was cut abruptly short on his servant telling him that he had brought a hackney-coach. We went up to the coach, the knight looked at the wheels and then asked the coachman whether his axletree was strong and in good condition. To this question the coachman replied that he was prepared to guarantee the quality of his axletree. The knight then turned to me and remarking that the coachman looked like a truthful man, without any further ado, stepped into the coach.

Para. 6. Popping out his head—putting his head out of the carriage window. ('Pop' is used of anything suddenly appearing out of an aperture).

Presenting himself—showing himself; appearing at.

Asked...smoked—this was a piece of the knight's eccentricity. Probably he was in a very good humour and wished to please the coachman.

As—whilst; during the time in which. **Considering**—reflecting.

What this would end in—what would be the result of all this

Bid—directed. **By the way**—on the road. **Good**—here means a tobacconist who stocks tobacco of a very superior quality only

Tobacconist's—i. e., a tobacco seller's shop. **Take in**—bring; (buy).

Roll—a packet—[in England tobacco is generally sold not in tins as in India, but in paper packets—hence the word "*Roll*." The reason for this difference is that in India tobacco is likely to become affected by the extremes of moisture and heat and, unless packed in air tight tins, the tobacco is liable to get damaged].

Virginia—a colony in North America, named after Elizabeth, the “*Virgin Queen*.” Tobacco has always been an important article of export. Here *Virginia* means tobacco grown in the colony of Virginia and imported into England from thence.

Page 46.

Material—of any importance for the purposes of this essay (or narrative.)

In—during. Set down—put down.

West-end of the Abbey—the chief entrances to Westminster Abbey are by the western and northern doors.

Explanation of paragraph 6.

We had not proceeded far on our journey when Sir Roger suddenly, putting his head out of the carriage window, summoned the coachman down from the coach-box, and on his presenting himself at the carriage window, asked him whether or not he smoked. Whilst I was reflecting on the object Sir Roger might have had in putting this question, he asked the coachman to stop on the road, outside some good tobaccoist's shop, and bring in to him a roll of their best Virginia tobacco. Besides this incident nothing further of any importance for the purposes of this narrative happened on the road. We were at length put down at the west end of the Abbey.

Para. 7. Went up—walked up. The direction from the door to the interior of the building is termed “up.”

Body—the main part.

Trophies—originally, monuments of an enemy's defeat; hence *spoils taken in battle*. Here the trophies are placed on the monuments of those who had fallen in the Spanish war.

New—newly erected.

Monument—any structure by which the memory of a person or of an event is preserved or perpetuated.

A brave.....him—he whose monument this is, must, I am sure, have been a brave man.

Cried out—shouted out in excitement.

Cried “a brave man”—it required no *Œdipus* to guess it. It shows only that the knight's enthusiasm was kindled.

By—i. e., by the statue of.

Sir Cloudsly Shovel—(1650—1707) rose from cabin-boy to Admiral. His fleet was wrecked off the Scilly islands in October, 1707, and he was drowned. His body was recovered and buried in the Abbey, where the Queen raised a monument to his memory.

Flung—threw—stretched out with a jerk. **Gallant**—valiant, brave and chivalrous.

Busby—Richard Busby (1606—1695) was educated at Westminster School and Oxford. He became master of his old school, and earned a reputation both for success and severity, most of the stories of him relating to the latter characteristic. He was buried under the pavement which he presented to the Abbey.

The knight uttered himself—To utter oneself means to utter one's thoughts and feelings out. Here what is meant is "*the knight exclaimed*" after the same manner—in the same way as he had done before.

He whipp'd my grandfather—this literally means what is stated. Dr. Busby has earned a reputation for his severity.

Gone . myself—I myself would have been a pupil of Dr. Busby at Westminster School.

Blockhead—dull-headed youth. (A person whose head is as impenetrable as a block of wood or stone)

[This remark is most appropriate ; coming from Sir Roger—it is an admission and may be applied not only to Sir Roger alone but to the majority of the youths of his class].

Explanation of paragraph 7.

As we walked up the main part of the church building, Sir Roger pointed at the tokens of triumph and victory on one of the new monuments and exclaimed "a brave man, I warrant him." Later on, passing by the side of the statue of Sir Cloudsly Shovel, Sir Roger pointed at it with his hand and cried out, that is 'Sir Cloudsly Shovel ! a very gallant man ! When later, we stood by the side of Dr. Busby's tomb the knight exclaimed in the same excited manner as before—Dr. Busby, he is a great man, he inflicted a whipping on my grandfather—he is a very great man. I myself would have been placed under his management at Westminster School, had I not been so very dull. He is a very great man.

Para. 8. Immediately—directly ; straightway. **Conducted**—led.

Little chapel—small church. This was the chapel of St. Edmund, the king Edmund of East Anglia, who was murdered in 870 A. D. and after whom Bury St. Edmunds is named. **On**—situated on.

Planting himself—stationing himself. The word “planting” is used to show that the knight's placing himself in that particular position was the result of determination.

Historian—the guide, whom Sir Roger looks on as an authority in the history of the heroes buried there.

Particularly--especially. **Account**—the narrative; the version.

Particularly the lord head—[This story is intended to illustrate the absurd tales that the guide makes up and tries to pass off on the visitors. And the knight's ‘particular’ attention is mentioned to satirise the general credulity of the visitors who swallow all that the guide tells them] Sir Bernard Brocas (not a ‘lord’) was credited with having performed this feat. He died in 1396, and his head rests on a helmet surmounted by a crest representing a crowned moor's head, whence originated this story told to Sir Roger. Some commentators on the other hand are of opinion that the reference is to Sir Palmer Fairborne who is described as drawing his “well-fleshed sword” against the moors, though he never cut off the king of Morocco's head. He was governor of Tangiers for some years and often fought against the king of Morocco, and it is stated that a Turk's head was included in his arms, which fact may account for Addison's expression.

Figures—statues. **Very well pleased**—delighted. **To see**—at seeing.

Cecil—Lord Burleigh of Elizabeth's reign In a large monument he is represented kneeling in his robes of state.

Concluding—i. e., coming to the conclusion regarding them, and hence pronouncing them to be.

Great men—men of great importance and renown.

Conducted—led. **Figure**—statue.

Which represents needle—The ‘martyr’ was Elizabeth, daughter of Lord John Russell She was maid of honour to Queen Elizabeth, and died in 1601. The figure is seated upright in a chair, and her finger pointing to a skull at her feet gave rise to the vulgar error that she died from pricking it with a needle. The meaning is—that good lady who laid down her life on account of her whole-hearted devotion to the discharge of household duties, for her death was said to have been caused by the effects of a prick of a needle while she was engaged in doing some household sewing.

Interpreter—same person as the guide The term is more properly applied to one who translates a foreign language to visitors to a foreign country.

Inquisitive—curious. **Into**—concerning, regarding the particulars of.

Regarded—observed.

Explanation of paragraph 8.

From the main part of the Abbey we were straightway led into the little chapel of St. Edmund situated on the right hand side as one walks up the Abbey. Sir Roger planted himself at our guide's elbow and listened very attentively to every thing that person had to say, in particular to his narrative concerning Sir Bernard Brocas, who is credited with having cut off the king of Morocco's head. Among several other figures which he saw in the Abbey he was exceedingly well pleased with the statue of Lord Burleigh, who is represented on his knees dressed in his robes of state. After having pronounced his opinion that all these men were very great men, the guide led us to the figure of Elizabeth, daughter of Lord John Russell, who had been maid of honour to Queen Elizabeth, and on learning who she was, Sir Roger showed great interest in learning all about her family and looked very closely into her finger, remarking that he wondered why Sir Richard Baker had said nothing about her in his Chronicle.

Para. 9. Convey'd—conducted; led; taken.

Two coronation chairs—"The chair on the right was made for William and Mary's coronation; the ancient one on the left is the chair made for Edward I. to enclose the famous stone of Scone. Tradition identifies this stone with the one upon which Jacob rested his head at Bethel. For centuries it had been an object of veneration to the Scots Upon this stone their kings, down to John Balliol, were crowned Edward I seized this precious relic and took it to England, where it was placed in Westminster Abbey (1297), the Scots subsequently making repeated efforts to reclaim it .. Upon this chair and stone, which are covered with cloth of gold and moved into the sacarium at coronations, the sovereigns of England have ever since been crowned .. In Addison's time the chair was unguarded by railings, but the guides exacted a forfeit from every person who sat down in it." (*From the Popular Guide*).

Underneath—which formed the seat of.

Most ancient of them—the older of the two. The comparison being between only two things, the superlative degree is incorrectly used here.

Jacob's Pillow—Because it was identified with the stone on which Jacob rested his head at Bethel when he was fleeing from the wrath of his brother Esau to his uncle at Laban. Jacob was the grandson of Abraham and the last of the Jewish Patriarchs and the true ancestor of the Jews.

Page 48.

Sat himself down—the transitive use of sit is not common now.

Looking .. king—appearing as if he were a king of the Goths, the barbarians, who overthrew the Roman Empire.

What authority they had—what evidence they could adduce to prove.

Jacob .. Scotland—note Sir Roger's logic. He concludes that without Jacob's coming to Scotland the stone used by him for his pillow could by no means have been brought there.

Would .. forfeit—forfeit = fine. "In Addison's time the chair was unguarded by railings, and the guides exacted a forfeit from every person who sat down in it."

Ruffled—the figure is taken from water the surface of which is ruffled when disturbed—put out ; annoyed.

Thus—in this manner. **Trepanned**—ensnared ; caught.

Good humour—cheerfulness of temper.

It would go hard but—it would be a matter of great difficulty but nevertheless Will Wimble would not fail to try his best.

Get—take. **Tobacco-stopper**—a plug for a pipe.

Explanation of paragraph 9.

The guide then conducted us to the two coronation chairs, where, Sir Roger, after being told that the stone underneath the more ancient of the two was brought from Scotland and was called Jacob's Pillow, sat down on it. When seated he looked like the figure of an old Gothic king. Sir Roger then asked the interpreter what authority there was for saying that Jacob had ever been in Scotland. The man instead of replying to this question of Sir Roger's told him that he hoped that his honour would pay the penalty for sitting on the chair. Sir Roger, on being thus entrapped, appeared visibly annoyed, but the guide not pressing his demand, the

knight's good humour returned, and he whispered in my ear that though the task was difficult, he had no doubt that had Will Wimble been one of the company, he would have managed to secure a tobacco-stopper from one or other of the chairs.

Para. 10. In the next place—i. e., next. Laid—placed.

Edward the Third's sword—This sword, called by Dryden, "The Monumental Sword that conquered France," is placed near the coronation chair.

Leaning—reclining. Upon—on. Pummel—the guard; the handle.

Gave us—told us; narrated to us. Whole—entire.

Explanation of paragraph 10.

Sir Roger laid his hand upon Edward III's sword, and reclining against its handle told us the history of the Black Prince, finishing up his narrative with the remark that in Sir Richard Baker's opinion, Edward III was one of the greatest princes who ever sat on the English throne.

Para. 11. Acquainted us—informed us.

First—first king.

Touched for the Evil—'Scrofula' is called the 'king's evil,' from the belief that the touch of a monarch's hand would cure it. (Samuel Johnson was brought to London as a child to be touched by Queen Anne.)

Fine reading—curious accounts. Casualties—accidents; deaths.

There werereign—The knight said that there were rather curious accounts of a good many accidents which happened in his reign. He meant to insinuate that what were called accidents were not really accidents at all. There was foul play, and hence the accounts are noteworthy. This also is the reason of his shaking his head disparagingly.

Explanation of paragraph 11.

The guide next took us to and pointed out to us Edward the Confessor's tomb, whereupon Sir Roger informed us that he was the first king who by his touch cured Scrofula. Our next move was to the tomb of Henry IV, upon seeing which Sir Roger shook his head and remarked that there was fine reading in the casualties in that reign.

Para. 12. Conductor—one who conducts, leads or guides—hence the guide who showed Sir Roger round.

Pointed to—indicated ; pointed out ; directed our attention to.

Figure—form ; shape cut out of marble, metal or stone.

Of one head—The king without a head was Henry V. The head had been of solid silver, and the rest of the figure plated with silver. The theft probably took place at the dissolution of the monasteries.

Giving us to know—making us acquainted with the fact ; informing us.

Beaten silver—silver beaten by means of a hammer into shape, not melted and cast in a mould.

Since—ago. Warrant—guarantee. Lock up—guard.

Kings—the statues or figures of kings of England. **Better—**with more care.

[Note.—Addison himself was a whig. This is a sly reference to the enormities laid at a political opponent's door by thoughtless people even when they are good natured.]

Explanation of paragraph 12.

Our guide next draw our attention to that monument where, there is a figure of one of the English kings without a head—i. e. f to the figure of Henry V, and told us that the head which was or beaten silver had been stolen. In reply to this information, Sir Roger, who is a downright Tory, remarked that he could guaranteed that the theft had been committed by a whig. You ought to guard and protect the precious statues and figures of the kings with more care, observed Sir Roger, otherwise the body, which now still remains, may also be stolen.

Page 49.

Para. 13. Glorious—worthy of glory—renowned.

Opportunities of shining—opportunities of displaying his knowledge gathered from Baker's Chronicle.

Doing justice—doing credit—as an apt pupil does credit to his teacher.

Surprise—astonishment. In him—in his chronicle.

Explanation of paragraph 13.

The renowned names of Henry V and Queen Elizabeth afforded Sir Roger great opportunities (chances ; occasions) of displaying his

knowledge of history and of doing credit to the chronicler of the celebrities in the Abbey, but at the same time the knight remarked, with some indications of astonishment, that Sir Richard Baker in his chronicle had given accounts of a great many kings whose monuments were not to be found in the Abbey.

Para. 14. Honest—genuine ; sincere. Passion—love. Glory—greatness. Respectful—reverential. Gratitude—for having made the country great.

[Note the ring of patriotism which runs through the whole of this essay, especially this para.]

Explanation of paragraph 14.

For my own part, I could not help feeling pleased at noticing the sincere love for the glory of his country which the knight showed, and his attitude of respectful gratitude to the memory of its princes for having each contributed towards raising his country to greatness.

Para. 15. Interpreter—the guide, whose oft-told tale was fresh to Sir Roger.

Extraordinary man—because he was so well-informed about the great characters in Baker's Chronicle.

Norfolk Buildings—in Norfolk street, strand, built on the site of the Duke of Norfolk's mansion, Arundel House.

Explanation of paragraph 15.

I must not omit to mention that the generous disposition of my friend, which flows out towards every one whom he converses with, made him very kind to our guide, whom he had come to look upon as a very exceptional person. Sir Roger therefore shook him heartily by the hand at parting from him, at the same time inviting him to visit Norfolk Buildings where he lodged, so that they might talk over these matters at greater length.

Summary of the Essay.

Para. 1. Sir Roger had read Addison's paper on Westminster Abbey and declared that it contained a great many ingenious fancies. He proposes a visit to the Abbey accompanied by Addison. Addison promises to go with him the next day.

Para. 2. When Addison arrived at Sir Roger's house in the morning, the knight was being (as was his habit) shaved by his butler. As soon as he was dressed, he called for a glass of widow Trueby's water and also induced Addison to take a glass, declaring that it was both a preventive of, and a cure for, various diseases.

Para. 3. Sir Roger declared that the water was very good for a man whilst he stayed in town, and that he had provided himself with a stock of it as soon as he had heard that the plague had broken out at Dantzic. He then suddenly turned to one of his servants standing behind him and bid him call a hackney-coach, and to take care that an elderly man drove it.

Para. 4. Sir Roger then resumed his discourse upon Mrs. Trueby's water, informing Addison that she distributed her water gratis among all sorts of people, that she had a very great jointure, and that the whole country would fain have it a match between him and her.

Para. 5. Sir Roger's discourse was broken off by the arrival of the coach. Sir Roger glanced at the wheels and asked the coachman if the axletree was good—and on being satisfied on this score, without further ceremony stepped inside the coach.

Para. 6. Before we had proceeded far, Sir Roger popped his head out of the coach window and instructed the coachman to buy in a roll of his best Virginia tobacco at the next good tobacconist's. Nothing material happened after this during the remainder of our journey. We were put down at the west-end of the Abbey.

Para. 7. Walking up the body of the church Sir Roger pointed at the trophies upon one of the new monuments, at the statue of Sir Cloudsly Shovel, and at Busby's tomb and declared them all to be very great men. Sir Roger remarked that he would himself have been a pupil of Dr. Busby's had he not been a blockhead.

Para. 8. We were conducted direct into the little chapel on the right hand side. There Sir Roger saw the statue of Sir Bernard Brocas, of Lord Burleigh, and of Elizabeth, daughter of Lord John Russell. Sir Roger wondered greatly that Sir Richard Baker, in his Chronicle, had said nothing of the lady, Elizabeth.

Para. 9. We were next conveyed to the two coronation chairs, and Sir Roger having sat down on one of them the guide asked for the forfeit. This seems to have ruffled the knight a little but the guide not pressing his demand, Sir Roger recovered his good humour.

Para. 10. Sir Roger next laid his hand upon Edward III's sword and resting himself against the pommel of it, gave us the history of the Black Prince adding also that in Baker's opinion—Edward III. was the greatest prince that ever sat upon the English throne.

Para. 11. We were next shown Edward the Confessor's tomb, and Sir Roger informed us that he was the first king who cured Scrofula by touching the patient. We then went to Henry IV's tomb, and there the knight remarked that there was fine reading in the casualties in that reign.

Para. 12. The guide then drew our attention to the figure of Henry V., which was without a head. He informed us that the head was made of beaten silver and had been stolen; whereupon the knight remarked "some Whig, I'll warrant you" had committed the theft.

Para. 13. The glorious names of Henry V. and Queen Elizabeth afford the knight great opportunities of displaying his knowledge of history gleaned from Baker's Chronicle—who, the knight remarked with some astonishment, had given accounts of a great many kings whose monuments were not to be seen in the Abbey.

Para. 14. I could not but be pleased to see the knight show such an honest passion for the glory of his country and such a respectful gratitude to the memory of its princes.

Para. 15. The benevolence of our friend, which flows out towards every one with whom he holds converse, made him regard our guide with great kindness, and he invited him to visit Norfolk Buildings, where the two could talk over these subjects at greater length.

ESSAY XII.

HOUSEHOLD SUPERSTITIONS.—Addison.

Superstitions—ignorant and irrational beliefs in supernatural agency, omens, divination; sorcery &c.

Houshold—current at home.

Para. 1. Acquaintance—a person intimately known. (Every friend is an acquaintance and something more, but every acquaintance is not a friend).

Misfortune—bad luck. **Whole family**—every member of the family.

Dejected—low-spirited; downcast; sad.

Occasion—reason; ground. **Strange**—peculiar; odd.

Afraid—feared. **Portended**—foreboded; augured; presaged; foretold.

Misfortune—unfortunate occurrence ; evil. **At**—on

Her—i. e., the wife's. **Coming into**—entering. **Observed**—marked ; noticed.

Settled—decided ; not passing. **Melancholy**—depression of spirits ; dejection.

Page 50.

In—i. e., mirrored in ; expressed in. **Countenance**—expression of face.

Which .. for—for which look of melancholy mirrored in her countenance I should have felt some concern.

Had heard—if I had not already been informed,

From whence...proceeded—what its source or *cause* was.

Explanation of paragraph 1.

Yesterday I went to dine with a person whom I had known for sometime. On arriving at his house I had the bad luck to find every member of his household very low-spirited. On asking him the reason for this wide-spread dejection, I was told that the cause of it was that his wife had the previous night dreamt a very odd dream which, interpreted in the light of household superstitions, foreboded some evil either to themselves or to their children. On the hostess coming into the room I noticed that the expression of her face showed something more than a mere passing fit of melancholy—a sight at which I should have felt some concern had I not beforehand learned the reason and cause of it.

[Note—Addison has no sympathy for superstition of any kind—he looks upon the tendency to superstition as unnecessarily adding to the evils and miseries of existence].

Para. 2. We were...down—almost as soon as we were seated at the dining-table.

Looked upon me—viewed me ; looked at me ; observed me.

While—time.

You may.... night—the indication that the candle gave us last night, that we should be visited by a stranger, has come true, as you yourself can see from the presence of this gentleman at our table. When a small portion of the wick of a candle becomes partially detached, or any small foreign substance finds its way into the wick, and flames up separately from the main flame, it is supposed to indicate the visit of a stranger.

Affairs—matters. **Family affairs**—matters relating to the family.

A little boy—evidently one of the sons of the host and hostess.

At—seated at. **Lower end**—the end away from the head of the table where the host was seated.

To go into—to commence.

Join-hand—hand-writing in which one letter is joined to another

On—from. **Says she**—she exclaimed with surprise

Childermas-day—an anniversary of the Church of England held on Dec 28th in commemoration of the children of Bethlehem slain by Herod. It is also called Innocent's day (The actual occurrence took place on a Thursday).

Soon—early.

Explanation of paragraph 2.

After we were all seated at the dining table, my hostess having viewed me for a short while, told her husband that in my person he could see the stranger the candle had indicated as likely to visit the house. Soon after this remark, whilst the members of the family were engaged in conversing on family affairs a little boy seated at the lower end of the table told his mother that he was to commence joined-hand writing from Thursday. Thereupon the lady replied "no child; if it please God, you shall not begin upon Childermas day; tell your writing master that Friday will be soon enough"

[Note—This is another superstition—viz., that it is unlucky to begin anything on Thursday].

Para. 3. Reflecting—thinking; musing. **With—within**

Oddness—strangeness **Fancy**—notion; whim; caprice

That—whether. **Establish**—settle permanently.

Rule—a law of conduct. **To lose** to remain idle and thus to cut out one working day out of the week

Musings—thoughts; reflections. **Desired** requested; asked

To reach her—i. e., to pass over to her **Point—end**

Knife—table knife (the knife used at the table for cutting meat and other articles of food—not pocket or pen-knife)

In—whilst I was in. **Such a**—i. e., to such an extent

Trepidation—an involuntary trembling or quivering particularly from fear or terror—hence, a state of fear or nervousness

Hurry of obedience—eagerness to obey quickly. It—*i. e.*, the salt.

Drop—fall. By the way—whilst reaching it to my hostess.

At which—at my letting the salt spill whilst reaching it to her.

Immediately—at once. **Startled**--was suddenly moved or shocked by an impression of fear or surprise.

Said—remarked—observed. It—the salt. **Towards**—in the direction of.

[There is a superstition among certain classes of the English people, that the spilling of salt between two persons indicates that a quarrel is to take place between them. This calamity may, however, be averted by each person taking a pinch of the salt spilt in his left hand and throwing it over his own right shoulder. Another superstition is that the spilling of salt presages a coming calamity].

Upon this—on the hostess making the above remark.

Blank—lit. void; empty, hence 'white' (through fear of the consequences his spilling the salt might entail on the family of his host).

Observing—noticing. **Concern**—anxiety. **Consider**—regard; look upon.

Confusion—abashment; shame. As a—*i. e.*, to be a.

Disaster—calamity; evil. **Recovering**—composing. **Space**—*i. e.*, space of time—while

Misfortunes single—This is a saying and means that when misfortune overtakes one, everything with him goes wrong—he is not subjected only to a single evil but to a succession of them. Cf. Shakespeare:—

“When sorrows come, they come not single spies
But in battalions.”

Explanation of paragraph 3.

I was musing within myself on the strangeness of my hostess' whim, and was wondering whether any one would go the length of establishing her notion as a rule of conduct, thus leading practically to the loss of one day in every week, when I was all at once requested by her to hand her some salt on the tip of my table-knife. Being eager to do her bidding as quickly as I could, and being also excessively nervous, I happened to spill some on the table. At this my hostess was shocked with fear and observed with

consternation that it fell towards her. Necessarily, seeing the anxiety of the whole table, I turned very white and began to regard myself as a person who had brought some calamity on the whole family. My hostess however soon composed herself, and with a sigh remarked to her husband that misfortunes, when they come, never come single.

Para. 4. Under part—inferior part *i. e.*, he did not act as if he were the master—(the wife acted in that capacity).

At his table—at his dinner table—perhaps 'table' here stands for 'house.'

My friend.....table—the observation of their respective behaviour soon enabled me to arrive at the conclusion that my host was not master in his own house, but on the contrary was ruled by his wife

Good-nature—kind and gentle disposition. Understanding—intelligence ; shrewdness.

Thinks—considers, (*i. e.*, on account of his good-nature).

Obliged—constrained ; compelled. Fall in with—agree with ; support

Passions and humours—whims and fancies.

Yoke-fellow—the one to whom he had been coupled or yoked—hence his wife.

Pigeon-house—the house or structure in which pigeons live.

Fell—fell to the ground ; tumbled down.

Wench—servant girl.

Page 51.

'Yes,' says he &c.—This remark is uttered by the husband, without being addressed, evidently to support and strengthen his wife's reasoning.

Post—mail.

Battle of Almanza—The decisive battle in the war of the Spanish succession in which the French, under the Duke of Berwick, defeated the Anglo-Spanish army under the Earl of Galway.

[Note.—The news of the result of this battle was a report of a national calamity, and it followed upon another calamity, the umbling down of the pigeon-house]

Explanation of paragraph 4.

I soon discovered that my friend acted but an inferior part in his own house, he being ruled by his wife. He was a man of more good-nature than of understanding, and therefore felt himself constrained to support all his wife's whims and fancies, merely to oblige her. The wife remarked that the pigeon-house tumbled down the very day on which their careless servant girl spilt salt upon the table. My host supported this reasoning by adding that the very next post brought news of the defeat of the Anglo-Spanish army at the battle of Almanza—an occurrence which was a national calamity.

Para. 5. Guess at—conclude. Made—cut.

The figure I made—the awkward position in which I was placed.

Mischief—harm ; injury. Despatched—hurriedly finished. Usual—habitual.

Taciturnity—quietness ; silence. Utter—absolute ; complete.

Confusion—abashment. The lady—the hostess. Seeing me—observing me.

Quitting—leaving ; laying down on the plate ; placing them on the plate out of my hands. Humour—gratify ; indulge ; pay regard to her fancies on the subject.

Across one another—the crossing of the knife and fork is supposed to be indicative of a quarrel.

Figure—position in which I had laid them.

Absurdity—silly blunder.

Traditionary—handed down from former generations.

Disposed of—placed. In two ... lines—one by the side of the other on the plate.

Explanation of paragraph 5.

The reader can well imagine what a miserable figure I cut after having done so much harm. I therefore ate my dinner with all possible haste, maintaining my habitual silence the while—and, having finished eating, I placed my knife and fork across one another on the plate. I believe in so doing I had invaded some traditional superstition for, to my utter confusion, my hostess requested me to indulge her so far as to place the knife and fork parallel to one another on the plate instead of laying them one across the other. What was the incongruity in placing the knife and fork in the

position in which I had done I do not know, but having been requested, I, in obedience to my hostess' orders, placed them as she desired me—and that is the position in which in the future I shall always place them, though I do not know any reason for it.

Para. 6. It is not difficult—*i. e.*, it not a matter of great difficulty.

To see—to realize. Conceived—taken ; entertains.

Aversion—dislike. Looks—her aspect. Regarded—considered ; looked upon.

Odd—strange Took my leave—*i. e.*, of my hostess.

Withdrew—retired. Profound—deep Contemplation—meditation—the state of reflecting or thinking.

The evils—the mischief. Attends—accompanies

Superstitious follies—acts of foolishness proceeding from superstition.

Subject us—make us liable to be troubled by.

Imaginary afflictions—fanciful calamities ; miseries that do not really exist but are merely fancied by us.

Additional sorrows—sorrows in addition to those which are real and which we, as human mortals, living in this world, have to submit to and endure.

Which ... lot—which are not in fact visited on us in the course of our lives on this earth.

Natural—those which come upon us in the ordinary course of life.

Calamities—evils ; misfortunes. Turn—convert

Indifferent—insignificant ; trifling. Circumstances—occurrences.

Accidents—accidental events or occurrences.

As if the natural evils—we eagerly interpret the most trifling incidents as very serious and thus exaggerate them into positive miseries, and in this way suffer as much from trivial circumstances which may be overlooked as from the positive ills of life that are inevitable,—as if the share of positive evils that our life in this world is naturally heir to is insufficient to satisfy us.

Explanation of paragraph 6.

It is not a difficult matter for a man to perceive that another person has taken a dislike to him. So far as I was concerned, I

soon found out from my hostess' looks that she considered me to be a very strange person whose presence at any particular place brought misfortune in its train. I, therefore, directly after dinner was over took my leave of host and his wife and retired to my own quarters. On arriving there I lapsed into a profound contemplation on the mischief that accompanies the folly of being superstitious—for superstition leads people to trouble themselves with imaginary afflictions and thus to multiply those evils which, in the natural course of the affairs of this world, they would necessarily have to endure. Man has enough to put up with in this world without converting every trifling incident into a possible and imaginary source of misfortune.

Para. 7. Spoil—disturb. Shooting of a star—the passage of a meteor across the sky. A meteor is regarded as ominous. Horatio in *Hamlet* speaks of them as “harbingers preceding still the fates, And prologue to the omen coming on.”

Page 52.

Rest—sleep. Pale—colourless.

Appetite—desire for food. Plucking—breaking.

Merry-thought—the forked bone of a fowl's breast (commonly called wish bone) which boys and girls break by pulling each one side, the longest part broken betokening priority of marriage.

Screech-owl—The common or barn door owl that makes a screeching noise and hence called screech-owl—here screech-owl stands for the screech of the owl which at night was thought to be ominous. Cf. Shakespeare. *Mid-Summer Nights Dream*—

“Whilst the screech-owl screeching loud
Puts the wretch that lies in woe
In remembrance of a shroud.”

Alarmed—frightened—filled with anxiety for the future.

Voice—i.e., the sound made by; the chirping of. Cricket—an insect of the grasshopper and locust species. The chirping of a cricket is also supposed to foretell the approach of death.

Struck more terror—caused more fear and anxiety.

Inconsiderable—trifling; indifferent. Dreadful—fearful; alarming.

Omens—signs or indications of some future event; presages.

Prognostics—omens; presages.

An imagination.....prognostics—a man whose fancy is ever active and quick to find omens and forebodings of approaching evil in all things, however trifling they may be.

Shoot up into—develop into ; assume the proportions of.

Shoot.....prodigies—are magnified into omens of terrible significance.

Explanation of paragraph 7.

To such an extent do persons allow themselves to be troubled by superstitions that I have known the shooting of a star spoil a night's rest, and a person in love grow pale and lose his appetite in consequence of the result of the breaking of a wish-bone ; the screech of an owl at midnight has to superstitious persons been a source of greater alarm than the presence of a band of robbers, and the chirping of a cricket has under similar circumstances sounded more fearful than the roaring of a lion. There is no incident, be it ever so trifling, which a superstitious imagination cannot convert into an omen or a presage—so much so that it sees in such ordinary things as a rusty nail or a crooked pin something that is wonderful, even miraculous.

Para. 8. Old maid—There is a belief that old maids are more superstitious than other persons.

Produces—causes ; is the source of ; is the root of.

Infinite—unbounded ; unlimited.

Disturbances—troubles. **Of this kind**—*i. e.*, originated by a superstitious imagination.

Maiden aunt—in this context, implies the idea of "old maid"—see "*antiquated Sibyls*" which follows.

These—*i. e.*, superstitious. **Antiquated**—old (refers to the age of the maiden aunt).

Sibyls—were a kind of prophetic virgins, believed by the Greeks and Romans to be inspired by a God and able to unveil futurity.

Antiquated sibyls—old prophetesses.

Forebodes—angurs ; presages ; predicts evil ; portends ; prognosticates.

Prophesies—predicts ; forebodes.

From one..... other—always ; at all times—is ever doing so.

Apparitions—visions ; spectres.

Death-watches—death-warnings—[Death-watch is a small beetle, the *Anobium tessellatum*, whose ticking, which is really the call of the male for its mate, has been supposed to augur death. The noise made by the insect is very weak, so it can only be heard at night in the stillness of a death-chamber where every other sound is hushed. So it has become associated with the idea of death and is supposed to presage it.]

Out of her wits—out of her senses. Frightened—terrified.

Great—big.

[Note.—There is a superstition prevalent in England that when a person is lying seriously ill, the continued howling of a dog is an indication that the sick person will not recover from his illness].

Explanation of paragraph 8.

Many a superstitious old maid is the cause of unlimited anxiety to her friends and neighbours. I personally know an old maiden aunt of a very distinguished family, who is a veritable Sibyl. She is always seeing visions and omens and hearing death-warnings, and consequently is occupied in foreboding evil to others all the year round. She herself the other day was almost driven frantic with fear on hearing the watch-dog howl in the stable whilst she was laid up in bed with an attack of toothache.

[Note the humour and the ridicule the author makes of persons who have a tendency to be superstitious. Superstitious imaginations are apt to exaggerate and to magnify, so that the most trifling incidents assume the proportions of omens. The lady in question was merely suffering from tooth-ache, by no means a fatal disease, yet she seemed to hear in the howling of the watch-dog a warning of her own death]

Para. 9. Extravagant—lit., wandering beyond limits—irregular ; wild ; abnormal

Cast of mind--turn of mind ; tendency of mind. (Lit., shape of the mind) Cf. Shakspere—*Hamlet*.

"And thus the native hue of resolution
Is sicklied o'er with a pale cast of thought."

Engages—keeps occupied ; involves ; entangles.

Multitudes—large numbers. Impertinent—irrelevant ; unnecessary ; trifling ; foolish.

Terrors—fears. Supernumerary—exceeding the necessary or usual number.

And arises—*i. e.*, the extravagant cast of mind is the offspring of.

Soul of men—human nature [That which we cannot satisfactorily explain is generally attributed to some supernatural agency].

Cf. Bacon—"men fear death, as children fear to go into the dark."

Horror—excessive dread or fear.

Entertain the thoughts of death—think of the fact of dying.

Or indeed—or as a matter of fact. Evil—calamity; misfortune.

Approach—happening. Uncertainty—as regards the time when it will happen.

Melancholy—gloomy; low-spirited; afflictive. Mind—temperament; nature

Innumerable—numberless. Apprehensions—anticipations of fear.

Suspicious—doubts; diffidence; mistrust.

Dispose it—incline such a mind.

To the observation of—to pay attention to.

Groundless predictions—superstitious anticipations.

For as—just in the same way as. Chief—principal.

Concern—business; care; solicitude. Retrench—to confine; to limit.

Evils—sorrows; troubles; worries; anxieties. Of life—of existence.

By the reasonings of philosophy—by explaining events in accordance with the laws of science.

Employment—business. Multiply—*i. e.*, increase the number of the evils of life.

Sentiments of superstition—mysticism.

Explanation of paragraph 9.

A superstitious turn of mind is the cause, not only of irrelevant and foolish fear to many, but also has the effect of increasing unnecessarily the duties of life. Superstition has its origin in that fear which is the natural outcome of widespread ignorance. The extreme dread with which we think on death, and as a matter of fact on any future misfortune, and the uncertainty as to the time of its happening, fill a gloomy temperament with numberless anticipations of evil, and consequently incline it to become superstitious in

the hope that with its aid it may avoid some threatened evil by knowing of it beforehand from some omen or presage. For, just as it is the chief concern of wise men to remove fear by explaining phenomena, so it is the business of foolish people to increase fear by entwining round every incident, be it ever so trifling, the veil of mysticism.

Para. 10. Troubled—worried. Were I--if I were.

Page 53.

Endowed—gifted

Divining quality—faculty of knowing beforehand.

Truly—accurately ; correctly. Befall—happen to ; overtake.

Would not—do not desire to Relish—joy ; pleasure ; delight.

Feel—experience. Weight—(Lit burden) trouble ; anxiety.

Cf. Pope

Heaven from all creatures hides the book of fate,
All but the page prescribed, their present state ;
From brutes what men, from men what spirits know
Or who *could* suffer being here below ?

Explanation of paragraph 10.

Speaking for myself, I should lose my peace of mind were I gifted with the faculty of knowing of things before they actually happened, even though the faculty were to inform me correctly and accurately of whatever could possibly overtake me. I would not on any account anticipate the joy of future happiness nor would I willingly, at the present time, bear the burden of future misery—I would rather wait to experience either of these feelings until the events happened which would call them forth.

Para. 11. But—only. Fortifying—strengthening. Soul—courage ; ardour.

Gloomy—depressing. Presages—forebodings. To—for. Securing to—obtaining for.

Friendship and protection—help ; aid ; assistance. Being—God.

Disposes of events—regulates the turn affairs are to take.

Governs—controls.

Futurity—the happening of events in the future.

He sees—He takes in ; comprehends.

At one view—as a whole—not in detached portions

Thread—course.—Existence—Life. Passed through—lived through

Runs forward . . . eternity—lies before me in the future, both in this world and beyond the grave.

Note—The Christian belief is that after the termination of the life on this earth, the soul enters into a phase of existence which is eternal].

Recommend—commit with prayers.

Give myself up—place myself under. Direction—guidance; control.

Question not—doubt not. Avert them—prevent them.

Advantage—benefit. Solicitous &c.—desirous of knowing either the time or manner of my death.

Comfort—console. Support—give me strength and courage.

The—i. e., the time and manner of my death.

Explanation of paragraph 11.

Instead of trying to obtain an insight into the future by means of omens and presages and thus avoiding evil, I strengthen my courage, and meet whatever may come by securing to myself the aid and friendship of God who disposes of events and regulates the events of the future. He alone can take a comprehensive view of the past, the present and the future. When I retire to rest, I commit myself to His care with prayer; when I wake up, I place myself entirely under His direction, acting entirely in accordance with the dictates of conscience. In the midst of all the evils which threaten one in this world, I look to God for help and firmly believe that He will either prevent them for injuring me or will turn them to my benefit. Although I don't know either the time when I shall die, or the manner in which I shall die, I am not at all anxious on this score; because I have faith that He who knows both the time and manner of my death, will, when the time comes, not fail to comfort and support me under them.

Summary of the Essay, paragraph by paragraph.

Para. 1. I was invited yesterday to dine with an old acquaintance. On going to his house I found the whole family very much dejected because my host's wife had, the night before, dreamt a very strange dream.

Para. 2. My hostess turned to her husband and pointed to me as the stranger who was in the candle the previous night. She further ordered her son not to start 'join-hand' on a Thursday.

Para. 3. Whilst I was reflecting on the oddness of my hostess' fancy, she asked me to pass her some salt on the end of her knife. In passing the salt, I spilt some on the table, and the lady remarked that it fell towards her. I turned white and began to regard myself as one who had brought misfortune on the family. My hostess remarked that misfortunes never come singly.

Para. 4. My friend is not master of his own house but is under the dominion of his wife. He being more good-natured than intelligent, allows his wife to have his own way by way of obliging her.

Para. 5. Realizing how much mischief I had done I ate my dinner as quickly as I could and in silence, and placed my fork across my knife. My hostess at once asked me to indulge her so much as to place them side by side in parallel lines.

Para. 6. I soon perceived that my hostess had conceived an aversion to me. I therefore took my leave immediately after dinner and retired to my lodgings. Upon my return home, I fell into a profound contemplation on the evils that attend these superstitious follies of mankind.

Para. 7. The shooting of a star is capable of disturbing a night's rest, the plucking of a merry-thought can make a lover turn pale, a rusty nail or crooked pin can shoot up into prodigies.

Para. 8. Superstitious people, especially if they are also old maids, produce much trouble among their friends and neighbours.

Para. 9. Inclination to superstition engages multitudes of people not only in impertinent terrors, but in supernumerary duties of life, and arises from that fear and ignorance which are natural to the soul of man. As it is the chief concern of wise men to retrench the evils of life by the reasonings of philosophy, so it is the employment of fools to multiply them by the sentiments of superstition.

Para. 10. Personally I should be very much troubled were I endowed with the divining faculty, though it should inform me truly of everything that can befall me.

Para. 11. I fortify my soul against gloomy presages and terrors of mind by securing the friendship and protection of God. I commend myself to Him when I retire to rest and on waking up I give myself up to His direction.

ESSAY XIII.

THE ADVENTURES OF A SHILLING—Addison.

Adventures—vicissitudes. Lit. Adventure means a hardy and hazardous enterprise.

Para. 1. Inexhaustible fund of discourse—an endless stock of information at his command which supplies him with a very large number of subjects for conversation.

Entertain—engage the interest of. **His company**—his companions

Thoughts—ideas.

Page 54.

Hints—suggestions.

In complaisanceliving—to be in keeping with my manner of living.

Advanced—put forward ; stated as a truth.

Paradox—a contradictory statement, consisting of two parts which are hard to reconcile

Become—adorn.

Required much greater... business—To fill up or occupy a retired life, handsomely or well, requires more merit on the part of a person than to occupy a life of business. [This is a paradox Because, one would naturally fancy that in a busy life where a man comes more into contact with others, greater talents would be required to enable him to hold his own]

Rallied—bantered ; chaffed ; made fun of (connected with rail, to scold ; Fr. railler, to deride).

Very agreeably—in a very pleasing manner. **Busymen**—men of business.

For being in motion—because they were always on the move i. e., transacting business or taking an active part in the conduct of affairs of the world.

Passing through—transacting.

I defy life—(Defy—to challenge). None of the gentlemen who valued themselves on being active men or men of business could prove having gone through half the adventure that the shilling had gone through. If being in motion constituted any merit then the shilling was more meritorious than they.

Explanation of paragraph 1.

Last night I was visited by a friend, who has at his command an almost unlimited number of subjects for conversation, and who therefore never fails to amuse and engage the interest of his companions with a variety of ideas and suggestions which are altogether new and uncommon. Whether it was out of consideration for my manner of life, or whether it expressed his real opinion, he maintained the following paradox—that it required much greater talents to occupy in a proper manner a life of leisure than a life of business. On this particular occasion he very pleasantly chaffed the busy men of the time, who only considered a man's worth from the point of view of how much business he could transact. When the discussion had reached its most exciting and interesting stage, my friend, seeing a coin lying on the table remarked, that he challenged any person who deemed himself an active man of business to prove that he had gone through half the adventure, which the shilling lying on the table had gone through.

Para. 2. Talk—conversation. **Made**—left. **Odd**—peculiar; strange; uncommon.

Impression—effect. **A bed**—in bed. **Insensibly**—unconsciously.

Unaccountable—inexplicable; that which cannot be explained, whose cause or reason cannot be determined.

Reverie—a wild fancy—the idea is repeated in the word *Delirium* at the end of the paragraph.

Design—object; aim.

Dream **delirium**—in a dream the facts are generally connected, though the connection may be most unnatural—in a delirium the facts have positively no connection with one another.

Explanation of paragraph 2.

My friend's discourse had left such a strange impression on my mind that no sooner was I in bed than I unconsciously fell into a reverie of a most unaccountable kind, a reverie that apparently had no moral to convey nor any end to attain. In fact, from the utter want of connection between the incidents it was more a delirium than a mere dream.

Para. 3. Methought—I thought. **Reared**—raised. **Edge**—the rim of the coin.

Face—that side of it which bore the impression of the sovereign's head.

Soft—not harsh or jarring ; sweet.

Silver sound—all metallic sounds are sweet, and notably so among them is the sound of silver.

Explanation of paragraph 3.

In my delirium I thought that the shilling raised itself on its rim, and turning its face towards me opened its mouth, and in soft, sweet tones gave me the following account of its career since it was minted.

Para. 4. Born—As silver ore I was deposited. Side—the slope.

Peru—the silver mines of Peru were for many years the chief source of England's silver.

Made a voyage to—journeyed across the sea to.

In an ingot—as part of a lump of metal (not yet minted).

Convoy—protection ; escort. (Lit. *convoy* is the name given to a fleet of warships accompanying merchant vessels to protect them).

Sir Francis Drake—(1545-1596)—A famous English sea-man. In 1577 he plundered Spanish towns on the coast of Chili and Peru. He sailed round the world, and took an important part in resisting the Spanish Armada.

Under ... Drake—Sir Francis Drake might protect an English vessel bringing silver from Peru, but he would be more likely to capture a Spanish trading ship bearing silver, and bring it to England. The silver must have been brought over to England when the notorious English piratical heroes swept the seas and earned fame by fighting and capturing Spanish ships and accounting it a glorious thing to have "singed the Spanish King's beard." During the reign of Elizabeth the hatred of the English towards Spain had reached its high-water mark.

Indian—the term usually applied to natives of America. Habit—dress ; garb.

Taken.....habit—ceased to form part of the ingot. Refined—cleaved ; freed from impurities.

Naturalised—changed so as to become English.

Put.....mode—converted into an English coin.

Arms—armorial bearings or design.

Equipped—rigged up ; dressed. Found in me—discovered that I had in me.

Wonderful—marvellous ; extraordinary. **Inclination**—tendency ; desire.

Ramble—wander about purposelessly (aimlessly).

Visit—go to **The new world**—Here means the world new to it into which the shilling had been brought—[of course it was the old world which the shilling had come to]

Page 55.

The people very.....disposition—The people helped me very much in satisfying my natural propensity to ramble, i. e. by frequently exchanging me (I was only a shilling)—I circulated freely.

Shifted—exchanged (Lit. moved). So fast—so frequently.

Before old—before five years had expired since my being converted into a shilling.

Travelled into—journeyed into—(in the course of being exchanged.)

Corner—part.

Nation—i. e., the country inhabited by the nation which here is the English nation—hence nation=England.

[*Note.*—Some commentators explain 'every corner of the nation' as meaning 'every section of society in the nation.' It is difficult however to support this interpretation. Addison speaks of the shilling as having travelled in the course of changing hands. Now, it would be possible for a shilling to pass through the hands of representatives of every section of society, nay, of every race of the world and yet not go outside the confines of such a town as London. Again the use of the word "corner" indicates locality.]

My sixth year—i. e., the sixth year of my existence as a shilling.

Unspeakable—so great as to be unutterable. **Fell into**—got into.

Miserable old fellow—an old miser. **Clapped me**—thrust me.

Chest—box. **Quality**—kind.—**Relief**—freedom from confinement.

The only..... evening—The miser must evidently have been in the habit of taking out and counting his money every morning and evening.

Explanation of paragraph 4.

I was formed as silver on the slopes of a mountain near a little village in Peru. I travelled as part of an ingot to England under

the escort of Sir Francis Drake. Having arrived in England I was shorn of my American form and minted into a shilling with Queen Elizabeth's face stamped on one side of me and the arms of England on the other. Having been thus rigged up I discovered in me a marvellous weakness for wandering about aimlessly hither and thither with no further object than to visit all the parts of the new country into which I had been brought. The people too helped me to realize my natural inclination and moved me about by exchanging me so frequently that before I had been a shilling for five years I had travelled into nearly every part of the country. But in the beginning of the sixth year of my life, to my inexpressible grief, I fell into the hands of an old miser, who thrust me into an iron box, where I found five hundred more shillings accumulated. There I lay in confinement, my only relief being that I was taken out and counted along with the other shillings in the box, every morning and evening

Para. 5. Imprisonment—confinement. Several—many. A-dying—dying.

Separated us—parted the coins that were locked up in the box, the one from the other.

Apothecary—The keeper of a store, not necessarily drugs.

Sack—a kind of old, dry Spanish wine, formerly called *seck*, meaning a dry wine.

[*Note*—The son was a spendthrift who made haste to spend all his father's savings, even before the father was dead, for he broke open the chest in which the money was locked up—a step he would have been under no necessity to take had he waited till his father was dead, for then he would, being the heir, have got the keys in the ordinary course. The savings of misers are generally dissipated by spendthrift children in conformity with the law that action and reaction are equal and opposite.]

Herb-woman—a woman that *sells* herbs in a basket from door to door such a water-cress, lime, lavender, &c.

Butcher—a man who sells (and often too kills) meat.

Brewer—one who brews liquor—(especially beer).

To a preacher—the original text has non-conformist preacher. Anyhow, the humour of the passage lies in the fact that officers of the church are great enemies of the practice of drinking, and as the irony of fate would have it the shilling went direct from the hands of a brewer's wife into those of a churchman.

After this manner—in this fashion—by being exchanged and transferred from hand to hand.

Made my way—travelled through. Merrily—happily, joyfully.

We.....travelling—the very end of our existence consists in our circulation.

Fetchd in—bought in ; purchased Satisfaction—feeling of having done something good.

To treat—to provide. Templar—a student of the law or a Barrister residing in the Temple.

Twelvepenny—costing twelve pence (or one shilling).

Ordinary—A dinner which is supplied at a fixed price, as distinguished from dinners supplied specially to suit the fancy of any particular individual. [In Restaurants in Europe it is usual to find two lists—one a list of courses fixed by the proprietor for which there is a fixed charge—and another, a list of dishes which can be had at the establishment with the price of each marked in the margin. The former kind of dinner is in modern parlance styled '*Table d'hôte*, and the latter, where the customer pays for that only which he orders, is termed *a la carte*.]

Or carry.....Westminster Hall—this shows that in Addison's time the cost of conveyance from the Temple to Westminster Hall was three pence a head—now it is only one penny a head.

Explanation of paragraph 5.

After having been confined in the miser's chest for several years, one day we heard somebody knocking at the chest with a hammer in order to break it open. This person we found out was the miser's heir, who, as his father lay a-dying, was good enough to come and release us from our confinement. He parted us from each other that very day. What became of my companions I do not know but as for me, I was sent to a '*Stores*' to purchase a pint of dry Spanish wine. The keeper of the *Stores* transferred me to a woman who was selling herbs ; she passed me on to the butcher and the butcher to a brewer who, in turn, handed me over to his wife. This lady finally made a present of me to a churchman. In this fashion, changing hands, I travelled joyfully through the world ; for, as I have already told you, we shillings are intended for circulation and we achieve our purpose by that means only. I was freely exchanged ; sometimes I bought a shoulder of mutton, sometimes a play-book, and sometimes I had the pleasure of realizing that I was the means of furnishing a templar with an ordinary shilling dinner, or of carrying him and three friends from the Temple to Westminster Hall.

Para. 6. Pleasant—merry ; joyful. Progress—journeying. Arrested—stopped.

Shut me up—confined me.

Greasy purse—an old purse which had become greasy from excessive handling.

Page 56.

Foolish saying—"The fallacy lies in the assumption that "money" means 'other money.'

While she kept.....money—this is evident, because so long as there was a shilling there would be money, since a shilling is money. What the old woman, however, understood by the saying is that so long as she carried the shilling about, she would have enough of money for her expenses.

Close prisoner—closely guarded in my confinement.

Explanation of paragraph 6.

Whilst I was thus being transferred from person to person and locality to locality, I fell into the hands of a superstitious old woman, who at once arrested my further progress by shutting me up in a greasy old purse, under the silly belief that whilst I remained in her purse, she would not run short of money. For several months I remained a close prisoner in the woman's greasy purse until at last I was exchanged by her for 48 farthings.

Para. 7. Rambled—wandered aimlessly. Beginning—commencement.

Civil War—i. e., the war between Charles I and the Parliamentary party.

To my shame—I am ashamed to admit the use to which I was put.

Raising, &c.—the succeeding lines of the paragraph indicate how the shilling was used to raise soldiers, &c.

Breadth—size—The Queen Elizabeth shilling was bigger than the shilling coined in Addison's time.

Inveigle—artfully induce. Country fellows—ignorant rustics (villagers).

'List—enlist—be enrolled as soldiers—by giving them "the Queen's shilling" as it is now called. Even at the present day, officers of the Army, generally sergeants in rank, may be met with in the thickly crowded parts of London. whose business it is to induce

persons to join the Army. Their practice is to address any person whose looks suggest that he may possibly be persuaded to enlist, and having persuaded him to consent, they take his name and particulars, and give him necessary directions and a shilling. It is unnecessary to add that the shilling is in most cases quickly spent at the nearest public house.

Being of a ... parliament—the shilling being of a larger size than the shillings of those days, villagers who are generally ignorant and foolish, were tempted to enlist because they believed they would have more silver than a shillings worth, elsewhere.

Explanation of paragraph 7.

In this way I aimlessly wandered from pocket to pocket until the commencement of the civil war in the reign of Charles I., when to my shame, I was made use of for the purpose of raising soldiers on behalf of parliament to fight the king. I, being a Queen Elizabeth shilling, was larger in size than the shillings of those days, and was therefore very effectively used to tempt ignorant country people into enlisting on the side of parliament—the royalists offering only the ordinary shilling of that period.

Para. 8. One man sure—i. e., made sure of one man joining the parliamentary standard.

Way—practice ; manner.

Oblige him—compel him. More homely figure—more familiar design, i. e., the shillings then current coin.

Mischief—injury.

To the Crown—to the cause of Royalist party and Charles I.

My officer—i. e., the officer in whose charge and possession I was.

Chancing—happening.

Walk abroad—leave his quarters and go out into the town.

Wench—woman.

Bent mesweetheart—this is a common superstition among lovers of the lower class. It was supposed to act as a charm and ensure faithfulness.

Ungenerous gallant—mean lower—(because of what follows).

Pawned—pledged. Drinking me out—at first less than a shillings worth of brandy was taken—next morning the shillings worth was completed.

Beaten flat—straightened from the bending. Set—started. A running—circulating.

Explanation of paragraph 8.

It was the practice of the recruiting officer to tempt country folk to enlist by offering him the Queen Elizabeth shilling, but after getting his consent, he used to compel him to accept a shilling of the kind then in circulation. By this means, being enabled to retain the Queen Elizabeth shilling, he was able to practise this same trick on others. In this way I continued for a little time to do injury to the cause of the Royalist party until one morning, the recruiting officer in whose charge I was, happening to go out earlier than usual, I was handed over to a milk-maid. This woman bent me and gave me to her sweetheart who, mean lover that he was, pledged me for brandy. I was then beaten flat with a hammer and again put in circulation.

Para. 9. Adventures--escapades. Tedious--dull and monotonous. Relate--narrate; rehearse.

In company with--together with. Deceased--dead. Gave--exhibited.

Demonstrations of joy--outward evidence of pleasure, because he thought he was to receive a legacy under his father's will.

Fair--valuable; extensive. Estate--property. By virtue of--by reason of. Cut off . . . present to him--In England, it is usual when disinheriting a person who claims as an heir, to give him one shilling. This is spoken of as cutting off with a shilling.

This--the fact of being disinherited. Passion--rage. Cursed me--showered curses on me.

Squirred me away--flung me away. The word is used to represent the whistling sound made by the shilling in the course of its rapid flight through the air.

Fling--throw.

Page 57.

To light--to alight; to fall. Unfrequented place--a place not much visited by people; seldom resorted to.

Dead wall--a blank wall.

Useless--because I was not in circulation. During...Cromwell--note that Addison was a Royalist. He looked upon the age of the Commonwealth as an usurpation of power.

Explanation of paragraph 9.

After many escapades, which it would be both dull and monotonous to rehearse, I was sent to a young spendthrift together with

his dead father's will, as the shilling with which he was cut off from the inheritance. The young man, who I discovered was of a very extravagant disposition, showed great signs of joy when he received the packet, but on opening it. when he discovered that he had been disinherited, literally cut off with a shilling, he flew into a rage, took me in his hand, cursed me as violently as he could, and then flung me away from him as far as he could throw me. I happened to fall under a blank wall, a spot not much resorted to by people, and consequently I lay undiscovered and useless all through the long period of the usurpation of Oliver Cromwell

Para. 10. The king's return—the restoration of Royalty. The reference is to the Restoration of Charles II. Poor cavalier—almost all those who had supported the king had become impoverished thereby.

There—in the neighbourhood of the blank wall. Cast me—happened to see me.

To the . both—because the cavalier was poor and wanted me with which to pay for a dinner, and I on my part wanted to circulate for “we shilling love nothing so much as travelling.”

Cook's shop—a shop where cooked food could be obtained.

Upon me—i. e., giving me in exchange as the price of the dinner.

Drank the...health—toasted the king with liquor.

Explanation of paragraph 10.

After the expiry of about a year after the Restoration of Charles II., one evening a Royalist, who had become impoverished by supporting the king's cause, chanced at dinner time to be walking about near the spot where I was lying, and fortunately for both of us, saw me. I was the means of furnishing him with a dinner and with liquor to toast the king, whilst I myself was again set in circulation, to travel from place to place, an occupation which we shillings dearly love

Para. 11. Credit - value. Antiquity—age. Gamester—a gambler.

Laid hold of me—took possession of me. Converted me into—used me as

Counter—a mark or token for counting. Melancholy—sad.

Busy—actively at work.

At those hours—during that time. Wherein—when.

Current coin—ordinary money which is in circulation at any given time.

Hours whenrest—gamesters are busy at night, when business people and the money they use, are at rest.

And partaking—and we partook. Fate—lot.

Partaking . . master—sharing the changing fortunes of the gamester, being now reckoned as a high stake, and the next moment as a low one according as the gamester won or lost the game.

Situation—position ; circumstance.

Fortune of the cards—luck as regulated by the turning up of particular cards of the pack.

Good luck—good fortune. Break—become bankrupt ; become unable to pay.

Sent abroad—set in circulation. Primitive—original.

Denomination—designation ; name.

Explanation of paragraph 11.

Being now of great value on account of my old age, I was looked upon more as a medal than as an ordinary coin. A gambler therefore obtained possession of me and used me as a counter together with some dozen others like me which he already possessed. We led a very miserable and sad life whilst in the gambler's possession being actively at work during those hours when other current coins were at rest, and being now valued at a sovereign and then at six pence according to position in which my master found himself in consequence of the variations in his luck. At last however I had the good fortune to see my master become bankrupt so that he could gamble no longer. I was then again sent out into the world to circulate under my original name of "Shilling."

Para. 12. Pass over—*i. e.*, not mention. Accidents—incidents.

Moment—consequence ; interest.

Fatal catastrophe—the most unfortunate final event or crisis.

An artist—here used ironically—means, a clipper of coins. At one time gangs of coin clippers, who extracted silver from silver coins, were very numerous. The defective manner in which the earlier coins were minted afforded ample opportunity for the exercise of the "coin clipper's" art. By clipping a shilling, the value of the coin remained unaltered, though the quantity of silver constituting the coin was reduced. Coin "clipping" was a very serious offence and was visited with very severe punishment when detected. Hence coin clipping operations were generally conducted in underground cellars.

Conveyed—carried. Unmerciful—(cruel) one which took no heed of consequences.

Shears—coin cutters or clippers.

Titles—the writing round the edge of the coin—the writing on the face of me which described what coin I was.

Brims—rims; edges. Retrenched—cut down. Shape—form

Rubbed me—i. e., rubbed me down

Spoiled and pillaged—robbed and plundered. Groat—a four penny piece.

You may think—you can imagine. Confusion—distraction

Curtailed—abridged or reduced in dimensions Disfigured—mutilated

Shameful—disgraceful to ourselves—(injurious to our dignity)

Page 58.

Punched through the middle—a hole made through the middle of them.

Explanation of paragraph 12.

I shall skip over those incidents of my life which are of only second rate interest and pass on to the climax of the calamities that befell me in the course of my life. I fell into the hands of a coin-clipper, who took me to an underground cell, and with a pair of clippers so reduced my size and so mutilated my shape that I was left scarcely worth four pence. I felt this disgrace very keenly but consolation was that all the other coins he had in possession were also similarly treated. Some few however were not clipped like myself, but they had a hole bored through the centre of them.

Para. 13. General—happening to us all; overtaking all of us. Calamity—evil; misfortune. (Debasement of the coinage).

Irretrievable—incapable of remedy. Desperate—hopeless. Furnace—a large fire-place where a very great degree of heat can be generated.

We weretogether—i. e., all the existing coins were melted down and a new coinage was issued when the debased state of the currency became shamefully notorious.

As it a fire—as is often the case when cities which have been burnt down are rebuilt. The reference is to the improvement in the city of London after the Great Fire of 1666.

Appeared—i. e., reappeared—came forth into the world again.

Lustre—shine ; brilliancy.

Change of sex—indicated by the change in the monarch's head. Before, the shilling had on it the head of Queen Elizabeth—after being re-minted it bore on it the head of Charles II.

Extraordinary—unusual. Above—more than.

Explanation of paragraph 13.

During the continuance of the national calamity, which consisted in a notorious debasement of coinage, at a time when all the world was losing faith in the integrity of English money, we coins were collected and reminted, after which we went forth into the world again with greater beauty and brilliancy than we ever could have boasted of before. Instead of a queen's head we now bore, stamped on us, the head of King Charles II. What adventures I have gone through since my change of sex I will take advantage of a future opportunity to narrate. At present I will confine myself to the rehearsal of only two adventures because of their unusual character, and also because such adventures have never fallen to my lot more than once in the whole course of my life.

Para. 14. My being.... pocket--poets are generally so poor that they are supposed never to have a shilling in their pocket. So, being in a poet's pocket was quite an adventure for the shilling.

Brightness—brilliance. Novelty—newness and strangeness. The new coins minted were quite unlike the shillings previously in circulation.

Gave occasion—furnished the occasion ; was made the opportunity for the composition of.

Finest—most delightful.

Burlesque poem—a comic poem intended to ridicule something. The best known burlesque poem in the English language is Butler's *Hudibras*, which was written to ridicule the extravagance of the Puritans—Another well-known burlesque is the *Don Quixote* of Cervantes, which ridicules the oddities of the knight-errant of the days of chivalry.

Entitled from me—called after me ; named after me.

The Splendid Shilling—a poem in the Miltonic Style written by John Phillips. He was a poet of considerable eminence and was also the author of "*Blenheim*," a poem in praise of Marlborough's

Victory (1676-1708). The opening lines of the poem are the following:—

“Sing heavenly muse !
Things unattempted yet, in prose or rhyme,
A shilling, breeches, and chimeras dire
Happy the man who, void of cares and strife,
In silken or in leathern purse retains
A splendid shilling.

In charity—by way of charity : as charity.

But.....mistake—because people usually by way of charity give away coins of only small value

Heedlessly—recklessly ; carelessly. [The gift of a shilling by way of charity to an itinerant beggar is a very rare occurrence. So this also was a curious experience]

Hat—“almost of the same age as the shilling. Granger, an historian, says that the first English portrait he remembered to have seen with a hat belonged to the reign of Elizabeth. The common practice in England is for beggars to hold out their hats into the hollow part of which passers by throw whatever alms they may care to give the beggar.

Explanation of paragraph 14.

The first of the two experiences which I have promised to narrate, consisted in my finding my way into the pocket of a poet, who was so struck with my brightness and the novelty of my appearance that he wrote on me one of the finest burlesque poems in the English language, entitled “*The Splendid Shilling*.” The other adventure was that I was once recklessly given away by way of charity to a blind man, and thrown into his hat, which was of about the same age as myself, to keep company with a penny worth of farthings.

Summary of the Essay—Paragraph by Paragraph.

Para. 1. Last night I visited a friend of mine who advanced the following paradox, “that it required much greater talents to fill up and become a retired life, than a life of business.” He further urged that a common shilling had gone through more adventures in the course of its life than the busiest of busy men in the course of their lives

Para. 2. My friend's talk was so odd that as soon as I lay down I fell insensibly into a reverie, which can better be described as a delirium than as a dream.

Para. 3. I thought that the shilling lying on the table raised itself on its edge and gave me the following account of itself.

Para. 4. I was brought as silver ore from Peru to England in the reign of Queen Elizabeth. Arrived in England I was converted into a Queen Elizabeth shilling. Before I was five years a shilling I had travelled into every corner of England, but in the sixth year of my existence I fell into the hands of a miser who clapped me into an iron chest.

Para. 5. After being imprisoned in the miser's chest for several years I was released, when the miser lay dying, by his spendthrift son, who immediately sent me to a "stores" to purchase a pint of sack. I passed successively through the hands of a herb-woman, a butcher, a brewer, and his wife who gave me to a preacher.

Para. 6. I next fell into the hands of a superstitious old woman, who put me into her greasy purse in pursuance of the foolish saying, "that while she kept a Queen Elizabeth shilling about her, she should never be without money." At last I was exchanged by her for 48 farthings.

Para. 7. During the era of the Civil Wars I was used to raise soldiers for the parliamentary party against the king.

Para. 8. I was used merely to ensnare rustics into joining the standard of the round heads because I was bigger in size than the shilling then current. But after the young fellow's promise was extracted, he was prevailed upon to accept an ordinary shilling instead of myself. I was then given to a milk-maid, and by her I was bent and passed on to her sweetheart. Later on I was beaten straight and again was put into circulation.

Para. 9. I was once sent as the shilling with which a father disinherited his prodigal son. I was abused and thrown away by the son and landed under a blank wall, where I lay unnoticed and useless all through the usurpation of Oliver Cromwell.

Para. 10. About a year after the Restoration a poor cavalier picked me up, and I paid for a dinner and for liquor to toast the king with.

Para. 11. Being now of great value on account of my great age I was looked upon more as a medal than as an ordinary coin. I fell into the hands of a gambler who used me as a counter until he became bankrupt, when again I went into the world as a "shilling."

Para. 12. I then fell into the hands of a coin-clipper who so clipped me as to reduce my value to about four pence.

Para. 13. The currency of the country had become so deteriorated that I was thrown into a furnace and reminted. I now appeared as a new coin with Charles II's head stamped on me.

Para. 14. Since my reminting, my most notable adventures were, first that I found my way into a poet's pocket who wrote a fine burlesque poem on me and next I was recklessly thrown into a blind man's hat by way of charity to keep company with a penny worth of farthings.

THE ROYAL EXCHANGE—Addison.

Para. 1. To frequent—to visit frequently ; to be present in constantly. The spectator in an account of himself says " I have been mistaken for a merchant on the exchange, the last ten years "

Royal Exchange—described by Steele (No. 454) as the "centre of the city, and the centre of the world of trade." It is a meeting place of London merchants, founded by Sir Thomas Gresham in 1570 A. D. The original building was burnt in the Great Fire of 1666, and was rebuilt on a larger scale

Secret satisfaction—satisfaction at heart. In some measure—to some extent.

Gratifies—pleases ; humours ; satisfies.

Page 60.

Vanity—national pride As I am—I being To see—to witness.

Rich—individually rich. Assembly—gathering ; collection.

Countrymen—i. e., my countrymen—hence Englishmen.

Consulting together—taking counsel together.

Private...mankind—matters of interest to men in their private capacity, not matters of national or political or importance.

Metropolis—capital, i. e., London. Kind of—sort of.

Emporium—Lit. a town or city of trade—hence mart or market. Earth—world.

Confess—admit. High Change—the full assemblage of the principal merchants at the busiest time of the day.

Great council—A meeting of a large and important body of men for the purposes of consultation and the settling of differences The author here draws an analogy between a representative political

assembly like the parliament and a representative commercial assembly like the exchange.

Considerable—important—(these nations which have to be considered)

Representatives—*i. e.* people to speak for their interests

Factors—(Lit. doers, those who do business for the wealthy societies.—hence, mercantile agents After 'factors' supply "are"

Ambassadors—representatives of sovereign of political states.

Politic—political, hence in relation to political affairs.

Negotiate affairs—determine the terms of business

Conclude treaties—enter into agreements of International commerce, (making up points of difference in the same way as ambassadors of one nation negotiate political matters and enter into stipulations with those of other states).

Maintain—preserve; keep up. Good correspondence—good terms; friendly attitude; willingness to do business.

Societies—aggregates:—(*i. e.*, belonging to different countries). Wealthy societies—communities of wealthy men.

Divided—separated. Extremities—extreme ends

Divided from . . . continent—that belong to the same fraternity having one common interest, though living in the remotest corners of the continent divided by such physical limitations as seas and continents.

Explanation of paragraph 1.

There is no place in London which I love so much as the Royal Exchange. Because when I am there I feel a sort of secret satisfaction, being an Englishman, at seeing so many distinguished people, both my own countrymen and foreigners, transacting mercantile business together, thereby making London a market for the wares of the world. And this naturally flatters my national pride, I personally look upon the Royal Exchange, when business is very brisk, as a great council to which all the leading nations send their respective representatives:—mercantile agents bearing the same relation to International trade that ambassadors bear to International politics, in as much as it is these agents who negotiate mercantile transactions, conclude mercantile treaties, and preserve friendly relations between distant bodies of purchasers and sellers, persuading them to enter into commercial relations, with each other to the mutual advantage of all parties concerned.

Para. 2. I have often been pleased—It has often given me great pleasure.

To hear—to listen to. Disputes—differences.

Adjusted—settled. Inhabitant—resident.

Alderman—A magistrate of the City of London, elected by the corporation of London.

Subject—*i. e.*, one under the rule or government of.

The Great Mogul—a designation applied to the Mogul Emperors because they ruled over a very extensive Empire and within it were absolute rulers and consequently immensely powerful. The basis of their Empire was military force. During Addison's time Bahadur Shah, son of Aurangzeb, was Emperor at Delhi.

League—business agreement or compact.

One—*i. e.*, a subject of.

Czar of Muscovy—Czar of Russia. Russia was formerly called Muscovy after the name of its old capital "Moscow." The original Russia was not such an extensive state as it now is—it occupied no territory south of the Duna or west of the 30th meridian. It was little known in Addison's day, and had little influence on the politics of western Europe.

Infinitely—very greatly—more than can be adequately expressed.

Mixing with—associating with—coming closely into contact with.

Ministers of commerce—see para. 1. "Factors in the trading world," &c.—people who counsel capitalists as regards their financial dealings.

Walks—branches of trade and commerce.

Jostled—run against; pushed—in the original essay the form "justled" is used.

Make one in—make one of; form one of.

I am.....times—*i. e.*, according to the group of people in the midst of whom I am.

Fancy—imagine.

Old philosopher—Diogenes, a celebrated Cynic philosopher, born 412 B. C. Died 323 B. C. He lived wildly in his youth and was banished for coining false money. He retired to Athens, was reformed by Antisthenes, and soon became known as an extreme Cynic. He

despised health, was indifferent to the weather, and took up his residence in a tub near the temple of Cybele. When going to *Ægina*, he was seized by Pirates, who sold him into slavery. He was brought by Xeniaes of Corinth, who made him preceptor to his children. When Alexander the Great asked him if he could oblige him in any way, Diogenes replied, "Yes, stand out of my sunshine"; and the independence of the answer so pleased the monarch that he exclaimed, "Were I not Alexander, I would wish to be Diogenes." When asked what countryman he was, he replied "*a citizen of the world.*"

Explanation of paragraph 2.

On many an occasion it has been a source of great pleasure to me to witness a difference between a native of Japan and an Alderman of the city of London being settled, or to observe a subject of the Mogul Emperor (East Indian) enter into business relations with a subject of the Ozar of Russia. I take infinite delight in associating with these advisers of capitalists of all nations. Sometimes I am to be seen pushing my way among a body of Armenians, sometimes I am in the midst of a group of Jews, at other times I may be noticed forming one of a body of Dutchmen. I so thoroughly imbibe the spirit of those, in whose midst I am, that for the time being I may be regarded now as a Dane, then as a Swede, and sometimes as a Frenchman—or more properly speaking I imagine myself a citizen of the world like Diogenes.

Para. 3. Frequently—often. Busy—engaged in transacting business.

Multitude—concourse—gathering. Upon me—at me.

Bustling—moving about actively; jostling.

Connives at my presence—abets my being present in the Royal Exchange without being recognised or introduced to other people. The manner in which Sir Andrew connives, &c is by not taking further notice of the spectator.

Page 61.

Merchant of Egypt—a merchant, who is a native of Egypt.

Formerly—at an earlier date—sometime back.

Remitted me—sent to me. ["The story of Addison's visit to Cairo was a fiction, for the first time introduced in the first number of the spectator."]

As I am—because I am; by reason of the fact that I am.

Not versed in—not acquainted with; have no knowledge of; do not know.

Coptic—the language of the Copts or modern Egyptian—hence modern Egyptian.

Conference—communication ; intercourse.

Go no...than—do not go beyond ; are restricted or confined to. **A bow and a grimace**—a nod of the head and a contortion of the face indicative of recognition.

Explanation of paragraph 3.

Although I very often visit the Royal Exchange, no one knows me there except my friend Sir Andrew, and he too abets my desire to remain unknown and unrecognised by doing no more than smiling on me when we come across each other. There is another person, an Egyptian merchant, who knows me, from the fact that when I visited Cairo he sent me some money there, but I, not knowing the modern Egyptian language, cannot converse with him, and our intercourse is therefore also confined to a mere bow and a grimace.

Para. 4. Grand—imposing. **Scene**—spectacle.

Business—commercial activity.

Gives me—affords me ; furnishes me with.

Solid and substantial entertainments—recreation which not only afforded me fun but also instructed me and thus benefited me.

As I am—since I am ; because I am.

Mankind—i. e., men ; the human race.

Lover of mankind—philanthropist.

Naturally—from the nature of the case, therefore necessarily.

Overflows with pleasure—the heart is compared to a vessel in which pleasure is confined. Addison means that he experienced so much pleasure that his heart was too small to contain it all, which therefore necessarily flowed over the sides. **Is filled with a superabundance of.**

Solemnities—grand and formal occasions.

Forbear—refrain from ; keep myself from ; help.

Expressing—giving vent to. **Joy**—feelings of joy.

Stolen down—unconsciously and imperceptibly rolled down.

Wonderfully—to a degree, sufficient to excite wonder—hence very great degree (almost excessive degree).

Thriving—prospering. **In**—so far as regards.

Promoting—bettering ; increasing.

The public stock—the wealth or property of the nation at large.

Thriving instock—Addison explains how they accomplish this in the sentence which follows **Thriving**—prospering.

In their own . fortunes—by earning money for themselves.

Promoting stock—thereby adding to the national wealth.

At the same stock—as individuals grow richer, the community grows richer also

Raising estates . . . superfluous—acquiring wealth, by commerce, which has the effect of exporting superfluous things from the country and importing those in which the country lacks.

Explanation of paragraph 4.

This imposing spectacle of commercial activity instructs and amuses me in an almost unlimited variety of ways Since I am a lover of mankind, anything which has a tendency to increase their happiness naturally gladdens my heart, and I feel an unbounded pleasure in beholding the spectacle of a prosperous and happy multitude, so much so that at many formal public ceremonies I cannot refrain from shedding tears of joy, which in fact steal imperceptibly down my cheeks. And it is because I love mankind so that I am more than ordinarily delighted at seeing such a large and diverse collection of men increasing their private fortunes and thereby also assisting in increasing the material wealth and prosperity of the country—for in acquiring wealth by commerce, people export superfluous things from the country and import those commodities which the country lacks In order to pay for the imports at the least possible cost to the country manufactures are developed and the system of agriculture from time to time improved. (Cf. Marshall's Principles of Economics).

Para. 5. **Peculiar**—special. **Disseminate**—scatter. **Blessings**—her choicest gifts ; her boons

Different regions—various quarters ; different parts

With an eye to—with the object of promoting.

This mutual intercourse—the intercourse between different nations which results from international trade.

This common interest—i e., the common interest of bettering themselves by international trade.

Explanation of paragraph 5.

It seems that the object of nature in thus distributing different kinds of produce over different parts of the world was to promote

intercourse between different nations, to make them dependent, one upon the other, so that without co-operation they could not progress, and to bind them together by a common interest.

Para. 6. Every degree—*i. e.*, every degree of latitude and longitude, hence every part of the earth. Peculiar—special.

Every degree .. it—Countries separated from each other even by single degrees of latitude or longitude are known to produce things of different kinds, so that what one country produces the other does not.

Food—staple or substantial food.

Often grows in—often is the produce of.

Sauce—that which gives flavour to food.

Fruits of Portugal—*oranges* ; but here fruits in general.

Corrected by—if they be sour, they are *sweetened with*.

Products of Barbadoes—sugar, which is produced in the West-India islands.

Fruits.....Barbadoes—fruits are sweetened with sugar—(Lit. meaning is that the taste of fruits is modified by adding sugar).

Infusion—decoction. China plant—the tea plant, which grows in China.

The infusion.....plant—*i. e.*, tea. *Note*, in Addison's time tea was not grown in India.

Pith—extract. Indian cane—the sugar-cane which grows in India and the East Indian Archipelago.

Pith of an Indian cane—*i. e.*, sugar. [The sugar, which is here spoken of, was made in the East Indian Archipelago, not in India Proper. Whenever Addison means to speak of India Proper he uses Hindustan].

The infusion.....cane—tea is sweetened with sugar.

Flavour—taste ; relish. Bowls—food and drink.

The Phillipine Islands—these islands may be taken as representative of the Malay Archipelago.

Give.....bowls—supply Europe with the spices (cloves, nutmegs, &c.), which flavour European foods and drinks ; which give a relish by way of seasoning to the contents of European bowls or cups, called the Punch bowls containing the well known *punch*, a drink of five ingredients—spirit, water, sugar, lemon-juice and spices ; or *vassail-bowls* which contain among other beverages, the famous

lamb's-wool, a wholesome beverage composed of ale, the pulp of roasted apples, and sugar richly seasoned with *spices*.

The single dress—one single costume.

Woman of quality—woman, (*i. e.*, female) of rank and social position.

Page 62.

Climates—countries. **Muff**—a fur cover for the hands in winter; a sort of bag into which ladies thrust their hands in winter, usually made of fur lined with silk.

Fan—is carried by ladies in summer to cool themselves. The fan here spoken of must refer to a fan made of ostrich feathers. The ostrich is a bird found in Africa. These fans are very expensive. Of course ordinary fans made of cloth may be made anywhere.

The muff.....earth—the fur of which the muff is made comes from a cold country, the feathers which make up the fan come from a hot country. **Come together**—are brought into the possession of the same lady.

Tippet—a short cloak covering the shoulders.

Brocade—silk worked with gold and silver.

Rise out of—are made from the produce of.

Mines of Peru—the mines of Peru were the chief source of silver, but now produce very little. Gold is also found in small quantities.

Bowels of Indostan—the Diamond mines of India—At one time the mines of Golconda in South India were famous for their diamonds. (Indostan=Hindustan).

Explanation of paragraph 6.

Almost every part of the world produces something peculiar to itself. The staple food of a people is produced in one country and the spices which flavour it in another. Fruits grown in one country are sweetened by sugar grown and made in another; the tea grown in China is sweetened with sugar made from the juice of the sugar-cane grown in the East Indian Archipelago. Spices imported from the Malay Archipelago flavour the dishes and drinks served in European countries. The complete dress of a woman of rank and fashion is often made of articles brought from different parts of the world. For instance, the muff in which she buries her hands in winter is made of fur taken from the backs of denizens of cold countries, the fan, with which in summer she fans her cheeks, is

made of feathers plucked from the body of ostriches that strut the deserts and plains of Africa. The scarf is made of silk produced by silkworms living in the torrid zone, and the fur covering for her shoulders comes from the Arctic regions. The petticoat which she wears is decked with silver and gold from the mines of Peru, and her necklace is made of brilliants from the diamond mines of Golconda.

Para. 7. Consider—think on; take into account.

In its . . . prospect—in its natural aspect or condition—*i. e.*, if we consider only the native products of the soil, and leave out all the things that are brought in from other countries.

Of—arising from. Commerce—trade with other countries.

Barren—(Lit. unproductive) here means, far from self-sufficing.

Natural historians—men who have studied the history of nature *i. e.*, of the growths and products of nature.

Originally—native, in our island. Besides—beyond.

Hips and haws—the fruit of wild roses and hawthorns.

Acorn—the fruit of the oak tree. Pig-nuts—a small edible root or bulb found in the ground.

Delicacies—used ironically—for none of the above list are delicacies.

Nature—kind. Like nature—similar kind Of itself—by itself, without assistance from other sources.

Can makeplum—can produce no more refined species of plum.

Than to a sloe—than a sloe. Sloe is one of the smallest of the fruits of the plum species, is very bitter and rarely eaten. It is extensively used to make 'sloe gin,' a liqueur of British production.

Carries—brings. A crab—*i. e.*, crab-apple—the native English wild apple, very sour and rarely eaten.

Melons, peaches, figs, apricots, cherries—these are different varieties of fruits.

Are . . us—are not indigenous products of England.

Imported—brought or introduced into the country. Ages—times.

Naturalised—adapted to the climate and conditions of England.

Degenerate, &c.—deteriorate in quality owing to the unfavourable conditions of climate and soil.

Trash—rubbish.

Left to soil—the sun in England does not give out sufficient heat for the growth of the above-named fruits, nor is the soil fitted for their growth, hence art and science have to assist nature with hot-houses and special kinds of manure.

Explanation of paragraph 7.

If we consider our country as it was fitted out by nature, denuded of those benefits and advantages which have been added by International trade and intercourse with foreign peoples, it would present a picture of a very uncomfortable and barren spot of earth. Science has informed us that no other fruit than hips and haws, acorns and crab-apples, pig-nuts and sloes can grow indigenously on English soil and in the English climate. Our melons, peaches, figs, apricots, and cherries are not natives of our island, but were introduced from abroad and have been adapted to the climate and soil of England by the assistance of Science and Art—artificial heat and improved manures supplying the heat which the sun refuses, and the fertility which the soil withholds. Without this assistance, furnished by Science and Art, these imported plants would degenerate into the worthless flora, which finds a congenial home in English soil and under the conditions of the English climate.

Para. 8. Traffic—International trade and intercourse with foreign nations.

Whole face—entire aspect.

Nor has.....us—trade has not only improved our vegetable products, but it has made a total change in the entire aspect of nature amongst us.

Harvest—products. Stored—supplied.

Pyramids of China—Nicknacks made of China clay. The rage for collecting China or porcelain crockery was very great at the time. Pyramids—heaps; piles.

Adorned—ornamented. Workmanship of Japan—Japanese art—Japanese painting was and still is in fashion.

Morning's draught—i e., tea. Remotest—furthest.

Repair—cure of diseases; restore to health.

By—by means of; with.

Drugs of America—Peruvian bark, saísaparilla &c., from Brazil, Peru and Bolivia.

epose—rest

Indian canopies—Tents made from cotton grown in India
(canopy = *shamiana*)

Explanation of paragraph 8.

International trade and intercourse with foreign nations has not only improved the condition of our vegetable products, it has also improved the entire aspect of nature among us. By means of trade with foreign countries our ships are enabled, to return to our shores laden with the raw products of foreign countries, to enrich our tables with foreign prepared provisions, with oils, with spices and with foreign wines; our rooms are piled with uicknacks and ornaments from various corners of the globe, from such distant places as China and Japan, our medicines and drugs are brought to us from America, our tea comes from China, and cotton from India.

Page 63.

Para. 9. Vineyards—grape gardens. **Our gardens**—because we enjoy their produce both in the shape of grapes and that of wine.

The spice-islands—the islands of the Indian Archipelago.

Hot-beds—hot houses. Hot-beds or hot-houses are gardens completely covered by glass walls and roofings, along which are placed hot water pipes. By these arrangements, the temperature inside is raised to that of tropical climates and so maintained.

The spice-islands are our hot-beds—the spice-islands serve us as our hot-beds, *i e*, they serve the same purpose as hot-beds in England, and these practically belong to England in as much as the English enjoy the benefit of their produce.

Our silk-weavers—in the same sense as the spice-islands are England's hot-beds and French vine-yards, England's gardens—Persian silks are of very good quality and were much in vogue in England in Addison's time.

Our potters—because vessels made of Chinese clay by Chinamen were largely used in England.

Bare necessaries of life—things absolutely necessary for the sustenance of life.

Traffic—foreign trade. **Great variety.....useful**—a number of commodities which, though not absolutely necessary for the sustenance of life, add to its comfort.

Everything.....ornamental—all our luxuries.

Nor is it . . birth—one of the greatest of our advantages is that our climate is temperate. Owing to the institution of foreign trade we are enabled to enjoy the products of different climates varying greatly in the degree of heat or cold prevailing in them without ourselves being subjected to the rigours of their climates, which differences themselves produce the different products which we enjoy.

Palate—the organ of taste hence-desire for delicate flavours.

Feasted—delighted—satisfied.

Rise—grow.

Between the tropics—*i. e.*, between the boundaries of the tropics—hence, in tropical countries.

Explanation of paragraph 9.

My friend Sir Andrew says that the vineyards of France are practically our gardens for we English enjoy their products; for the same reason he says that the spice-islands are our natural hot-house beds, the Persians are our silk-weavers, and the Chinese our potters. Nature certainly supplies England with the things barely necessary to keep life going, but it is to foreign trade that we have to look for those commodities that increase the comforts of life and bring luxuries to our very doors. And we are, on account of foreign trade, fortunate also in another respect, *viz.*, that whereas we are enabled to enjoy the products of all climates, we ourselves are not subjected to those extremes of heat and cold, which are necessary to bring many of these products into existence.

Para. 10. Commonwealth—here does not mean a republic but a community of men in general.

Knit—unite

Good offices—acts helpful or beneficial to each other.

Distribute—spread over the world.

Gifts of nature—those special products which any particular country, owing to natural advantages, can produce.

Find—furnish. Work—employment.

Magnificence—means for displaying their greatness.

Converts—by means of foreign trade. He exchanges the tin which he digs up from the mines in Cornwall for gold and English wool for Burmese rubies.

Frozen zone—the frigid zone; *i. e.*, the Polar regions. Fleeces the wool—*i. e.*, with woollen garments manufactured in England.

Explanation of paragraph 10.

For the reasons detailed above, there are no more useful members in a community than merchants. They enable the people of different countries to help each other, they spread over the world, for the enjoyment of all, the special products of particular countries, they furnish the poor classes with employment, increase the wealth of the rich, and enable the great to display their grandness by supplying them with the things necessary for so doing. English merchants for instance exchange the tin of their native country for the gold of other countries and the woollen fabrics of English manufacture for the rubies of Burma. Inhabitants of warm countries, such as the Mahomedans, are because of the existence of foreign trade, clothed in garments made of cloth manufactured in England; residents of cold regions are also enabled to warm themselves with woollen fabrics made from the wool of English sheep.

Para. 11. 'Change—Exchange. Fancied—imagined. Old - former.

Standing in person—standing in his very self.

He is..... effigy—statues of the kings of England were the ornament of the first Royal Exchange, which was destroyed in the Great Fire (1666). In the new building nineteen statues of kings appeared, from Edward I. to George III. The Royal Exchange was again rebuilt in 1844, without any of these statues.

Concourse—assembly. Wealthy...people—gathering of wealthy people; wealthy is a transferred epithet. This case—such a case.

How—how much—i. e., he would be very much. Surprised—astonished. This spot—the Royal Exchange.

All theformer dominions—on account of the representatives of different races and countries who visit the Exchange. 'Former dominions—the country of which at one time he had been king.

Private men—ordinary men—men who are not nobles.

In his time—in the days of Feudalism. Feudalism as an institution was abolished in the reign of Charles II.

Baron—nobleman. During the days of Feudalism all the common people used, for the sake of safety, to attach themselves to the establishment of some powerful noble.

Negotiating—dealing in sums of money; entering into transactions which involved large sums of money.

Page 64.

Greater sums of money—as civilization advances, the material wealth and prosperity of a country increases. Than treasury—than in olden days could be found in the Royal exchequer.

Explanation of paragraph 11.

When I have been at the Royal Exchange, I have often imagined one of our former kings standing in flesh and blood at the place where his statue now stands, and from there beholding the assembly of people with which the Exchange is every day occupied. I can also imagine his surprise at hearing there, at the present day, all the languages of the world being spoken, and at seeing ordinary people who, in his days of Feudalism, would have been the vassals of some powerful nobleman dealing in sums of money which, in the olden times, could scarcely have been found stored in the treasury of the nation. (England's wealth and prosperity are due entirely to trade and commerce.)

Para. 12. Withoutterritories—without actually extending the dominions of the British nation by making conquests.

A kind empire—a kind of sway or rule beyond that exercised by virtue of the possession of territory—by enabling us to exercise supremacy over all the great nations of the earth in respect of trade.

Multiplied—increased. Landed estates—landed properties

Infinitely..... valuable—very much more valuable by adding to the influence and prestige of the whole nation.

Added tothemselves—Increased the number of estates or properties in the country by the acquisition of another kind of wealth (money) which is as important now-a-days as the property in land itself.

Summary of the Essay.

The author frequents the Exchange. It gives him great satisfaction to see so great a concourse of rich men of all nations. The Exchange is the Emporium of the world. It may be looked upon as a great council with its ministers and ambassadors. A bargain struck between inhabitants of two extremities of the globe, is an interesting sight. To be lost in a crowd of the different nationalities present, is a matter which gives great delight to Addison. Sir Andrew alone knows Addison, but he keeps his identity a secret. A merchant of Cairo also knows him by sight,

but as they cannot speak, the author not knowing the morden Egyptian language, there is no fear of discovery from that source. The contemplation of this scene of propriety is a source of real pleasure to the author. A large body of men, thriving in private fortune and enlarging the stock of the nation, is a very gratifying spectacle. Nature seems to have taken peculiar care to distribute the different products of the earth over different quarters of the globe, for the purpose of bringing trade into existence and thereby uniting all the nations in a common interest. Almost every degree produces something peculiar to it. The food grows in one country and the sauce in another. A single dress is often the product of a hundred climates. With its native products only, England would be a dreary country. Most of the delicate fruits are brought from other countries and naturalised. Trade has not enriched the vegetable kingdom alone, it has changed the entire aspect of of nature. Our tables are laden with delicacies, the produce of tropical countries, and ourselves with the artistic creations of China and Japan. Sir Andrew calls the vineyards of France our gardens, and the spice islands our natural hot-houses. It is the happiness of Englishmen that they enjoy a temperate climate, and at the same time by means of trade, they also enjoy the produce of more rigorous climates. These reasons make merchants an important element in the commonwealth. They knit mankind together, distribute the gifts of nature, find occupation for the poor, wealth for the rich and magnificence for the great. Some of the kings, who stand in effigy in the Exchange, would be considerably surprised to hear the number of different languages spoken, and to see the wealth of individuals in this little spot of his former dominion. Trade without enlarging territories has established a second empire.

ESSAY XV.

LONDON CRIES—Joseph Addison.

Para. 1. Frights—frightens Cries—shouting of the street hawkers or wandering small tradesmen, advertising their goods in a loud voice.

Get them out...head—i. e., forget them He imagines that he is always hearing them.

Ramage de la Ville—the warblings of the city song-birds.

Music . . . woods—the music made in fields and woods by the singing of the different kinds of birds.

Lately—recently. Odd—peculiar; eccentric.

Whichleave—which I shall reproduce in full for the entertainment

Withoutit—without making any comment upon it

Explanation of paragraph 1.

There is nothing which surprises a foreigner or frightens a country squire more than the Cries of London. Sir Roger has declared to me that during the first week in London on coming up from the country he can't get the cries out of his ears; on the other hand, Will Honeycomb, who is a townsman, declares that their cries are sweeter than the singing of larks and nightingales and calls them the *Ramage de la Ville*. I have recently received a letter from a very humorous individual on this subject, and I reproduce it for my readers without adding any comment.

Praa. 2. Out of all business—out of employment. Willingly—gladly.

Turn anything—devote myself to any kind of work. For—in order to obtain.

Honest livelihood—the means of supporting life in an honest manner

Invented—devised out of my head. Projects—plans. Raising—earning.

Without subject—without exacting contributions from the people of the country, the subjects of the sovereign. The *th* of *burthen* is from Anglo-Saxon; the *d* of *burden* is from the German.

Get—induce; persuade The parliament . . . me—the legislature to pay any attention to my projects. Forsooth—in truth; in fact.

Crack—a crazed man; a man not thoroughly sane; a man having “a tile loose.”

Projector—a man who merely builds castles in the air being unable to carry out into practice that which he conceives of in theory.

Page 66.

Despairing—becoming despondent of the possibility of.

Public-spiritedness—disposition to benefit the country—by the project of raising many millions without burdening the subject.

I would—I desire to; I wish to. Relating to—respecting; regarding.

Design—plan ; idea. Handsome—liberal.

An handsome—only during the xix century had it become usual to employ *a* before an aspirated *h* Scott has 'an hunderd.' Dryden 'an host.'

Handsome subsistence—a decent means of living.

To this cities .. Westminster—London and Westminster were then srparate cities (Cf. Macaulay's England III, pare 96).

Explanation of paragraph 2.

I am a man out of employment and would be gald to turn my hand to almost anything in order to earn the means of livelihood in an honest way. I have devised out of my brains several projects for raising millions of pound and that without taxing the pockets of the queen's subjects, but I cannot persuade the Parliament, who look upon me as a dreamer and a crazy person, to support me. Therefore, having no hope of receiving assistance from the Parliament with respect to the furthering of my patriotic schemes, I desire to appeal to you and to make you acquainted with a design which I cherish very much, in the hope that you will be pleased to recommend it to the cities of London and Westminster.

Para. 3. Post—appointment ; office. Would—desire to. Aim at—be appointed to.

Comptroller—only another way of spelling controller. Control is from *contre-roll*, old from of *counter-roll*, a duplicate register used to verify the first made roll. Comptroller-General of the London Cries therefore would be the regulator in chief of the London hawker's cries

Under . . . discipline—neither regulated by any rules nor subjected to any restrictions, which would have the effect of producing uniformity.

Place—office ; post ; appointment. As being—by reason of my being. Of very strong lungs—having very powerful lungs, so that I shall be able to shout in a manner calculated to advertise the goods properly.

Great insight—knowing thoroughly the *ins* and *outs* of the different London Trades.

Competent skill in music—knowing music sufficiently well to qualify me for the post—I shall therefore be able to arrange the different cries in such a manner as to produce harmony instead of discord and so prevent the cries from jarring upon the ear of the public.

Explanation of paragraph 3.

The office I desire to be appointed to is that of controller of the London Cries; which at the present time are not regulated or restricted by any rules, so that great confusion and utter absence of uniformity prevails. I believe I am tolerably well fitted to hold that post, for, in the first place, I can shout very loud, in the next place, I know the ins and outs of the principal trades and manufactures of London, and lastly I am a proficient musician. By virtue of combining all these qualities in my person I can devise appropriate cries for the Trades of London, cries which will be uniform and musical.

Para. 4. Vocal—produced by the voice. Instrumental—produced from some instrument. Under disorder—under no sort of check or restraint, each man being allowed to choose his own noise and to make as much of it as he pleases

Privilege—a special right conferred on any one is a *privilege*.

For..... together—for an hour at a stretch—probably the length of time he would take in passing through the street.

Twanking—beating. (Twank or twang is another form of tang, an imitative word, denoting a sharp sound)

Watchman's thump—the thumping noise made by the watchman against the front doors of houses to try if the doors were fastened. The watchman were the police of the period. At night they shouted the time at each hour, and the state of the sky.

Startles—causes us to wake up in a fright. Breaking in—by breaking open a door or window.

In our beds—when we are in bed, asleep. Horn—the instrument, like a trumpet, with which he announces his presence.

Bounds—limits.

Licensed—passed; permitted to be used. Tuned—put into proper condition.

In affect—what effect it may produce on. Her majesty—Queen Anne.

Leige subjects—Loyal servants from whom allegiance is due.

Explanation of paragraph 4.

The cries of the itinerant vendors of wares in the town of London may be distinguished into two kinds, *viz.*, those which they make with their utensils and those which they produce only with their voice. As regards the former it may be stated that they are at

present in a state of great confusion. This is due to the fact that a freeman of London has the privilege of disturbing a whole street by beating on a brass-kettle or on a frying-pan. Again, the night-watchman's knock at our doors is no disconcerting that it wakes one up from sleep with a start just as the breaking into the house of a thief might. The sound made by a pig-dealer on his horn has indeed something of music in it, but it is seldom heard within the boundaries of the city. From a consideration of these circumstances I would propose that no vendor should be allowed to strike upon any metal utensil by way of advertising his goods until I had first heard the sound he made and had passed it as allowable. And I would do this only after carefully considering the way in which the sound might act upon the nerves of her Majesty's subjects.

Para. 5. Larger extent—larger number. Indeed—as a matter of fact.

Incongruities—inconsistencies as regards the blending of different sounds, inharmonious.

Barbarisms—rude and harsh noises ; not cultured sounds.

Distracted city—a city filled with madmen.

Enormous—hideous. Outcries—vocal noises

Sold in—the milkman geneally advertises or makes known his presence by crying out in a voice which is pitched in a note, &c.

Note—a tone as it is called—a single simple sound.

Ela—is the name given by Guido to the highest note in his scale of music Figuratively, it is used to express the extreme or height of any quality, especially of a hyperbolical or extravagant saying, as for instance why is this above ela—“Beaumont and Fletcher's” *wit without money*’

Note above ela—a note or sound, in pitch and shrillness, a little higher than *ela*, the extreme note of high pitch.

Page 67.

Sets ..edge—our teeth are said to be set on edge, when we feel a curious shrill or thrilling sensation about the teeth, like that which some of us have, when we hear a piece of cork cut with a knife, or when one smooth glass surface is rubbed against another, or when a wet finger is drawn across the edge of a glass tumbler.

Confined—restrained ; restricted to ; limited to.

Chimney-sweeper—the man who cleans out the chimneys by which the smoke is conveyed away from a fireplace, so as to clear

the soot accumulated in the chimneys, which by catching fire is likely to set fire to the house.

Certain pitch—fixed pitch; regulated and uniform pitch—i. e., they are in all degrees of shrillness.

Utters himself—utters a sound. In—which is in.

Deepest bass—the lowest pitch. Sometimes—occasionally.

Highest-treble—highest pitch.

Gamut—the scale of seven notes from C to B—hence the scale of musical notes. There are two gamuts recognized, the natural and the tempered—the latter being adopted in the construction of all musical instruments.

Same.. on—the same remark applies to.

Retailers of small coal—In London, coal merchants send out coal already broken up into small pieces for sale in small quantities from house to house. This coal is generally placed in sacks of one hundredweight each and carried about on carts, the man in charge shouting out 'coal' as he goes along the street. The reference here is to this man's cries.

My care—my business. Mellow—to deprive of their shrillness.

Voices—sounds (which proceed from the voice).

Accommodate—fit; suit; make appropriate.

Wares—goods; articles for sale. Which—which fact.

Observable—noticeable; remarkable.

Venders—vendors—sellers, *er* is an English suffix corresponding to the Latin *-or*. The Latin ending is more correct, because the stem *vend*—is Latin.

Card-matches--lighters made of card-board by being dipped in sulphur, and used for lighting candles, fires, &c.

Much cry . . . wool—great ostentation or fuss without any substance or reality. The saying is "derived from the ancient mystery of *David* and *Abigail* in which Nabal is represented as shearing his sheep, and the Devil who is made to attend the churl, imitates the act by 'shearing a hog.' Originally the proverb ran thus—"Great cry and little wool, as the Devil said when he sheared the hogs"—*Dr. Brewer*.

Explanation of paragraph 5.

There is a greater variety among the vocal cries of these itinerant vendors than among the instrumental cries, and for this reason there

is greater incongruity and inconsistency and want of harmony among them—so much so, that on account of these barbarous cries foreigners regard London as a city of madmen. The milkman cries out in such a shrill voice that he outdoes the highest note in the musical scale, and thus he often sets the teeth of his hearers on edge. The chimney sweeper, again, does not restrict his cries to any particular pitch but shouts out in whatever note he for the time being may feel inclined to do so, thus ranging from the deepest base to the sharpest treble, from the highest to the lowest note in the musical scale. The same remark applies to the retail vendors of coal, to purchasers of broken glasses and to vendors of brickdust. My business and duty with respect to the cries of these itinerant vendors of wares in the city of London will be to round off their cries so as to make them more musical and less shrill and to adapt the cry of each class of vendors to the kind of goods they sell, so that vendors of trifling articles should not make more noise than vendors of more expensive things as is the case now, sellers of card-matches making much more noise and advertising their goods far more loudly than others.

Para. 6. Musicians—spoken ironically of the vendors who advertise their goods by crying out.

Loud—their loudness is due to their eagerness to dispose of their goods—the sellers, in the case of articles of trifling value, being mostly very poor men.

Splenetic—the *spleen* was supposed to be the seat of ill-humour and melancholy. Hence the adjective splenetic means sour and ill-tempered.

Contract—agreement—(here the word does not bear its strictly legal meaning.)

Tribe—host. **Quarter**—part of the town ; neighbourhood.

Bought off—quintened, i. e., by being paid something in return for a promise not to go into that particular street and cry out there.

Explanation of paragraph 6.

Some of these vendors of articles of trifling value make such a deal of noise that an irritable but honest gentleman whom I know was actually led into bargaining with one of them never again to come into the street in which he lived. But what was the outcome of this agreement—the money paid to the vendor was such an inducement to others, that all the other vendors of card-matches who frequented that quarter of the town went shouting down the street in the hope of similarly being bought off.

Para. 7. Imperfection—shortcoming. In—of. Just—proper; fitting. Measure—proportion. Observed—preserved; kept; maintained. Published—made known; circulated.

Intime—with as little delay as possible

Commodity—thing.

Willcold—"will not keep good when it is cold. To be news the information must be fresh (warm), when it becomes stale (or cold) it ceases to be news, that is, it will not keep."

Precipitation—excitement; vehemence.

Our news "fire"—news should be circulated quickly, but it should not create, from one end of the town to another, an alarm similar to that which would be created with a cry of "*Fire*" (News here stands for the news contained in newspapers. In London every issue of a newspaper is sold in the public streets by men or boys, who shout out at the top of their voices the principal events of public interest in connection with which the paper contains information. These cries are often deafening, and the vendors are so earnest that a person who does not know what these persons are about is likely to be alarmed at the shouting).

A bloody battle—news of a bloody battle having been fought.

Alarms, &c.—the news is circulated with such rapidity and excitement that it creates a commotion throughout the town.

Motion—movement.

Page 68.

Motion French—*i. e.*, in the war then going on

In so..... hurry—with so much fuss and commotion.

Would think—would be put under the impression. The meaning is that the amount of commotion created is so great that one would think that the enemy were so close to us as to be threatening us at our very gates.

This—*i. e.*, the cry of newspaper vendors. Regulate—order.

Spreading of a victory—*i. e.*, spreading the news of a victory.

A march—*i. e.*, the movement of an army from one place to another.

Encampment—*i. e.*, the location at any particular spot of an army in the course of its journey from one place to another.

A Dutch...Mail—These mails would bring reports from the seats of war, and from the countries concerned in the war; all these

countries were concerned in the war of the Spanish succession which was going on at the time.

Alarms—noises (or cries, or shouts) which alarm.

Boisterous—noisy. **Rustics**—country people. **Infest**—fill.

Wares—goods, articles. **Danger of cooling**—fear of getting spoilt. (The analogy is from hot eatables).

Explanation of paragraph 7.

Another defect in our London Cries is that in them is wanting all sense of proportion and proper occasion. For instance, though it is necessary that "news" should be published as quickly as possible, yet its circulation should not be effected by means of shouting which rivals in its excitement the cry of "*Fire*." Nor should the news of the mere encampment of an army, or the mere march of an army from one spot to another, be the occasion for as much vehement excitement on the part of news vendors as the news of a victory or other important communications from the seat of war. Again the farmers who come to town from the country during the turnip season to sell turnips make much more noise than they need, for their wares are such as will not get damaged by a little keeping—and in this respect different from "news."

Para. 8. Affect time—draw out their cries.

Tunable—better fitted to be made musical, tuneful; properly capable of producing a tune.

Cooper—the man who mends copper utensils and polishes them.

Swells—draws out. **Swells . . . note**—draws out the note at the end of his cry. **Hollow voice**—weak, uncertain voice, like the sound proceeding from a hollow or cavity.

That is harmony—that has a music peculiar to itself.

That sad and solemn air—*viz*, "old chairs to mend."

Lamentable—sad-toned; in tones of lamentation. (Slight variation from the modern meaning).

Ditties—*Lit.* short sad songs—here means set or fixed cries uttered in a mournful voice.

Music—the melody. **Wonderfully**—astonishingly.

Languishing—softly swelling and falling.

Explanation of paragraph 8.

One may also hear in London cries which, instead of being loud and precipitous, are soft and drawn out. Such, for instance, is the

cry of the cooper, who draws out the last note of his cry in a weak voice that is not altogether unmusical and out of place. Again, the cry of the man who mends old chaises is sad and solemn, and is in marked contrast to the other vendors of goods who advertise their wares in loud and excited tones. Every one who has lived in London will be able to recall having heard the set cries of other petty dealers and artisans the music of which had been wonderfully languishing and melodious.

Para. 9. Time—season.

Pickling—making into pickle, a kind of preserve.

Dill—a herb from which dill-water is made, a decoction which relieves flatulence. (The time would be autumn).

Above—i. e., for more than—for longer than. **Air**—time.

Adapted—fitted, made suitable to.

Other words—i. e., the cry of the vendors of other kinds of goods.

Explanation of paragraph 9.

I experience considerable pleasure during autumn when the sellers of dill and cucumber pickles are about the streets of London, for their cries are particularly musical. But they are not heard for longer than two months at the outside. The tone of the cry is so musical that it may be worth while to adapt the music of the cry to the words of other cries.

Para. 10. Well-regulated—properly ordered.

Humourists—eccentric people.

Page 70.

✓ **Traditional**—handed down from their forefather's times.

Colly-molly-puff—was a little man just able to bear on his head his basket of pastry, and sung in a very peculiar tone the cant words which passed into his name colly-molly-puff. His death is mentioned by a correspondent in the spectator of April 25, 1713.

Wash-balls—balls of soap. **Absurdity**—Absurd peculiarity.

Runs through—may be noticed in all the cries of London.

Vociferous—noisy. **Generation**—class of men.

Incommodious—unpleasant; disconcerting. **Idle**—useless.

Affected singers—those who sing in an artificial tone which renders the words unintelligible to the listener.

Gingerbread—a kind of biscuit flavoured with the essence of ginger.

Strangely infatuated—peculiarly charmed.

Artists—the vendors who advertise their wares by cries Addison makes fun of them by calling them artists as if their vocal performances were high-class music.

This ... grace—the particular quality of being not understood.

Far as much—in so much as **Rank**—occupation.

Capacity—intelligence. **Lift up their voices**—cry out.

Overcome—shout louder than, so as to drown.

Vend—sell; advertise. **Apt**—suitable; fitting.

Explanation of paragraph 10.

It might be somewhat entertaining to discuss to what extent in a well-ordered town, vendors ought to be permitted to give up the cries of their forefathers and invent tunes and melodies of their own, such for instance as the pastry seller and the powder and soap man have done. Another peculiarity of these criers is that like affected singers they strive to cry so as not to be understood. So that the presence of these dealers is known more by the sound of their cries than from the actual words uttered by them. In so much as men of this class are seldom men of genius or even of intelligence they ought to have their cries regulated for them by a competent person instead of being allowed to control their own cries.

Summary of the Essay.

1. The cries of the hawkers of London, astonish a foreigner and frighten a country squire Sir Roger cannot sleep on their account during his first week in London. Will Honeycomb alone delights in them and prefers them to the sounds of larks and nightingales. Addison received from a person named Ralph Crotchet a letter to the following effect.

2. That he has thought out many schemes for enriching the Government and the country without burdening the subject—but the parliament has always rejected his proposals and looked upon him as crazy. Being at the time out of employment, he proposes that a Controller General of London Cries—presiding and regulating officer, much required for the regulation and discipline of the present disordered system of cries—be appointed and he be preferred to the office. His qualifications for it he states to be that he possesses

figure, was a source of annoyance to him throughout his life. He received the elements of his education at the village school. Afterwards he was sent to Athlone and Edgeworthstown, by the kindness of his uncle. He entered Trinity College, Dublin, in June 1745, as a sizar. Like Swift, Goldsmith was idle as an undergraduate. It is said that he gave a dance in his rooms in College, for which his tutor boxed his ears. He and Burke were contemporaries. Their friendship remained sincere throughout Goldsmith's life. Very early in life Goldsmith exhibited a passion for poetry. He used to write ballads, which he sold for 5s. a piece to the street-singers in Dublin; and it was his delight in the dusk of evening to steal out of College and listen to his own compositions being sung in the streets of that city. In February, 1749, Goldsmith took his B. A. degree. After graduating Goldsmith led a very unsteady life for sometime. His father died but his uncle, who had paid for his education, continued to treat him with a liberality that was sorely tried. He undertook a tutorship and flung it up in disgust. Then he resolved to go to America. His uncle found the money for his passage, which Goldsmith spent in Dublin, and did not go. Next he determined to go to England and study law. Again money was provided, and again spent. At last he elected to go to Edinburgh and study medicine. He went, and so bid farewell to his mother, and uncle and home for ever.

He arrived in Edinburgh in 1752. At the end of his second year he proceeded to Leyden, to study chemistry and anatomy. From thence he set out for a tour through Europe; his wardrobe consisting one clean shirt, and his sole means of subsistence, his flute. He travelled through Germany, France, Switzerland and Italy. At Geneva he first conceived the idea of a tour described in poetry, which was afterwards worked out in his beautiful poem, "The Traveller." At Padua he resided for six months, and it is believed that he there received the degree of M. D. In 1756 he returned from the continent and arrived in London. He acted as tutor in a school at Peckham for a short time, and then became assistant to an apothecary in Monument Yard, Fish Street Hill.

Shortly afterwards he set up as a physician in Southwark, and also became reader in the office of the famous Richardson, author of "Clarissa Harlowe," though attending in his medical capacity a printer in Richardson's printing office. From that period Goldsmith's literary career dates. In 1759 Goldsmith commenced the series of light essays entitled "The Bee." "The Bee" did not make money for him, it expired in 8 weeks. In his leisure hours Goldsmith was engaged in writing "The citizen of the world," a series of letters

supposed to be written by a Chinese visiting England. About this time also Goldsmith made the acquaintance of Bishop Percy, Smollett and Dr Johnson. In 1765, the Traveller was published, and in 1768 appeared Goldsmith's first dramatic work—"The Good-Natured Man." In 1773 Goldsmith made his great dramatic success in the production of "She Stoops to Conquer." In 1770 was published "the Deserted Village," the most famous poem that ever flowed from Goldsmith's pen

Goldsmith died in April 1774. He was buried in the graveyard of the Temple church, universally beloved and universally lamented. The monument to him in Poet's corner bears an inscription from the pen of Dr Johnson, which says, "He left scarcely any style of writing untouched, and touched nothing that he did not adorn; of all the passions (whether smiles were to be moved or tears) a powerful yet gentle master; in genius sublime, vivid, versatile; in style, elevated, clear, elegant. The love of companions, the fidelity of friends, and the veneration of readers, have by this monument honoured the memory."

ESSAY XVI.

WESTMINSTER ABBEY—Oliver Goldsmith.

[This essay is taken from the "*Citizen of the World*"—a series of letters purporting to be written by a Chinaman visiting England]

Page 71.

Para. 1. Sepulture—burial.

For England—means, for the great men of England generally, irrespective of their calling or vocation.

Gloom—Lit melancholy or depression of spirits—but here the better meaning would be feeling of regret.

Monumental inscriptions—writings on monuments erected in memory of the greatness of deceased persons.

Remains—relics.

Marked antiquity—bearing on it the traces, signs or indications of old age.

Solemn—affecting with seriousness; adopted to impress seriousness.

Solemn...awe—as much calculated to impress one with seriousness as religion inspires one with awe.

Magnificence—grandness.

Barbarous profusion—the profuse artistic workmanship which was usual among semi-civilized peoples. Cf. *Milton*—.

“Or where the gorgeous East with richest hand
Showers on her kings barbaric pearl and gold.

Dim windows—small windows, so as not to let in much light. The awe of religion is enhanced by the dimness of the light inside the temple.

Fretted—ornamented by small fillets intresecting each other at right angles—(another meaning of fretted is worn away, eaten away).

Colonnades—series or ranges of columns placed at regular intervals.

Sensations—feelings.

Introduced to—brought face to face with.

The temple—i. e., Westminster Abbey. **Threw**—cast.

Explanation of paragraph 1.

I have just come back from Westminster Abbey, (see p. 77, last para.) the place of burial for the greatmen of England. The inscriptions on the monuments of deceased greatmen and their relics inspire us with a sort of melancholy and regret;—melancholy because we are in the presence of the dead, and regret because we see before us the remains of a greatness which has passed away. Just imagine a temple stamped with all the indications of old age, especially in the barbarous profusion of its architectural embellishments and try and analyse your feelings when the image is vividly before your mind's eye. You will then be able to realize to some extent what my feelings were when I was inside the Abbey. When inside I stood so to speak in an ancient temple which was full with the monuments of the dead and whose walls were fitted with statues and covered with inscriptions.

Para. 2. Attend—follow; accompany.

How does.... grave—How vain man is! Man the insignificant creature of clay is not satisfied with displaying his vanity through his ephemeral existence; his vanity continues even after his death and is exhibited in the frail memorials with which he attempts to immortalise himself.

Puny—insignificant.

Child of dust—i. e., man, cf. “Dust thou art to dust returnest.”

How does...grave—pride accompanies man even to the moment of his death for he desires, even after his death, that the memory of his achievements should be kept alive by means of monuments and inscriptions recounting them.

I possess—I am of. Consequence—importance ; worth.

I possess more consequence—I am of more importance because I am still alive.

Present scence—i. e., the Abbey.

Page 72.

Toiled—worked hard ; laboured—to achieve greatness and thus to gain, &c.

Transient immortality—in reality, merely passing fame but, which, at the time, seemed to have earned immortality for the hero.

They have..... immortality—they have laboured hard during their lifetime to have their names remembered by posterity—to win themselves an undying name by means of monuments and epitaphs but which, after all, as perishable material things, are, in the due course of time, destined to crumble away. They may, however, continue to stand for centuries, but even centuries are as bubbles in the vast sea of eternity. Hence in this sense their so-called and so much hoped for immortality is only short-lived.

Attendant—waiter—of whom they had many whilst living.

Where.....worm—where they are no longer (as during their lifetime) served by a retinue of servants, but where their bodies are eaten by worms when in a state of decomposition.

Explanation of paragraph 2.

When I saw all the monuments and inscriptions inside the Abbey, I remarked to myself that pride follows insignificant man even to the moment of his death, for he desires his achievements to be recounted in inscriptions and his greatness to be indicated by monuments. But of what consequence is all this? Even I, humble as I am, am of more importance in the Abbey than any hero whose memory is kept alive by monument and inscription, for I am alive and can act whilst he is dead and gone. He toiled whilst he lived to gain a fame which lasted for a time, but was not, indeed could not be permanent, for after death he was laid in his grave and thought less and less about, until his only attendant became the worm and his only flatterer his epitaph, which spoke of his deeds.

Para. 3. Indulging—engaging myself with.

Perceiving—noticing. To perceive is to bring to bear on mere sensation, such as sight or feeling the results of past experience and knowledge, and by means of the combination of these two to arrive at a conclusion.

Temple—the Abbey. [Note—The writer being a Chinaman familiar with Buddhist *temples*, speaks of the Abbey as a Temple].

Particularly excite—especially arouse. Curiosity—interest.

Demands—interest ; curiosity. Was come—had gone to the Abbey.

Conferring—bestowing. Rewards—marks of acknowledgment of their greatness.

Adulation—flattery. Conducted—bestowed ; shown—i. e, shown only to deserving people and not indiscriminately or as the result of favouritism

As it can—just as it cannot.

To those.. it—i. e, to the living.

Monumental pride—pride which shows itself in the erection of monuments.

It is individual—It is a weakness of human nature which causes particular individuals to desire their life's deeds to be commemorated by monuments—but governments can make use of this weakness of human nature, for, by erecting monuments to the memory of deserving persons only, it can on the one hand humour the weakness of particular individuals whilst on the other it will offer an inducement to other living men to emulate the deeds of the deceased.

Awful—awe-inspiring—because it is the sepulchre of “the great.”

In this repository—in this solemn place where the earthly remains of the great are laid up with care for safe keeping.

Will give.....morality—will teach men in the most effective way that they ought to lead noble lives so as to entitle themselves to the distinction of being honourably buried in this earth after their noble careers on earth are over.

Impatient—uneasy ; not in agreement with. Observations—remarks.

Explanation of paragraph 3.

Whilst I was thinking in this strain, a gentleman dressed in clothes of a black colour, thinking me to be a stranger, came up to

me, and speaking in polite language to me offered to show me and to explain to me the sights of the Abbey. He told me that should I be particularly interested in any monument, he would enlighten me as to its history. Human nature is subject to the weakness of desiring fame after death, and if the government would take advantage of this weakness it could incite men to noble deeds.

Para. 4. Naturally—instinctively. Finest—most beautiful, most attractive.

Objects—things. Curious—inquisitive.

Page 73.

Particular excellence—special beauty.

Magnificence—grandness Design—mental conception.

Trophy—memorial of victory or success ; sign of conquest.

Lawgiver—legislator Anarchy—a state of existence in which Law is powerless and order is absent

Just—proper ; that which ought to be. Subjection—i. e., to law. Requisite—necessary.

Qualifications—personal qualities which themselves recommend.

More humble—less pretentious. What—this introduces a question.

Gaining—winning. Score—twenty is a score.

Thought—considered ; regarded Seeing—witnessing, i. e., being present at—hence taking part in.

Wit—genius—mental qualities. Immortality—fame.

Peevishly—petulantly ; discontentedly. Particularly—especially.

Remarkable—worthy of notice ; famous.

Very...Westminster—Is remarkable only for the fact that he has somehow managed to secure room for his tomb in Westminster Abbey. He has done nothing for which he could have had this honour paid to his memory.

Head of my ancestors—The Chinese are given to ancestor worship, and this therefore with them would be a form of oath.

Got—profited by.

Page 74.

Singular—alone.

Explanation of paragraph 4.

The finest objects catch the eye before others, therefore I could not but be attracted by a monument which seemed more beautiful than the rest. The excellence of the workmanship of that monument pointed it out to be the tomb of some very great man. My guide told me that the monument I admired so much was not the tomb of any great man, warrior, statesman or poet, but of one who had paid during his lifetime for the erection of a monument to him after death.

Para. 5. Particular—special.

[The remarks in this para will be intelligible only if the student bears in mind that the speaker is a Chinaman].

Set—class. Answerers of books—critics, for whom, as an author, Goldsmith had little love.

Take upon themselves—make it their duty.

To watch the republic of letters—to keep themselves acquainted with the works of men who devote themselves to literature and to criticise these works so as to inform the public beforehand of what they may expect of any given publication.

Reputation—i. e., through their criticism.

Candour—straight-forwardness ; impartiality.

And . . injure—It seems to be a way with critics to attack the moral character of an author whom they wish to disparage, but whose literary work they cannot depreciate, because of its already having secured the public approval and appreciation.

Wretches—because of their practices, above detailed.

As—since.

- Page 75.

Malice—enmity, caused by ill-will.

Solid anxiety—actual anxiety owing to his writings being depreciated by the press critics.

Explanation of paragraph 5.

My guide pointed out to me the poet's corner and showed me the monuments of Shakespeare, Milton, Prior and Drayton. The man in black who was acting as my guide informed me of the ways of English critics—how for mere money they praised or depreciated the works of really great men. The publishers are not entirely free

from blame for they instigate the critics to act thus by offering them bribes.

Para. 6. Every ..them—a vulgar expression—means every one of them.

A mandarin—a high officer under the Chinese government—usually the governor of a province—a mandarin is generally exceedingly rich. Be born a mandarin—therefore means “be born rich.”

Book answerers—critics.

Explanation of paragraph 6.

All poets and other literary men in England are subject to the attack of professional critics unless of course they happen to be born rich in which case they can purchase the good opinion of the critics and thus from the very beginning acquire a reputation. In the same way the guardians of the Abbey can be induced, for money, to erect a monument to any person who can pay for it.

Para. 7. Distinguished—cultured ; refined. Patronise—assist ; help.

Soften dulness—thus lessen the bitterness which is caused by the unfavourable criticism of professional critics which proceeds at once from their dulness and their ill-will.

Explanation of paragraph 7.

Are there not in England, as there are in China, some men of refined and cultured taste who assist literary men and thus counteract the effect of adverse criticism proceeding from professional critics, who are generally dull and are further actuated by ill-will towards authors ?

Para. 8. I own—I acknowledge. But, alas ! Sir—but Sir, I regret to say.

Book answerers—critics.

Crowd about them—gather round them and flatter them.

Indolent—sluggish ; easy-going.

Distinguishing—i. e., differentiate between an author and a mere critic

Eat up—monopolise. Mandarin's—the rich patron's.

Explanation of paragraph 8.

I admit that there are many such people in England, but the evil of it is that the critics gather round them and flatter them and

represent themselves not as mere critics but as authors—and the rich patron is too easy-going to trouble himself to differentiate between the two classes. The result is that the more bashful poet is kept at a distance whilst the bolder critic reaps all the rewards which the patron has to give.

Para. 9. Made up to—went towards. Marched up—walked up.
Ceremony—formality. **Surprised**—astonished.

Show—a spectacle or sight offered to view for money.

Paltry—trifling

National reproach—something that brought disgrace and contempt on the nation as a whole.

Whether . nation—whether it would not be more to the nation's honour or prestige.

Magnificence—grandeur indicative of greatness.

Antiquities—indicative of the age of the nation.

Meanly—in a niggardly spirit. **Tax**—charge with a burden.

Curiosity—inquisitiveness. **Tended to**—was calculated to enhance or increase.

Honour—prestige ; fame ; reputation.

Page 76.

Farm it—lease it on rent. In English law 'farm' and 'lease' are the operative words in a lease.

Explanation of paragraph 9.

We left the poets corner and made for that part of the Abbey where there were the monuments of the kings. As we were going we were stopped by a man at a gate who demanded threepence before he would admit me. I was greatly astonished at this demand and asked the man whether the English nation made a show of the Abbey. I told him that it would greatly enhance the prestige and honour of the nation if they allowed foreigners and strangers to view their magnificence and their antiquities without a charge than to tax with so mean a charge, a curiosity which was calculated to enhance their national honour. The man replied that my views may be very correct but that he did not understand them, whilst on the other hand, he and several others lived on what he took at the gate for he farmed the office from another man who in his turn rented it from another who again hired it from a third which third person leased it from the guardians of the Abbey.

Para. 10. Extraordinary—very uncommon. For nothing—without payment.

Surprise—wonder. Tattered—torn into shreds Standards—ensigns; flags.

Slovenly—badly made. Figures—forms of human beings.

A person, &c.—the guide. (See Essay XI)

Blushing—colouring in the face to show that he was ashamed of what he was saying.

He talked ofabsurdity—See notes on para 8, p. 46. Essay XI.

Curiosity—something so rare as to arouse one's curiosity.

In that pillow—See notes on para. 9. Essay XI.

Curious—strange; worth noticing. Sight—spectacle.

Explanation of paragraph 10.

Having paid what was demanded of me I naturally expected to see something better than the sights for which I had paid nothing but which nevertheless had given me occasion for wonder. But in this hope I was disappointed for I saw nothing but black coffins, rusty armour and torn flags and a few badly made wax figures. I was sorry I had paid and gone in but I found some comfort in the reflection that it would be the last payment I should make. A person attended us who told a hundred lies without even blushing. He spoke of a lady who died through pricking her finger and of a king who had a golden head and of such like ridiculous things. At last coming up to an old oak chair he described it as a curiosity for on that chair he said the kings of England had been crowned. He also pointed to a stone beneath the chair and said that it was Jacob's pillow. I could see no *curiosity* either in the chair or in the stone—it would have been otherwise indeed had I seen one of the ancient English Kings seated on the chair or Jacob himself lying with the stone under his head. As the matter stood I could see no more reason for making a curiosity either any more than making any piece of stone one can pick upon the road a curiosity.

Para. 11. Conductor—guide. Led—conducted; directed our way.

Flourishing—waving about in a fantastic manner.

Wand—a rod or stick.

Page 77.

Black magicians—those who practise the Black art or magic. Japan is supposed to be a land of magicians.

For my trouble—for the pains I take in showing people round. Cf. remark on p. 76 “but I comforted myself that it would be my last payment”

Squeeze thus—press money out in this manner.

Ecclesiastical beggars—polite beggars like clergyman who are always begging in a polite way for purposes of the church.

Precipitately—in a great hurry.

Ruminate over—reflect over ; go over in my mind.

Analysis of the Essay.

1. Westminster Abbey is the place of sepulchre for the philosophers, heroes, and the kings of England. Monumental inscriptions and all the remains of deceased merit inspire one with gloom.

2. Pride attends the puny child of dust even to the grave. Men toil for an hour to gain a transient immortality, then they die and are buried, and when in the tomb they have no attendant but the worm, none to flatter but the epitaph.

3. A gentleman in black, perceiving that I was a stranger, offered to be my guide and to inform me on such matters as I desired information. I accepted with thanks the gentleman's offer. I told him that I had gone to the Abbey to observe the policy, the wisdom, and the justice of the English in conferring reward upon deceased merit. If adulation like that displayed at the Abbey be properly conducted just as it will in no way injure those who are flattered since they are dead, so it may be a glorious incentive to those who are living.

4. My companion informed me that in the Abbey it is not only the really great and deserving who have monuments erected to their memory but also any one who could pay for it.

5. My friend and I next went to the Poets' Corner. We saw the monuments of Shakespeare, of Milton, of Prior, of Drayton and of Pope. It is the business of professional critics to depreciate the works of all men of letters. Every poet of any genius is sure to find such enemies, to be to him a source of solid anxiety.

6. Only a man of letters who happens to be born rich and can buy off these critics is free from their attacks, and if he has any merit can show it from the very first.

7 and 8. There are in England as in China rich men who are ready and willing to patronise men of letters but in England they are surrounded by the bolder race of critics, and being too lazy to discriminate between the two classes—the poets and the critics—the poets are kept at a distance and the critics reap all the rewards

9. From the Poets' Corner we proceeded to the part of the Abbey where there were the monuments of the kings. As we were about to enter that particular part of the building we were met by a man at a gate who demanded an entrance fee. I paid the fee after remonstrating with him and telling him that the demand of such a paltry sum was a national reproach—that it would be more to the honour of the country to let their magnificence or their antiquities be openly seen, than meanly to tax a curiosity which tended to their own honour.

10. We saw nothing of much interest in that part of the building except a few black coffins, rusty armour, tattered standards, and some few slovenly wax figures. We were here joined by a man who was a *guide* and who told a hum. d. lies without blushing.

11 and 12. When our walk through the Abbey was about to be concluded the guide showed me General Monk's cap and said it was all the wages he had for all his trouble—and further remarked that every gentleman put something into it. I took the hint, declined to pay anything and came home as fast as I could—there to ruminate on the happenings of the day.

ESSAY XVII

THE MAN IN BLACK—Oliver Goldsmith.

[This essay is taken from *the Citizen of the World*, a series of letters supposed to be written by a Chinaman travelling in England to his friend at home

Page 78.

Para. 1. Desire—wish for. Mentioned—spoken of. Acquire—cultivate.

Esteem—regard. Manners—ways. Tinctured—coloured; affected

Strange inconsistencies—eccentricities ; peculiar contradictions.

Humorists—eccentric people. [The Chinaman cannot properly understand the ways of the English and he looks upon their national peculiarities, which necessarily differ much from his own, as eccentricities]

Profusion—excess. **Affects**—affects a manner, so that he may be thought, &c.

Prodigy—a marvel ; something out of the common.

Parsimony—sparingness in the expenditure of money.

Prudence—discretion ; circumspection ; judgment.

Be replete with—be full of. **Sordid**—mean.

Maxims—principles of action ; rules of life. **Dilated**—lit. expanded ; filled.

Unbounded—unrestricted ; unlimited. **Profess**—declare.

Compassion—pity. **Softened**—melted. **Ill-nature**—malicious disposition.

[Note—Here are detailed some of the strange inconsistencies which tincture the manners of the Man in Black.]

Affect—put on a show of ; pretend to be.

Humanity—lit. the kind feelings, dispositions, and sympathies of man by which he is distinguished from the lower order of animals—hence kindness, benevolence.

From nature—by nature. **Pains**—trouble.

His feelings—his generous or benevolent feelings.

Hypocrite—one who pretends to be what he is not ; a dissembler ; one who assumes a false appearance.

Conceal—hide from public notice or observation.

Indifference—i. e., to mankind—hence, his want of generous feelings.

Mask—attempt at disguising his real feelings.

Drops off—lit. falls off—here, fails him. **Reveals**—shows him ; discloses his real nature.

Superficial—cursory.

Explanation of paragraph 1.

Although I am fond of having many acquaintances I go the length of being intimate with a few men only. The Man in Black whom I have before spoken of is a person whose intimacy I would wish to cultivate because that man possesses my esteem. It is true that his manners show some strange contradictions, but these are mere eccentricities, and in no way detract from his worth. For instance, though excessively generous by nature he pretends to be just the contrary, extremely parsimonious and prudent, and for the purpose of being thought so adopts in his conversation with others the most mean and selfish maxims as his rules of life. I myself have heard him speak thus, whilst his looks betrayed feelings of quite the opposite-kind. This man is the only person I have known who has been, so to speak, ashamed of his naturally benevolent disposition, all other persons pretend to be generous and benevolent, though actually they may not be so by nature. Though he takes as much trouble to conceal his natural benevolence of disposition as hypocrites do to put it on, occasionally the attempt fails and he is disclosed in his true colours

Para. 2. Late—recent. Excursions—journeys. Discourse—converse.

Provision—public arrangements for the maintenance and relief of the poor.

Amazed—astonished. Foolishly weak—ridiculously soft-hearted.

Occasional objects of charity—beggars casually met in the streets.

Page 80.

Ample—sufficient ; complete.

Discontented—dissatisfied.

In not taking up—in not dealing with according to Law.

Parish house—poor-house of a Parish. A Parish is a local subdivision in England corresponding to the municipal wards in India.

Vagrants—wandering beggars. Weight—burden. Industrious—people who work.

I am....vagrants—In England begging from street to street or from door to door is prohibited by law, and a person found so begging, is liable, on conviction before a police court magistrate, to be sentenced to undergo a term of imprisonment.

The people are . . . them—i. e., that there are persons who are willing to assist such vagrants.

Sensible—aware. In some measure—to some extent or degree.

Imposture—deception; fraud; cheating. Caution him—warn him.

Imposed upon by—cheated or deceived by; taken in by. Merit—deserve.

Explanation of paragraph 2.

On one of our journeys into the country our conversation turned upon the subject of poor relief. My friend seemed astonished to find how any of his countrymen could be so ridiculously soft-hearted as to give alms to wandering beggars when the nation had made such ample provision for the deserving poor in the Parish Work-houses. He went on to say that he really was surprised to find that police magistrates were so far inactive as not to take to task these vagrants who, at the very least, were a burden on the industrious members of society. He was surprised to find that there were men who were ready to come forward to assist such beggars, knowing full well that their generosity was misdirected, inasmuch as it encouraged idleness, extravagance and fraud. My friend said that his advice to all for whom he had the slightest regard would be not to be deceived by these impostors and their false pretences for they merited prison rather than relief.

Para. 3. Proceeding in this strain—talking in the above manner. Earnestly—with a view earnestly, &c.

Dissuade—persuade from. Imprudence—want of circumspection.

Who...him—who was still wearing. Remnants—remains; relics.

Tattered finery—worn out clothes which had, at some previous time, been of good quality.

Implored our compassion—begged for our pity and mercy. Common—ordinary.

Forced—compelled. Into—to resort to. Shameful—disgraceful.

Support—maintain. Prepossessed—predisposed; prejudiced.

Influence—effect—i. e., did not move me in the very least. Otherwise—different.

See—notice. It—the beggar's appeal. Visibly—perceptibly.

Operate upon—affect—*i. e.*, the impression made upon the Man in Black by the beggar's appeal was mirrored on his countenance—the saying is that “the face is the index to the heart.”

Countenance—the expression of the face for the time being. **Harangue**—appeal.

Burned—was very eager ; ached. **Relieve**—relieve the suffering of.

Discover—disclose. **Weakness**—his failing, *viz.*, generosity, humanity or feeling for others.

Hesitating—halting—undecided between, &c.

A piece of silver—a silver coin. **Bidding**—commanding.

Page 81.

In order that—so that. **Tease**—molest. **Passengers**—passers-by.

Impertinent—insolent by being palpably false.

Explanation of paragraph 3.

My friend was talking on in the above fashion when an old man, wearing some worn out clothes which had at one time been of very good quality, addressed us and begged our pity and mercy. His story was that he was no ordinary vagrant but a man forced to beg to support a dying wife and five hungry children. Repeatedly hearing falsehoods from persons begging I had become prejudiced against the class of beggars as a whole, and so I paid no attention to the man's appeal, but I noticed that my friend's generous nature was affected, for he showed his feelings in his face. I perceived readily that my friend yearned to assist the five hungry children but he was ashamed to give the man anything lest he should disclose the generosity of his disposition to me after having said so much against giving alms to wandering beggars. Whilst my friend was hesitating as to what to do, his compassion impelling him to give alms, his pride counselling him against doing so, I pretended to look another way so as not to see what he did. Immediately, my friend gave the man a silver coin, at the same time telling him, so that I might hear it, to go and work for his bread and not molest passers-by with such palpable falsehoods.

Para. 4. **Fancied**—imagined. **Himself**—*i. e.*, his action in giving alms.

Unperceived—unnoticed (by me). **To rail against**—to utter reproaches on ; to scoff at.

Animosity—ill-feeling. **Threw in**—related in passing.

Episodes—passing incidents. **Amazing**—astonishing ; wonderful.

Profound—great. **Discovering**—finding out **Manner**—fashion.

A sailor—a man who had been a sailor.

With a wooden leg—whose leg had been amputated and a wooden leg fixed on to the stump to take the place of the portion removed.

Once more—because the old man who “had about him the remnants of tattered finery” had before interrupted them.

Crossed our walks—interrupted us—because when you cross another's path you place yourself between the walker and the road beyond and so stop his progress further.

Desiring—asking for **Blessing our limbs**—calling a blessing down on our limbs i. e., that they may not be injured like his limb was

Wistfully—earnestly. **Ease**—facility. **Impostor**—one who assumes a character for the purpose of deceiving.

Explanation of paragraph 4.

My friend believing that his act in giving the silver coin to the old man had been unnoticed by me, continued to cry down the practices of beggars with as much vehemence and seeming ill-feeling as he had done previously. He varied the generality of his remarks by narrating some incidents which showed his own wonderful prudence and economy, and his great skill in detecting impostors ; he told me how he would deal with beggars were he a magistrate—viz., that he would send a much larger number of vagrants to prison than were actually sent, and that therefore, the prisons would require enlarging for their reception. He also told two stories of ladies who had been robbed by beggars. He was about to tell a third story to the same purpose when a man who had been a sailor and had a wooden leg came up to us, desiring our pity and blessing our limbs. I suggested that we should go on without paying any attention to the man's appeal, but my friend glanced eagerly at the poor man and asked me to stop, so that he might show me how easily he could detect any attempt to deceive on the part of a beggar.

Para. 5. Assumed—put on. **Importance**—authority. **Examine**—i. e., by questioning.

Engagement—battle—(not war, because a war may consist of many battles).

Disabled—rendered not able—i e., maimed Service—work.

Private ship of war—privateer, or an armed private vessel; a private vessel fitted up as a man of war, and commissioned by the government to seize and plunder the ships of the enemy.

Those who . . . home—the idlers among his countrymen.

All my friend's importance—all that look of importance assumed by my friend.

What method . . . take—what means he would adopt; how he should accomplish his purpose.

Unobserved—unnoticed by me.

Obliged—constrained. Preserve—maintain; keep up. Nature—disposition.

Before me—in my presence.

Page 82.

Relieve himself . . . sailor—there are some philosophers, (e g, *Hobbes*) who maintain that benevolence is not a natural impulse implanted in us for the good of others, but that it is a form of self-love; we are benevolent not because we wish primarily to benefit the object of our benevolence but because we wish to rid ourselves of the pain-giving feelings which objects of compassion excite in us: Bishop Butler strongly contends for the opposite view.

Casting—throwing. Furious—angry. Chips—small fragments of wood.

Surly—sour; snarling; cross and rude. Seemed—appeared.

Demand—order. Into the bargain—as well—i e., as well as the matches—because the Man in Black asked for only a shilling's worth of matches, not his blessing also.

Explanation of paragraph 5.

Having told me that he would show me how easily he could detect imposture, my friend assumed a commanding look and in an angry voice asked the sailor to name the battle in which he had been disabled for further service. The sailor in an equally angry tone replied that he had been an officer on a private man of war and had lost his leg in foreign parts in defending people, who were idle in England. As soon as he had got this reply my friend's commanding air disappeared, and I could notice that he was only thinking of how he could help the poor man without disclosing his real intention to me. Not wishing me to know what his real

intention was, and yet being unable, on account of his own painful feelings to refrain from helping the poor man, he certainly had a very difficult part to perform and was constrained, being in my presence, to maintain his show of ill-nature. He therefore cast an angry look on a bundle of chips which the man was carrying and demanded of him a shilling's worth of matches. The poor fellow was much astonished at this after my friend's manner towards him, and taking the whole bundle gave it to him adding his blessing in the bargain.

Para. 6. Air of triumph—as if he had won a great success or victory

Marched off—walked away. Expatiated—enlarged—spoke much in favour of the idea.

Thrusting—putting the end into the fire for the purpose of lighting the candle.

Averred—declared. As soon—as readily—hence not at all easily.

Vagabonds—worthlessmen. Consideration—return. (*Valuable consideration* is a legal term and means the giving of something for something else given).

Panegyric—eulogium; speech in favour of. Called off—attracted; drawn away from the former subject.

More distressful—causing more distress or mental pain to the observer.

Ballads—short, popular songs. Mournful—sorrowful.

Determine—decide. Wretch—wretched, miserable person. Deepest—greatest. Distress—trouble.

Still . humour—i. e., by singing popular ditties. His very—his characteristic.

Dissimulation—counterfeiting; pretending.

Page 83.

Forsaken—abandoned. Objects—i. e., objects of his pity.

Painted—depicted; mirrored; indicated. Visage—countenance; expression of the face.

Expressed—marked; prominent.

Recollecting himself—recovering himself. Ineffable—unspeakable; inexpressible.

Explanation of paragraph 6.

I cannot describe the triumphant way in which my friend walked away with what he had purchased, assuring me the while that he was convinced that those people who sell their goods for less than half of what these goods are worth must necessarily have stolen that which they sell. He then proceeded to tell me the different uses to which the wooden chips he had brought might be put, and especially what a saving it would effect by lighting candles with matches instead of from a fire which, by its heat, would melt much of the candle. Whilst this discourse on frugality and matches was going on, and I don't know how long it would have continued, a sight more pitiable than any which had met us before came within our view—it was that of a woman in rags carrying one babe in her arms and another on her back. My friend was moved by this sight, so much so, that he dropped even his habitual attempt at pretence in my presence and thrust his hand into his pocket. Realizing in the end that he had no more money left, he put into the woman's hand the bundle of chips which he had bought.

Summary.

1 I am fond of having many acquaintances but desire only few friends. The Man in Black is a man I esteem, and therefore I desire to cultivate his friendship. His manners certainly are marked by certain strange inconsistencies, as for instance, though of a very generous nature his conversation is replete with the most sordid and selfish maxims. Again, most people generally affect humanity and tenderness though they may possess neither of these characteristics, my friend however appears to be ashamed of his natural benevolence and takes as much pains to hide his real feelings as any hypocrite would to hide his natural indifference.

2. My friend, the Man in Black, is of opinion that private charity to wandering beggars ought to be discontinued as ample provision is made for them in the parish work-houses. He expressed his surprise at the inactivity of the magistrates in not taking to task a larger number of vagrants. Relieving vagrants encouraged idleness, extravagance and imposture.

3. My friend's natural generosity of disposition displayed itself when an old man in torn clothes addressed us, begging alms to relieve the distress of his dying wife and his five starving children. I looked for an instant in a different direction and my friend slipped a silver coin into his hand, telling him at the same time to work for his bread and not to annoy passers-by with his false stories.

4. The next incident was that we came across a man, who had been a sailor and who had a wooden leg. My friend purchased a bundle of wooden sticks from him for a shilling after having shown some dissatisfaction at the fact of his begging. These sticks were nowhere worth a shilling. It was my friend's way to benefit another under disguise.

5. We next met a woman in rags, carrying a babe in her arms and another on her back. The sight of this woman was so distressing that my friend, on this occasion, threw aside his very dissimulation, and having no money left, gave her the bundle of chips he had purchased.

ESSAY XVIII.

LONDON TRADESMEN—Oliver Goldsmith.

[This essay is also taken from the *Citizen of the World*"]

Para. 1. **Furnished**—adorned; ornamented. **Passengers**—passers-by.

Pekin—the capital of the Chinese Empire.

A picture . . . door—this is what is called the "Sign" of the shop. Macaulay writes:—"The shops were therefore distinguished by painted or sculptured signs which gave a gay and grotesque aspect to the streets."

Board—like the sign—board of an English shop.

Assure—strengthen the assertion. **Intent**—intention.

[Note.—This paragraph hits off, in a humorous way, the cheating and thieving propensity of Chinamen. In a musical play recently performed on the London stage, entitled "*San Toy*," "*Li*" a character in the play, no sooner he sees a bottle of eau-de-cologne, hides it in the ample folds of the wide sleeve of his cloak. This was another humorous attempt to hit off the principal weakness of the Chinese national character—a weakness, no doubt forced upon the people, by the conditions of the irresponsible government to which they have all along been subjected].

Explanation of paragraph 1.

The shops in London are as well decorated as are the shops in Pekin, but whilst those in Pekin have a board suspended in front of the main entrance to satisfy intending purchasers that if they purchase their goods there they will not be cheated, those in London

have a picture suspended in front of their doors indicating what kind of goods they have for sale inside.

Nightcap—a cap worn at night in bed.

Para. 2. Mercer—is a silk merchant—one who deals, *inter alia*, in silk goods.

Master—owner; proprietor Wig—an artificial covering of hair for the head, formerly worn as a fashionable means of decoration. Men—assistants. Plastered with—thickly covered with

To ask my command—to know what I required. Flew—ran quickly. Civillest—most polite and obliging. Cast—directed.

Pieces—not portions or parts but the whole lengths of fabrics in which form they are sold.

Explanation of paragraph 2.

I went out this morning to buy silk for a nightcap. Directly I entered the silk merchant's shop, the proprietor of the shop and two of his assistants, men who were wearing wigs thickly covered with powder, came forward to ask me what I required. These men were certainly the most polite and obliging men imaginable, for I had but to look in a certain direction and this was sufficient to send them with all speed thither to bring for my inspection whatever I might ask for. I told them at the outset that whatever I should want, I desired it to be of very good quality, and knowing that I wanted silk for a night-cap, they showed me no less than 40 pieces of silks, each piece better than the one I had seen before; but the amusing part was this, that the shopmen described each piece, the best as well as the worst of the pieces they showed me, as being of the *prettiest* pattern in nature and the *fittest* in the world for night-caps.

Page 84.

Para. 3. Me—because I am a Chinamen and come from a silk producing country.

Instruct me—teach me anything about the quality of. Flimsy—thin; of loose texture Bungees—a kind of inferior silk This word is a corrupted form of Bengal, which is explained by Webster as—“A thin stuff made from silk and hair, originally brought from Bengal.”

Had never .. life—This is again a happy touch. Though contradiction is generally speaking not approved of in society in all countries, the Chinese are particularly punctilious about it.

My Lady Trail—some fashionable lady of the time.

Sack—a loose body garment, a kind of cloak, worn both by women and by men.

I see no necessity—I do not see the reason why. **Wear it for**—make a night-cap out of it.

Becomes—suits **Compliment**—expression of civility or respect.

Thrown in—uttered in an incidental way; uttered as a passing remark.

Seasonably—at the proper time; opportunely. **Cut ..night-cap**—cut me off sufficient for a night-cap

Explanation of paragraph 3.

As the mercer was speaking in high terms of his silks, I told him that he might spare himself the trouble for I being a Chinaman, he could not very well teach me anything concerning the quality of silks. I told him further that the particular piece, which he was then praising, was no better than the usual run of flimsy bungees. The mercer, whom I discovered had never contradicted anyone in his life, said that it was possible that my remark was correct, but all the same, Lady Trail had, that very morning, bought from that piece enough silk to make a sack-backed cloak. I told him in reply that because Lady Trail had bought some of the silk for a cloak, it did not follow that I should wear the same material as a night-cap. Not contradicting me again, the mercer simply remarked complimentingly that what suited a pretty lady also would suit a handsome man. This compliment was so well timed considering how much uglier my face (which was in fact ugly,) must have been than the face of Lady Trail, that though I did not like the particular silk, I ordered him to cut me off a piece sufficient to make a night-cap.

Para. 4. This business—i. e., of cutting off the length I required. **Journeymen**—an assistant working by the day. Under the old apprentice system of business those men who worked by the day, retiring to their own homes at night and being paid at a certain rate of daily wages were termed journeymen—as distinguished from the apprentices who resided with the master, were taught a handicraft but received no wages.

Spreading—spreading out—unrolling. **There's beauty**—here is some material of a beautiful pattern.

Bespoke—ordered beforehand—ordered in anticipation lest it should be sold out.

The fellow to this—the other piece of silk of this pattern. **Come dear**—become more expensive. Price depends upon demand and

supply, when the demand is great prices rise, when the demand slackens, prices fall off.

Cheapside—a business quarter in the 'city' of London. Cheapside is crowded with firms of trades people, wholesale and retail.

Always buy before you want—This is a suggestion thoroughly characteristic of a shop-keeper whose only concern is to sell his goods. The correct thing would of course be not to buy anything before it is wanted.

These remark—what the mercer said was so true.

Explanation of paragraph 4.

The work of cutting off the length of silk I had ordered for a night-cap was assigned to an assistant. In the meanwhile, the proprietor took down some pieces of a silk of quality and pattern better than any he had shown me before, and spreading them out before me drew my attention to one piece in particular as especially suited for waistcoats. He added that Lord Snakeskin had bespoken the fellow piece to it that very morning for a birth-day coat for himself. I told the proprietor that I did not want a waistcoat, but he replied that it would be better to buy the silk now and keep it till I should want a waistcoat for when I did want a waistcoat, silk would be more expensive. This argument was so reasonable and so true that I was persuaded to buy the silk, and the silk moreover being really good, I ordered him to give me a piece enough for a waistcoat.

Page 85.

Para. 5. Bargains—the goods I had bought. **Cut**—i. e., cut off from the piece.

Which I . . . how—which I cannot make out why—the object seems to have been to delay the customer's going away soon, and thereby tempt him into making more purchases.

Executed—performed; carried out. **With the modern manner**—after the fashion now in vogue with.

Reckoned—counted; regarded as.

Nobility—the higher classes in the country.

Any under a Right Honourable—any one below the rank of noblemen, especially those who hold the highest offices of state.

Company—society; callers. **Mind**—desire; wish. **Reckoned**—thought; considered.

Rich—gorgeous; elegant, stylish; fashionable.

Fum—Fum Hoam, First President of the ceremonial academy at Peking, in China, to whom this letter is supposed to be addressed by the Chinese traveller in London.

Explanation of paragraph 5.

Whilst I was waiting to have the silks I had bought cut off from their respective pieces, a task which was executed, why, I know not, very slowly, the mercer entertained me in the same manner as some modern noblemen entertain their visitors in the morning. At length he remarked to me that perhaps I would like to see the kind of silk that was most generally worn by the better class of society. And without waiting for my reply he spread out before me a piece of silk which would have been considered beautiful even in China. The mercer then went on to say that if any representative of the nobility came to know that he sold this particular silk to any person below the rank of a Right Honourable, he would lose the patronage of the whole body of the aristocracy. He also drew my attention to the fact that the silk was at once gorgeous and elegant and just the thing which would be fashionable among the higher classes of society. I interrupted the man by telling him that I was not a "lord"—in reply he merely begged my pardon and told me to remember, when I should want a morning gown, that I had had from him an offer of a silk material of which was worth its price. He told me that his principle in doing business was honesty, and that he would not be honest if he did not show me now some good material for a morning gown which later on might become more expensive and at the same time less fashionable. In the end, my dear friend Fum, the mercer, persuaded me to buy the silk, and I believe he would have persuaded me to buy half the shop had I stayed long enough inside it and had sufficient money to pay for my purchases.

[Note.—Entertained.....gowns—The reference may be to the practice in Goldsmith's time of the aristocracy seeing their visitors in the morning, in their morning gowns and not fully dressed and then of conversing with them mostly on the subject of silks best suited for making morning gowns, &c.]

Para. 6. Upon--on. Could not help--could not refrain from. Astonishment--wonder.

Confined--limited. Capacity--intelligence. Turning me--influencing me; inducing me.

Moulding me--shaping me--i. e., compelling me to do that which he desired, whether I desired it or not.

Inclination—wish ; will. Answering—serving ; furthering.

Attempted to appear—pretended to be. Solicitous—desirous.

Page 86.

Voluntary—i. e., an infatuation which I willingly allowed myself to be overcome by.

Infatuation—A state of mind in which the intellectual powers are weakened, so that the person affected acts without his usual judgment, and contrary to the dictates of reason.

Compounded—made up of. Snare—trap. Pain—inconvenience.

And put . . . pain—and subjected myself to the future pang of repentance for having wasted my money on things I did not stand in need of. (Economy has been pronounced as one of the cardinal virtues by Lao-tseu, a famous Chinese philosopher, who flourished about 600 years B. C.)

Compounded . . . good nature—the meaning is that his voluntary infatuation was the outcome of his own vanity added to his good nature.

In order . . . pleasure—in order to give the shop-keeper pleasure for the moment by purchasing his goods in compliance with his wishes.

Diffused in—extends to ; covers. Narrow sphere—limited number of matters.

The wisdom . . . success—the shrewdness or sagacity of an uneducated man is confined to a very limited circle of things, like the instinct of an animal. Both are actuated by that degree of shrewdness which is necessary for their self-preservation or the promotion of their own interest ; and as it is exercised in the very narrow sphere of their own immediate wants, it becomes very keen, steady and vigorous in its operation ; but a sagacity of this form and degree can, on no account, be classed with the superior intelligence of a philosopher which is very widely operative. (In its application to this particular case the sentence means that though the uneducated mercer succeeded in duping the Chinese philosopher, yet on that account the wisdom of the former cannot be said to be greater than the wisdom of the latter.

Explanation of paragraph 6.

On returning home I could not refrain from reflecting, with some degree of astonishment, on how the mercer, a man with a very limited education and intelligence, could yet induce me to act exactly

as he wished me to. All the time I was in his shop, whilst he seemed to be so solicitous about my interests, I knew very well that he was trying *only* to further his own purpose—and yet the man succeeded in turning and moulding me to his inclinations. And why? because I had allowed myself to become infatuated—to get into a sort of passion. the result of the combination of my vanity and good nature. I, as it were, walked into the trap set for me by the mercer with my eyes open—and, knowingly I ordered things, the paying for which would take from me more money than I could conveniently afford and thus put me to inconvenience in the future, so that I might give the dealer pleasure for the time being. The wisdom of ignorant people is like the instinct of animals. It can be applied only to the objects which directly concern their own welfare, but within this restricted area it operates very vigorously and successfully and invariably manages to accomplish its purpose.

Summary.

1. The shops in London are as well furnished as the shops in Pekin and have picture hung outside the main entrance to indicate what kind of goods are sold inside.

2. I went to a mercer's shop to buy some silk for a night-cap. The proprietor and the assistants I found to be the civillest men going. I had merely to look in a particular direction and the men would fly there to get whatever I might wish to see. I was shown more than forty pieces of silks fit for night-caps. I at length selected a piece and ordered enough silk for a night-cap.

3. I was also shown other silks and at length prevailed upon to buy another piece for waistcoats. I did not then want a waistcoat, but the mercer told me that when I should want one, the silk would probably become more expensive.

4. As I was waiting for my parcels to be made up, an operation over which the assistants were, I know not why, very slow, I was entertained by the mercer himself. He showed me another piece of very beautiful silk and by means of his arguments induced me to buy it also.

5. On returning home with my purchases I reflected on how these ignorant men could mould us to their inclinations, simply because of our vanity and good nature, which induced us to suffer future pain for the sake of giving the trades people immediate pleasure. The wisdom of the ignorant is like the instinct of animals; it is diffused in but a very narrow sphere, but within that circle it acts with vigour, uniformity, and success.

ESSAY XIX.

ON THE INSTABILITY OF WORLDLY GRANDEUR.—
Oliver Goldsmith.

[Note.—This essay forms paper no. VI of the "Bee," a collection of essays written by Goldsmith for Mr. Wilkie, a bookseller and publisher].

Instability—inconstancy; fickleness.

Para. 1. Alehouse—a public beer-shop. **Islington**—now, a portion of North London, in Goldsmith's time it was not included within the bounds of London Proper, but was a village on the outskirts of the town.

Alehouse keeper—the proprietor of a beer-shop.

Long—for a long time. **The sign of the French King**—the board outside his beer-shop had on it the portrait of the French King, and so his establishment was called "the sign of the French King." **The French King** alluded to was Louis XIV.

Upon—on. Commencement—beginning.

The last war with France—the allusion is to the famous war of the Austrian succession (1741-48).

Pulled down—took down **Old**—his former. **Sign**—sign-board. **Put up**—posted up.

The Queen of Hungary—i. e., a sign-board with a portrait of the Queen of Hungary. This was Maria Theresa, daughter of Emperor Charles VI of Austria.

Influence—auspices. **Red**—ruddy; reddish. On the board her face was painted as having a ruddy tinge.

She was..... customers—she had ceased to be the idol of the populace.

Golden—of a golden colour, to indicate that it was made of gold. The portrait of the Queen on the sign-board represented her as holding a golden sceptre in her hand.

Vulgar—propular.

Queen of Hungary.....Prussia—see notes at the end of the text-book.

He changed.....Prussia—towards the close of the war of the Austrian succession and during the seven years' war the fame of Maria Theresa was eclipsed by that of Frederick the Great of Prussia. This accounts for the change effected by the ale house keeper in his sign.

Explanation of paragraph 1.

The proprietor of a beer-house near Islington, who for many years had posted up a sign-board with the French King's portrait on it, pulled it down on the commencement of our last war with France and instead, stuck up a sign-board with the portrait of the Queen of Hungary upon it. For some time he continued to do business with this sign-board as his advertisement, until, for political reasons the Queen of Hungary ceased to be a favourite with his customers. He then changed the portrait of the Queen of Hungary for that of the King of Prussia who had become the popular favourite and now does business with that popular hero as his sign. But just as in the past he has changed many heroes, so, when the tide of popularity turns away from the present object of popular admiration, the King of Prussia will in turn give way to some one else.

Para. 2. Publican—the keeper or proprietor of a public-house (public drinking shop). **In this**--in this matter.

Imitates--copies, follows the way of **Exactly**—very completely.
Deal out—exhibit.

Figures—their men of figure or mark ; their heroes. **Gazing**—gazing with admiration—hence, admiring.

Holds—maintains ; retains. **Station**--position in popular estimation. **Mob**—populace.

Explanation of paragraph 2.

In changing his sign, the Islington publican truly represents the process by which the great men of the world pass in and out of popular esteem, being for the time being one of their number marked out for popular admiration and wonder. Having been dangled before the public eye for a time sufficiently long to satisfy popular curiosity, one great man is dropped and another one set up in his place, who in turn is also dropped, for the mob are not satisfied for long with one hero—they are fond of variety and change.

Page 88.

Para. 3. Own—admit. **Indifferent**—unsatisfactory. **Led**—inclined ; induced.

To suspect—not to trust ; not to regard as deserving ; not to look upon as substantial.

Merit—worth ; worthiness ; greatness.

Raises—calls forth. **Shout**—applause. **Certain**—sure. **Satisfaction**—gratification.

Acclamations—popular applause. **Grown giddy**—became unbalanced.

Explanation of paragraph 3.

I admit that I have formed a very unfavourable opinion of the grounds on which the populace distribute their praise and blame, and consequently I view with some suspicion that worth or greatness which calls forth popular applause. Be this as it may, I am at least certain of this much that many great and good men, who have pandered to popular applause, have been made the worse by it. For history is full of the instances of men who to-day becoming giddy with the reception afforded them by the people to-morrow launch out on such acts as turn the popular admiration into popular hatred.

Para. 4. Alexander VI—see note at end of the text. **Evacuated**—i. e., after occupying it, the enemy had left it; quitted.

Townsmen—residents of the town. **Gibbet**—a machine in the form of a gallows on which notorious malefactors are hanged in chains, and on which their bodies are allowed to remain for some time.

Designed—fashioned. **Represent**—to stand for.

Effigy—image or likeness; any substance fashioned into the shape of a particular person.

Adulation—servile flattery. **Barefaced**—shameless; impudent. **Zeal**—ardour.

Small difference—i. e., in the popular estimation.

The small... statue—what a little it takes to convert a popular hero into one whom the people hate and vice versa.

Weak—insecure. **Foundation**—basis. **Glory**—greatness. **Such**—i. e., the populace **Seems like**—appears like—mere *appearance* and not *reality* is the ground on which popular praise or blame is awarded.

[**Note**—There had been war between Alexander VI. and the Orsini family. The army of the Orsini's had occupied the town referred to in this paragraph. Alexander VI. had been unpopular with the people of the town, and consequently when the enemy occupied the town, the inhabitants had hanged the pope in effigy. But on the tide of war turning in the pope's favour the people pulled down the effigy of Alexander from the gibbet and made a statue of

it, placing it where before the figure of one of the Orsini family had been raised.]

Explanation of paragraph 4.

As Alexander VI., Pope of Rome, was entering a small town near Rome which had been just then quitted by the army of his enemies, he saw on the one side a number of the residents of the town pulling down his effigy from a gibbet erected in the market-place, and on the other, another group of men engaged in pulling down a statue of a member of the Orsini family in order that his effigy might be placed there. A man, who had less knowledge of the ways of the world, would certainly have severely censured the fickleness of a people who could be induced to cringe and flatter one whom before they had hated just because the tide of war had turned in his favour. But Alexander was rather pleased with what he saw, and turning round to Borgia, his son, remarked "You see, my son, the small difference between a gibbet and a statue"—that is to say, how little reliance can be placed on popular applause or displeasure—it is liable to change for such a paltry reason. If it were possible to presume to teach the great a lesson, this incident might be pointed out to them as illustrating how insecure is the basis of that glory which stands not on real merit but merely on popular applause. For it is notorious that the populace are deceived by appearances in as much as they are generally too ignorant to search for realities.

Para. 5. Perfect—a thorough-going. Coquette—a flirt; a jilt; a vain, airy, trifling woman, who endeavours to attract admiration and advances in love from a desire to satisfy vanity, and then rejects her lover. (Cf. the character of Katrina in Irving's *Legend of Sleepy Hollow* in the Sketch-book.)

Toil—exert every endeavour to gratify her. Feel—experience.

Inquietude—restlessness; uneasiness. Indulge—gratify. Caprice—whim; fancy.

Jilted—thrown over; rejected.

Page 89.

True glory—i. e., glory not founded on popular applause alone but on real merit or worth.

Play no tricks—practise no deceptions; employ no artifices or stratagems.

They—i. e., the lovers of women of sense. Merit—worth; desert.

Plague . . . fools—may these foolish or silly people be inflicted with the plague

Bawling—shouting.

Explanation of paragraph 5.

Goldsmith compares popular glory to a coquette and true glory to a woman of sense. Just as a flirt rejects her lovers after having shown them favour for a time, so popular glory deserts her heroes after having smiled on them for a time. On the other hand, true glory like a sensible woman will not bestow her affections on any one until he has proved himself to be worthy of it. The result therefore is that whereas those who court popular applause are constrained like a coquette's lover to play all manner of tricks in order to arrest her attention, a man who seeks true glory only works steadily ahead, sure that in the end, when he has established his merit, he will win his mistress. Swift despised mere popular applause; he desired his fame to rest upon a sounder basis. Therefore whenever the mob shouted after Swift, he would exclaim may these silly fellows be inflicted with the plague for thus shouting after me, meaning thereby that he did not look upon their applause as worth anything to him, but merely as an annoyance. Such popular applause, he would remark, would be more suitable to the Lord Mayor, whose fame rests entirely upon popular favour.

Para. 6. Seen—known. Those virtues—the good qualities of men.

Retired—retreated. Public eye—popular notice. Transmitted—sent down.

Truest—most deserving.

The late Duke of Marlborough—one of the descendants of the famous Duke Marlborough who flourished in the reign of Queen Anne.

Set up—established.

Even above—as superior even to that of.

More talked of—a person whose character has been more, frequently discussed by the public.

His more . . . predecessor—the reference is to the famous Duke of Marlborough John Churchill, Duke of Marlborough, a distinguished general and statesman, was the second son of Sir Winston Churchill, and was born at Ashe, in Devonshire, 24th June, 1650. He received only a very imperfect education, and at the age of 12 was taken to court, and became page to the Duke of York, from whom at sixteen

he received a pair of colours. The first engagement at which he was present was the siege of Tangiers, which seems to have decided him in the choice of the military profession. In 1672 he accompanied the Duke of Monmouth, to assist the French against the Dutch and fought under Turenne. Through the influence of his sister Arabella, the mistress of the Duke of York, and his wife Sarah Jennings, Marlborough was much advanced in life. In Queen Anne's reign he became the hero of Ramilles, Malplaquet and Oudernardo, and was made a Duke. He died in 1744.

Since—because. Assemblage—collection. Vulgarly—in the eye of the mob ; by the populace.

Called—regarded

Tribute—Lit. something given or contributed. Here, the onco—mum bestowed upon Marlborough by Goldsmith.

Wore the appearance of—seemed like. Flattery—adulation.

Offer—tender.

Explanation of paragraph 6.

It has been our experience that those qualities of a really great man, which during his lifetime he concealed from public view, and which therefore could not be properly appreciated then, have been admired and applauded by succeeding generations when they became known to them from the consequences which have followed, for such qualities formed a solid foundation of merit. People who aim only at popular applause put all their supposed virtues forward before the public and thereby gain a short-lived fame. It may, therefore, be possible that the late Duke of Marlborough may yet establish himself as having been a greater man than his famous predecessor in title for he possessed those mild and amiable qualities which the latter lacked. The famous Marlborough however gained his fame immediately for having been a military leader, and having founded his influence and power on military force he was constrained to keep constantly before the eyes of his followers those qualities which appealed to them and secured their support. I ask my readers to pardon me for thus praising a man who whilst he lived would have declined all expressions of applause for his deeds holding that the deeds ought to speak for themselves—for it is only on the basis of such achievements that true glory can be established.

Para. 7. Turn—convert ; divert. Trite—common ; worn-out and hence, now without any novelty.

Subject—topic. Out of—from. Beaten—Lit. well-trodden ; well-explored.

Road—path. **Coommonplace**—the usual manner of dealing with the subject.

Except by—otherwise than by. **Illustrating it**—showing it; explaining it.

By—with. **Assistance**—help. **Memory**—incidents remembered.

Judgment—reasoning from abstract premises. **Instead of**—rather than.

Explanation of paragraph 7.

I cannot quite see how I am to treat so common a subject in a novel manner, except by drawing on my memory for a story to illustrate it rather than philosophising on it.

Para. 8. Confucius—A teacher of religion and morals, who like Solon and Zoraster, exercised an extensive influence over his own and succeeding times, and now, after thousands of years, is still venerated by his countrymen and respected by other nations, lived about 550B C. He was born in the province of Shan-Tung. He was of royal descent, and held the rank of a mandarin at court, but as the king would not follow his advice, he resigned his dignity and became a teacher of morals. He led a quiet and temperate life; and was distinguished by his wisdom. He neither attempted to overthrow existing establishments, nor to gain dominion over the minds of men by deceit, but only to disseminate precepts of virtue and wisdom. He taught in the cities and royal courts. He may be regarded as the prophet of the Chinese.

Knew—was familiar with. **Characters**—letters

Of . words—of the words of many languages—hence with many languages.

That...way—that he came across.

Took...head—conceived the idea; determined.

Observe—take note of study. **Customs**—manners; ways.

Of a people—of Europeans. **Whom &c.**—notice the national conceit of the Chinese who are very proud of their ancient civilization.

Not much.....to—not far behind. **Refining upon**—improving upon

Page 90.

Passion—excessive love. **Letters**—literature. **Led**—took.

Civilly—politely. **Immortal**—i. e., of imperishable fame.

What—here an exclamation of surprise. **Returned**—answered.

Light of the eyes—as precious as sight. **Rose of perfection**—absolute perfection ; Cf. *Pink of perfection*."

To what purpose—with what object—hence, to no purpose ; uselessly.

Travelled beyond—gone beyond ; spread outside. **Precincts**—bounds

The Chinaman means that the persons he has named did the acts he enumerates for the sake of acquiring fame, but in fact they had accomplished nothing for they were not known, had not been even heard of, outside the bounds of their own country.

Explanation of paragraph 8.

A Chinaman who was a great scholar once made up his mind to travel abroad. He selected Europe as the country to which he should go because he considered the people not far behind the Chinese in their intellectual attainments and civilization. When in Amsterdam he went to a bookseller and asked for some books, the names of the authors of which the booksellers did not know. This amazed the Chinaman very much for they were all well known authors in his country. The Chinaman exclaimed that these men had sacrificed their lives for no purpose since they had done so to earn fame and yet their names were not known outside their native country.

Para. 9. **Scarcely**—hardly **Furnished**—supplied ; stocked equipped. **Its**—those whom it regards as, &c.

Little great men—men who are regarded as great by those by whom they are surrounded but who really have done nothing to make them famous among wider circles.

Petty—insignificant—subordinate.

Corporation—a body formed by law and authorised by it to act as a single person.

Opposes—resists. **Designs**—intentions ; plans.

Puny—insignificant. (Lit. tiny). **Pedant**—one who makes a vain display of his learning.

Undiscovered—i. e. , undiscovered, till discovered by him.

Property—quality. **Polype**—an aquatic animal of the radiate type.

Unheeded—unnoticed before ; unobserved before. **Process**—any protuberance, eminence, or projecting part of a bone.

Mole—a small animal **Mind**—intellectual faculties.

Perceives . detail—is unable to take a comprehensive view but can deal only with small portions of anything at a time.

Ryhmer—superficial poet. A man who composes more rhymes but has not the gift of true poetry.

Smooth—easy running. **Fancy**--imagine

Walking forward to—proceeding in the right way to obtain.

Immortality—imperishable fame. **Desire**—wish.

Crowd—masses **Behind them**—who follow them—who applaud them.

In their train—after them. **Ages yet unborn**—the generations to come.

Page 91.

To such music—being applauded by the populace (in the manner already described).

Important pigmy—"the little great man." **Pigmy**—Lit a dwarf—unimportant person.

Moves forward—proceeds in his cause, pursues his career.

Bustling—moving actively and with noise. **Swelling**—i. e., with the idea of his own importance.

Aptly—fitly.

Aptly **storm**—a storm causes a great disturbance over an extensive surface of water such as a sea or ocean but does no more than create a few bubbles and cause a few splashes in a puddle of water formed on a road.

Explanation of paragraph 9.

There is scarcely a village or university in Europe, which is not provided with its own 'important pigmies,'—men who consider themselves great but who cannot really be credited with having accomplished anything of much consequence to mankind. For instance, the head of a corporation who resists the tyrannical order of the sovereign that all his subjects shall reserve their best dresses for Sunday, or the puny pedant who discovers a hitherto unheeded property in the polype or some process in the skeleton of a mole--alike imagine themselves on the high-road to imperishable fame.

They teach the mob by whom they are surrounded to look upon them as great men and the mob, being ignorant, do accordingly. Hence both the flatterers and the flattered become stuck up with the impression that never could so many great men have existed as exist in their time. Flattered in this manner, these insignificant persons pursue their respective careers in the belief that they are achieving something really wonderful. The bustle and pride of those men may best be compared to the disturbance created in a puddle of water by a storm—where the only indications of the storm are the production of a few bubbles and a few splashes—totally unlike the awful features of a storm at sea.

Para. 10. Who once..... them—who were once so popular that a crowd of people always followed shouting after them.

Bepraised—lauded up. Those . vulgar--organs best representing public opinion.

Sunk...obscurity—been forgotten as they described. Epitaph—inscription on a tomb.

Flatter--praise their departed worth. Grub Street--see notes at end of the text.

Employed all Grub Street—occupied all the literary backs in writing up articles in the newspapers and magazines in praise of what they anticipated to be the vast developments of the herring fishery industry.

The topic—the chief subject of conversation.

Coffee house—a public tavern. People gathering in such places usually discuss current topics.

Burden—that part of a song which is repeated over and over again.

Ballad--a popular song. We—the English nation.

Drag up...gold—earn enormous sums of money.

Upon our own terms—At a monopoly price. At present...this—this craze seems now to have been altogether dropped.

An herring fishery—and in disappointment as did the Herring Fishery project.

Explanation of paragraph 10.

During my own life time I have known of great men who whilst they lived were the object of popular admiration and applause, but now that they are dead they have been forgotten as they deserved to be, and not even an epitaph remains to do honour to their

memory. A few years ago all the newspapers in London were engaged in speaking very highly of the herring fishery project—the subject was extensively talked about in coffee houses and sung about in ballads. We were to become enormously rich by having a monopoly of the herring fish trade throughout Europe. All this was mere expectation, and as it all came to nothing, so we will find, if we wait a little also that all our expectations in this world will end in failure

Summary.

1. An ale house-keeper near Islington was in the habit of changing the portrait on his sign-board with the varying fortunes of the hero selected for the time being, thus illustrating by his act, the instability of worldly grandeur.

2. The action of the publican only imitated the ways of the great who dangle before the eyes of the public one of their number until the public get tired of him and then replace him by another, and so on

3. Popular applause is no real test of merit, for popular applause being the verdict of the ignorant often based upon appearance and not upon reality.

4. The instability of worldly grandeur is also illustrated by the following incident. Once as Alexander VI, was entering a town which had just then been evacuated by his enemy's army, he saw two bands of people engaged in the market square—one in pulling down his effigy from a gibbet and the other in pulling down a statue of one of the Orsini's so that his effigy might be placed there instead. The fortune of war therefore determined the popular favour.

5. Popular glory is like a coquette who after being wooed jilts her lover. Really great men do not care for mere popular applause.

6. It is possible that in time the late Duke of Marlborough may acquire more true fame than his more famous predecessor of the same title, though the former was not desirous of popular flattery and did not parade his good qualities before the public eye.

7. There are many "little great man" in every village and university in Europe who, because they have done something just a little out of the common, consider themselves as having done something wonderful. They induce the mob to believe that they are really great, and so live under the delusion that they are on the high

road to acquiring imperishable fame, but because of the insignificance of their achievements they never succeed in impressing any one outside the circle of those immediately around them.

WILLIAM COWPER.

William Cowper, a distinguished poet and epistolary writer, son of the Rev. John Cowper, chaplain to George II, and rector of Berkhamstead, Hertfordshire, was born at Berkhamstead, on November 15, 1731. He lost his mother at the age of six, and was then placed in a boarding-school kept by Dr. Pitman in Hertfordshire. After remaining there two years he was threatened with the loss of sight, and was placed for the next two years in the house of a celebrated female oculist. At the age of ten he went to Westminster School, which he left at eighteen with a fair reputation for classical learning, and a horror of its discipline, which he afterwards expressed in his *Theocinium*. He was then articled for three years to a solicitor; where he had for a fellow-clerk Mr., afterwards Lord Thurlow. His disposition was equally unsuited to the rough discipline of the public school, and the total absence of restraint in his new position. Being of a highly nervous and susceptible temperament, strongly inclined to causeless melancholy and predisposed to insanity, he had also the occasional gaiety, the love of ease and luxurious indolence, incident to a delicate constitution, the full indulgence of which probably aggravated the dread of active exertion and responsibility which afterwards brought such disastrous consequences. At the expiration of his apprenticeship he took chambers in the Middle Temple, and in 1754 was called to the Bar. He visited his cousins along with Mr. Thurlow, and made love to one of them, *Theodora*. He associated with other young men inclined to literature. Bonnel Thornton, Colman, and Lloyd formed a member of a club called the Nonsense Club, and contributed to the *connoisseur*, commenced by Thornton and Colman. It was at the beginning of this period the tendency to his dreadful malady first manifested itself. "I was struck," he says, "not long after my settlement in the Temple, with such a dejection of spirits as none but they who have felt the same can have the least conception of. Day and night I was upon the rack, lying down in honor and rising up in despair." It was at the close of his residence in the Temple which lasted 11 years, in 1763, that the first crisis of this malady occurred. Cowper's family was possessed of considerable influence, and it had been the intention of his family in bringing him up to the law to secure him an appointment in the House of Lords. In 1763 several clerkships

fell vacant, which were supposed to be at the disposal of his cousin. Two of them were conferred upon him, the duties of which required him to appear before the house. These his nervousness induced him to relinquish, and accept that of a clerk of the journals, which did not entail any public duty. Unfortunately his cousin's right to make this presentation was questioned, and it became necessary that Cowper should submit to an examination at the bar of the House. He was now in a mortal dilemma. Many motives, among which the chief was the honour of his friend, made him feel it an imperative duty to answer the citation; but the more inevitable the necessity of his public appearance seemed, the higher rose his horror of undertaking it. He even looked forward as a relief to the approach of insanity, and finding it too slow he attempted suicide; but this too failed, and on the very day appointed for his examination he resigned the office, and soon after became insane. From December 1763 to June 1765 he remained under the care of Dr. Cotton at St. Alban's. The form assumed by his malady was that of religious doubt and despondency. The Calvinistic views he had adopted in regard to election, and his own powerful and susceptible imagination, made these doubts assume the most dreadful form. He was continually haunted with the belief that he had sinned beyond forgiveness and that eternal misery of the most aggravated kind was ready to overtake him. On his recovery he settled at Huntingdon, and made the acquaintance of the Rev. Mr. and Miss Unwin, with whom he became a boarder, and whose kindness had the most soothing and beneficial influence on him. On the death of Mr. Unwin, in 1767, Cowper removed with Mrs. Unwin to Olney, the residence of the Rev. John Newton, who also became an intimate friend and exercised a powerful influence over his mind and conduct. Cowper continued to be attacked from time to time by his malady. In 1800 he was attacked by dropsy and died in April of that year, still in deep despondency. His best known poetical works are the *Task*, *Tirocinium*, *On the receipt of his mother's picture* and the *Olney hymns*, which he composed in conjunction with Rev. Newton.

The *Task* unites minute accuracy with great elegance and picturesque beauty; and after Thomson, Cowper is probably the poet who has added most to the stock of natural imagery. The moral reflections in this poem are also exceedingly impressive, and its delineation of character abounds in genuine nature. His religious system too, although discoverable, is more cheerfully exhibited in this than in other productions. His version of Homer possesses much exactness as to sense, and is certainly a more accurate representation of Homer than the versification of Pope; but English

blank-verse cannot sufficiently sustain the less poetical parts of Homer and the general effect is bold and prosaic. As a *Letter-Writer* Cowper is unsurpassed for ease, gaiety and naturalness.

ESSAY XX.

COUNTRY CONGREGATIONS—William Cowper.

Page 91.

[Note—This essay is taken from Cowper's letter and was written to his cousin, Lady Hesketh]

Para. 1. **Country**—here used in opposition to town. No less than—equally with.

Metropolis—capital town of a country **Abounding with**—being full of.

Politicians—well-informed men **Picking up**—hitting upon.

Intelligence—news **Entertaining**—interesting (by being new)

Page 92.

Lately—recently. **Improvements**—alterations for the better

According to—in accordance with **Taste**—fashion.

Reflections—remarks. **Behaviour**—manner of behaving or conducting themselves in church.

Congregations—this word is applied to the collection of people who attend Divine Service at any particular church.

Explanation of paragraph 1.

At the present time both the country and the town are filled with politicians of every kind. I therefore was at a loss to find a subject which would interest your readers. But since I have lately visited the most distant comers of England in the company of a churchman whom I know and have seen the improvements made in the dwellings of the clergy in all parts of the country, improvements which accord with modern taste, I shall give you some of the thoughts that struck us as we saw these different sights, and the behaviour of the congregations at the various country churches.

Para. 2. **Ruinous**—broken down and unrepared; dilapidated. **Condition**—state.

Edifices—buildings, *i. e.*, church buildings.

Gave me—caused me.

Offence—displeasure ; dissatisfaction **Help**—avoid.

Indulging—giving vent or scope to. **Genius**—the exercise of his ingenuity.

Improvements—fashionable improvements connected with his own residence, as opposed to those of the church itself.

Chinese-rail—an ornamental fencing.

Inclosing—closing in or encircling.

Glebe-land—the land possessed as part of the revenues of an ecclesiastical benefice.

Bowling-green—a level piece of ground kept smooth for playing the game of bowls.

Applied—expended. **More laudable**—more praiseworthy **Purpose**—object.

Sheltering—protecting (by repairing the church building).

Uncommon—unusual. **Parsonage-house**—the house set apart for the residence of the vicar.

Well thatched—strongly roofed.

Ivy—a kind of creeper that grows on the walls of old buildings.

Principal—most prominent. By being out of repair, the church had become the abode of numbers of owls, bats, magpies and other birds.

Ancient edifices—old buildings. **Walls**—i. e., the walls of the church.

Like, &c. after the fashion of. **Portioned out**—marked out into.

By the various colours—by being variously discoloured.

The damps—dampness **Stained**—soiled.

[The meaning is that the walls of the church were discoloured by dampness, and the discolouring gave the walls the appearance of large maps which are painted in many colours, each physical feature being distinguished by a different colour.]

Foundation—basis. **Steeple**—the pointed tower of a church where the church bells which announce the commencement of church-service are hung (so as to be heard to a distance)

Expedient—prudent (so as to prevent further injury.) **Hang**—suspend.

Under—beneath. **Beside**—by the side of. **This**—i. e., as just described.

Parish—a sub-division of a country under the immediate control of a vicar.

Lately—recently. **Passed**—travelled through.

Clerk and sexton—are officers of a church.

Like.....**Dunstan's**—on the illustration facing p. 92 in the text.

Page 94.

Serve—render service to—hence sound. *ring*

The bells—the church bells which are sounded to summon the congregation to Divine service.

Capacity—in the place of; doing the work of. **Clappers**--**strikers**, (Lit. that which strikes, as the tongue of a bell).

Them alternately—i. e., first one bell and then the other.

Explanation of paragraph 2.

I was greatly offended at observing the dilapidated condition of some of the church buildings we saw in the country, and I could not help thinking on seeing these buildings, that their honest vicars instead of spending their spare money on decorating their gardens or in laying out a bowling-green would have done better to employ it in re-roofing their churches so as the better to protect their respective congregations during the hours of church service. In the country, it is quite an ordinary thing to see the vicar's house well roofed and in good repair whilst the church building itself has such a broken down roof that the ivy which grows about the building is practically the only cover the building has. The condition of the roof enables many birds such as owls, bats and magpies to take up their abode inside the church building, and often during service they make so much noise as to drown the notes of the musical part of the service, so that one is put under the impression that the service is proceeding to the accompaniment of the noises of these birds alone. In many churches too, dampness has so discoloured the walls that they look like large maps with the different physical features indicated in different colours. In other country churches I have found that the foundation of the building, being deemed to be too weak to support the steeple, it has been pulled down, and the bells which were before hung up in the steeple have accordingly been taken down and suspended under a wooden shed erected on the ground, near the church

building This has a somewhat prejudicial effect on the congregation for now being on a lower level the sound of the bells announcing the commencement of the service does not carry so far as it did formerly. (Cowper suggests indirectly that it is the business of the vicar to see to these matters before attending to the condition and aspect of his own "Residence"] Such was the case with a church in a parish in Norfolk. and when it was required to sound the bells the clerk and the sexton, like the two figures at St. Dunstan's, would stand by the side of the bells and acting the part of clappers would strike the bells alternately with a hammer.

Para. 3. Unseemly--out of place. **Ruinous**--dilapidated; worn out. **Found**--observed; seen.

Appendages—(Lit. adjuncts; additions; concomitants) here means the dress &c, of the clergyman.

Squire--see ante, (note on essay 8, para 9.)

Perhaps--*i e.*, it may have been the present squire or some of his predecessors in title.

Testify—(Lit. to affirm or declare solemnly). Afford indication of.

Devotion—piety; attachment to the church and hence to the cause of religion.

Lasting—enduring. **Monument**—anything by which the memory of a person is perpetuated—memorial.

Magnificence—munificence; benevolence; largeness of heart.

Adorned—decorated with an altar-cloth.

Altar-piece—the piece of structure called the altar.

Richest—most magnificent—gaudy in appearance and excellent in quality.

Embroidered—having worked with silk thread round the edges.

Vine leaves—leaves of the grape-creeper. **Ears of wheat**—the spike of corn; that part of the wheat plant which contains the seeds.

Dressed up—decked up; adorned.

Splendour—showiness; grandeur

The gentleman who fills it—the clergyman, the only person who goes into the pulpit for the purpose of preaching to the congregation—[hence fills it—occupies it.]

Exalted—the reference is to the fact that the platform on which the clergyman stands (inside the pulpit) whilst delivering his sermon is raised, and so he stands on a higher level than the floor of the church building. Here the meaning of exalted is "*elevated to an imposing position.*"

In the midst of—surrounded by.

Surplice—the white garment worn over their other dress by the clergy of the Roman Catholic, Episcopal and other churches, in some of their ministrations.

Periwig—a small wig or covering for the head, worn in Cowper's time by men of certain professions as a mark of distinction (Barristers-at-law whilst engaged publicly in their professional capacity wear wigs even at the present day). Periwigs were made of hair which was artificially curled

Faculty—talent; knack.

Band—ribbon.

Periwig beneath it--by reason of having been worn for a long time without being changed, the artificial curls of the periwig had become straightened whilst the ribbon, which ought to have been straight, was curling in a most awkward manner, with the buckle fastening it full in view.

Explanation of paragraph 3.

In other country churches I have not observed the church building to be in a dilapidated condition, but the appearance of the clergyman of the village has been disreputable when compared with the grandeur of his surroundings whilst in church. The altar-piece and pulpit are decorated expensively with magnificent cloths of crimson velvet embroidered with vine leaves and ears of wheat, the gift perhaps of the present squire or of some one of his ancestors, made with the object of being an enduring monument of his large-heartedness and devotion to the cause of religion. The clergyman, however, who conducts the service in the church, moves about amidst all this splendour, and even takes his stand on the platform in the pulpit, dressed in a surplice which is as dirty as the apron of a farmer who has constantly to handle the soil and with a periwig which through long use has lost its curliness, whilst the ribbon which ought to be straight curls in a most awkward manner disclosing the buckle fastening it to the view.

Para. 4. Concerned—affected; not left indifferent at the sight of, &c.

To see—at seeing—on seeing. Distressed—i. e., in distress or in difficulties for shortness of money.

Distressed pastors—country pastors as a rule are very badly remunerated—the income of their “*livings*” often being scarcely sufficient to pay for the necessities of life.

Cf. Goldsmith, in the ‘Deserted Village’

“A man he was to all the country dear,
And passing *rich* with forty pounds a year.”

Tottering—shaky ; about to fall down ; dilapidated.

Indecency—impropriety ; immodesty ; indelicacy ; that which is unbecoming.

Of worship—of the mode or manner of worshipping on the part of the congregation.

Inform—tell ; instruct on this point. Occasion—reason.

To ..hoarse—to shout so loud that they become hoarse afterwards—(not that this literally happened, but the statement is made to indicate the extent to which the congregation were, in some parishes, in the habit of shouting.)

Responses—certain parts of the church service which consist in the congregation repeating a set answer to the utterance of the minister (see notes on the essay on *Sir Roger in church*).

Town-crier—the person employed by the town authorities to shout out all the public *proclamations*.

That the ..due devotion—that the town-crier who has got into the habit of speaking in a loud tone is not the only person who, on account of that characteristic, is qualified to say his prayers in a proper manner—because shouting loud is not a necessary accompaniment of the due performance of one's devotions.

Brawls—shouts uttered in the loudest and most rowdy voice.

Aisle—a side or wing of a church-building.

Fumbling over—seeking awkwardly for, so as to cause some noise and therefore distraction.

Tattered—torn ; loosened from the binding. Testaments—Bibles.

Text—the quotation from the scripture on which sermon of the day is based and which the clergyman announces at the commencement of the sermon.

[Those who have visited a country church in England will recollect how annoying is this practice on the part of the old, ignorant, women. The reason why these women act in this manner is that being both old and ignorant they can neither properly hear nor thoroughly follow the sermon of the minister. And yet being in church they have to do something appropriate to the place and the occasion. Hence their religious zeal is satisfied by occupying themselves with "fumbling over" the pages of an old Bible until they have found the text announced by the clergyman, provided of course that they have not, after a few minutes of fumbling, forgotten the text—in which case of course the task of finding the text would be hopeless.

Discourse—the sermon.

Is near...conclusion—is about to be concluded. Has almost reached the finish.

Might ..away—would not be uselessly spent or might with advantage be addressed to.

Part—portion ; -section.

Page 95.

Posies—bunches, out of loose flowers.

In the summer time—in England flowers grow mostly in summer, the winter being too cold for them to live.

Cracking nuts—breaking nuts with their teeth and thus making a cracking noise (nuts are ripe for eating in England in the autumn).

Explanation of paragraph 4.

More than the miserable condition of many of our country clergyman and the broken-down condition of many of our country churches, the indecorous behaviour of the congregations, gave me cause for disgust. In the first place most country congregations are in the habit of shouting out far too loudly the responses in the church service. This cannot but cause disturbance and make of religion a farce since it is most unbecoming. It would have been otherwise had such shouting been enjoined by the church, but it is not. The clergyman might with advantage convey instruction on this point to his congregation. So also might he tell the old women who generally sit in the aisle that they would derive far more profit if they would endeavour to listen quietly to the sermon that was being preached instead of wasting their time and disturbing others by fumbling among the pages of their tattered Bible to find the text, a feat which cannot be of any possible use to them. The

younger section of the congregation might likewise be informed that making bunches of floweres in church in summer or cracking nuts during Divine Service in autumn is no part of the ceremonial of the church service.

Explanation of paragraph 4.

But if the poverty stricken condition of many of the country clergymen and the broken down condition of many of the country churches affected me deeply, I was far more offended with the indecorous manner in which worship of God was conducted in others. It would be very desirable if the clergymen would tell their congregation that it was not necessary to shout at the top of their voices in making the responses for loud shouting was not necessary for true piety. The old women among the congregation might also be told that it would do them more good to attend to the sermon than to disturb the whole congregation by turring over the pages of their old Bibles noisely in order to find the text of the sermon. The younger folk among the congregation might also be told that the church during service time was not the place to employ themselves with frivolous occupations.

Para. 5. Old—ancient; of long standing. Practice—custom; habit. Wonderfully—very greatly. Days of—times of.

Sternhold and Hopkins—Thomas Sternhold was one of the versifiers of the first metrical version of the Psalms, long used in public worship in churches, but which was superseded by the version of Tate and Brady published in 1698. The principal coadjutor of Sternhold in his versification of the psalter was John Hopkins; and the names of these persons have become a proverbial designation of bad poets.

Parish clerk—a layman who leads in the responses, and otherwise assists in the episcopal service.

Has.....taste—is so devoid of good taste—is so far regardless of modern fashion.

Pick—select. Staves—the five horizontal and parallel lines and the spaces on which the notes of tunes are written or printed.

New Version—probably, the version of Tate and Brady.

Pick.....Version—not to prefer, and therefore adopt in singing, the tunes of the more recent musical version of the Psalms, viz., that of Tate and Brady.

Occasioned—been the cause or occasion of.

Great—weighty and numerous (both ideas are implied).

Forced—constrained ; compelled ; obliged. Bawl—shout (sing).

To himself—alone ; by himself. Rest—remainder.

Congregation—people assembled to worship.

Cannot ... prayers books—because their copies of the prayer book had the version of Steinhold and Hopkins whilst that used in the church is the more recent version.

Others—other country churches. Highly—greatly. Disgusted—displeased ; (horrified).

Innovation—change—alteration of the old for something new.

Stick—adhere. Obstinately—determinedly.

Old Version—i. e., the metrical version of S. and H. Old Style—i. e., of singing the psalms..

New set to—(framed or) composed afresh so as to be suitable to.

Jiggish measures—Rhymes which can be fitted to the music suitable for dancing a "jig," a light dance.

Sober—solemn Drawl—lengthened utterance of the voice—the drawing out of the notes so as to extend the time to be taken in singing them.

The Hundredth psalm—

1. Make a joyful noise unto the Lord, all ye lands.

2. Serve the Lord with gladness ; come before his presence with singing.

3. Know ye that the Lord he is God ; it is he that hath made us, and not we ourselves ; we are his people, and the sheep of his pasture.

4. Enter into his gates with thanksgiving, and into his courts with praise ; be thankful unto him, and bless his name.

5. For the Lord is good ; his mercy is everlasting ; and his truth endureth to all generations

With the—as also the.

Gloria Patri—Glory to the father. Every psalm sung during the church service is concluded with words which begin "Glory be to the father and to the son," &c

Split up—broken up. Quavers—a note and measure of time in music.

Air—tune. Is now... air—cf. "the tunes themselves have also been new set to jiggish measures."

Prelude—introduction.

Pitch pipe—an instrument which formerly was used for tuning musical instruments.

After.....pitch pipe—after tuning the musical instrument in the church.

Anthems—in modern usage the word means a sacred tune or piece of music set to words—in Cowper's time, *anthem* might possibly have meant a hymn sung in alternate parts.

Made up of—consist of ; are composed of.

Explanation of paragraph 5.

Since the adoption of the new style of psalm-singing a great improvement has been effected in that practice in many country churches, but much inconvenience is also occasioned by the adoption of the new style for many people cannot find the new version of the psalms in their prayer books, and others insist on singing according to the tunes of the old version and the old style. To familiarise the people with the tunes and rhymes of the new style, bands of itinerant singers go about from parish church to parish church singing and playing the new rhymes and tunes to the audience.

Para. 6. Greatest—most important. **Curate**—a clergyman in the church of England lower in rank than the rector.

Veneration—respect ; reverence.

Page 96.

Rides post—rides quickly ; rides with rapidity or speed.

Office—duty ; business

Tag—add on to—hence, conclude. **Usher in**—to introduce

Stave—a part of a psalm appointed to be read in churches.

But . father—he also acts as the father in every case in which a "father" is wanted to give away a girl in marriage. In the English marriage service, a person is required, (and that person is generally the bride's father) to give the bride to the bridegroom in marriage. When the father is absent or dead some one else, generally a near senior male relative, takes his place, failing a male, a female—failing both, the clerk performs this function.

Standing—constant—*i. e.*, he stands as god-father to all the children who are christened in the church to which he is attached.

Like the king—the title of “Defender of the Faith” was during the Tudor period added to the dignity of the kings of England.

Benefice—the living, i. e., the appointment to the office of parish clergyman.

Is his creature—is a person whom he has appointed and therefore very attentive to his likes and dislikes and very obedient to his wishes &c, cf. Addison's Essay on “The spectator visits Sir Roger.”

Of consequence—consequently. Devotion—service.

Of the .. . curate—curates are of two kinds :—(1) *stipendiary*, or those who are hired by a rector or vicar to serve for him and (2) *perpetual*—those who are not dependent on the rector, but are supported by a share of the tithes or otherwise.

Fees—privileges Church-yard—in the church compound but outside the church building.

Strutted up—walked with a strutting gait—like a cock.

Great—big—roomy ; imposing. Pew—an enclosed seat in a church.

Chancel—see ante—(notes on “Sir Roger in church.”)

Complaisance—courtesy ; disposition to oblige.

Explanation of paragraph 6.

It is difficult to pronounce who is regarded by the congregation as the more important officer of the church, the parson or the clerk. Where however the parson happens to be a poor curate who rides hastily from one village to another mounting and dismounting at the churchdoor, the congregation certainly regard the clerk with more respect. The reason for the greater reverence shown to the clerk may also be due to the fact that, in addition to his usual duties during ordinary church service, he also acts as “father” to brides who cannot find any one to give them away, besides standing at all christenings as God-father to the infant babes. In some places however, there is a greater person than either parson or clerk, he is the squire. The squire may very aptly be termed the Head of the church in his own parish as the king is termed the “Defender of the Faith” of his country. If the benefice be in the gift of the squire, there can be no question, for the parson will be the squire's creature—but even when the living is not in his power to bestow, Sunday dinners of roast beef and plum pudding, and permission to shoot game on his grounds will generally convert the minister of the church into his complaisant servant. Owing to the importance, even in relation to the church, of the squire, the

bell is often kept tolling for an hour after service time to enable the squire to arrive before the commencement of the service—and in one church, the parson was so far obliging as to bring his sermon abruptly to a close the moment the squire gave the signal by rising up after his nap.

Para. 7. Stared at—gazed at. Finery—fine dresses. Newest—most recent.

Page 97.

Topping—those who are at the top of the ladder—the more wealthy ; the more successful and important ; the better established.

Vie—contend—compete. Elegance—costliness and gracefulness.

Opulence—wealth.

Mace-bearer—a person who carries a mace. A *mace* is an ensign of authority borne before a magistrate. A mayor is chief magistrate of a town which is also a corporation

Sidling—moving along sideways.

Fan-hoop—a costume which spread out around her in the shape of a fan.

Pattern—design ; type. Negligees—a kind of gown formerly worn.

Furbelowed—furnished with a furbelow. (Furbelow—a piece of stuff plaited and puckered on a gown or petticoat ; a flounce)

Aprons—an apron is a piece of cloth worn over the front part of a dress to keep it clean—it is usually tied round the waist but may also extend from the neck downwards.

Wofully—sadly. Eclipsed—disgraced ; obscured ; defeated.

Trollope or Slammerkin—kind of blouses worn in Cowper's time.

Treble ruffles—three rows of plaited tucks.

Pinked—pierced with small holes. Gimped—indented ; jagged.

Three or four, &c.—the contest lay between three or four persons wearing green bibs and aprons.

Drawn up—pulled up. In festoons—in ornamental curves.

Lesser—smaller ; less important. Nun's Hood—a hat shaped like a nun's hood.

Para. 8. Behaviour—conduct—manner of behaving. Polite—fashionable.

More... . resort—i. e., churches in the smaller corporation towns.

Breathe—utter in a low voice. **Pious ejaculation**—some exclamation involving the name of the Deity—*e. g.*, in summer “Good God how stuffy the church is” and in winter, something like “Christ, how damp this church feels, &c.”

Through..... sticks—*i. e.*, holding in front of their faces a fan which is fixed on to a long handle. (Of course this would be in summer)

Beaux—*i. e.*, the fashionable men. **Gravely**—with a solemn look and manner.

Address themselves to—seem to devote their attention to ; seem to be absorbed in.

Haberdasher's Bills—the advertisement of the firm from where they bought their hats.

[Somehow or other, on entering a church, the men take off their hats and hold them more or less in front of their faces and look intently inside them, so that it is quite easy to imagine that they are actually doing what Cowper humourously imputes to them.]

Page 98.

Rustling of silks—on the slightest disturbance stiff silks make a rustling noise.

Tittering—subdued or smothered laughter.

Good—high-class ; fashionable.

Explanation of paras. 7 and 8.

In a village church the squire's wife or the parson's wife are the only women who are ever made the object of observation on account of their dress. But it is otherwise in large cities and towns, for there, the stage-coach or waggon, by bringing passengers and goods from London, keeps the people informed of the newest fashions in town. In the churches in these places, therefore, the wives and daughters of the better class of tradesmen contend with each other as to who can appear dressed in the most recent fashioned, most elegant, and most expensive costume. The wife of a mayor once astonished a congregation by appearing in a costume more fantastic than any which had been seen before in that part of the country. At another church fantastic *negligees* were all the rage until they were sadly defeated by the costume of a burgess's daughter, who had just come from London decked out in a Trollope or Slammerkin and wearing a petticoat drawn up in festoons. Elsewhere a grocer's wife attracted the attention of the congregation

by wearing a hat called a *Joan*; and at another church the congregation were wholly taken up by a "*Nun's Hood*" worn by a mercer's daughter.

The behaviour of the congregations at all the more fashionable churches is more or less alike. The ladies immediately on entering the church building utter a pious ejaculation behind their fan sticks, and the men take off their hat and fix their eyes on them as if they were reading the advertisement pasted inside their hats on the lining. Then follows a period of bowing and courtesying as the members of the congregation see and recognize each other. Next, these good people make their way to their pews, and the opening and closing of the pew doors create so much noise as to drown the reader's voice at the commencement of the service. Fashionable people seldom enter until the church service has actually commenced. Having taken their seats the rustling of their silk costumes, their whispering and smothered giggling, cause so much disturbance that the reader's voice is rendered inaudible to the very end of the service.

Summary.

1. The condition of some of the country church-buildings is ruinous. Their roof have tumbled down and their walls are discoloured by damp. In many parishes the old church-building being unable any longer to support the weight of the steeple, it has been pulled down and the bells hung under a wooden shed where the clerk and sexton act as clappers. The "parsonage" on the other hand is generally well thatched and in good repair and often the garden too is well laid out.

2. In other parishes, it is the person of the clergyman which is disreputable, he appearing on Sundays in a surplice which is as dirty as a farmer's frock and with a wig which has lost its curls, the band curling up instead.

3. The behaviour of country congregations is still more offensive. The congregation shout the responses till they become hoarse, the old women fumble over the pages of their tattered Bibles to find the text instead of listening to the sermon, and the young folk make posies in summer and crack nuts in autumn during the church service.

4. The singing in country churches has much improved of late. The metrical version of the psalms by Sternhold and Hopkins is gradually being abandoned and the more recent version by Tate and Brady being adopted. For the purpose of familiarising country

folk with these new rhymes and new tunes bands of itinerant musicians go about from parish to parish and play and sing to the audience in the parish churches.

5. By the ignorant people, the clerk of the parish church is often looked upon as a greater person than the parish parson, for the former besides his regular duties in church also acts the part of a father to give ways brides and stands as God-father at baptism. But the greatest personage of all is the squire, a sort of Head of the Parish church, for whom the service often waits, and at whose wish the sermon often abruptly concludes.

6. In country churches the only women who are gazed at for their dress are the squire's lady and the parson's wife. But in larger towns where there is communication with London, the latest fashions are to be seen on Sundays, and women vie with each other as to who shall appear best dressed. The costumes which are to be seen are often very fantastic.

7. Congregations in all fashionable churches behave more or less alike. The women on entering utter a pious ejaculation behind their fan sticks, the men appear to be intently studying the advertisement pasted on the lining of their hats ;—then follows the opening and unopening of the few doors, bowing and curtsying indicating mutual recognition or the part of the members of the congregation—and the creation of a constant disturbance caused by the rustling of silk skirts, whispering and tittering throughout the service.

WILLIAM HAZLITT.

William Hazlitt, a distinguished modern critic and essayist, was born 10 April, 1778, at Maidstone in Kent. His father, a Unitarian minister, who came originally from the north of Ireland, went to America when Hazlitt was about 5 years old but returned in two years. In 1793 young Hazlitt became a student in the Unitarian College at Hackney. He devoted more time however to literature and art than to the study of theology, and upon leaving college resolved to become a painter. He painted portraits with tolerable success ; yet finding that he was not likely to reach the high standard he had fixed for himself, he renounced the art, and in 1805 opened his literary career with an essay on the Principles Human Action, in which much metaphysical acumen was displayed. In 1808 he married, and after a three years' retired country life he settled in London, deriving his principal support from his contributions of political articles and theatrical and art criticisms to the newspapers,

and his occasional lectures and publications. In 1822 he was divorced and in 1830 he died.

Among the best known works of Hazlitt are : characters of Shakespeare's plays ; a view of the English stage ; Lectures on the English Poets ; Lectures on the English comic writers ; Table Talk : Lectures on the Elizabethan age ; Life of Napoleon Bonaparte. The essays, written in conjunction with Leigh Hunt, to the Examiner, were published under the title of the Round Table in 1817. He was a good art critic ; but his tendency to prejudice and paradox, and his almost contemptuous regard for the productions of contemporary genius render him a less safe authority than his knowledge and talents would lead us to expect.

ESSAY XXI.

THE LETTER-BELL—William Hazlitt.

[In the days when there were no branch post offices in London and only one collection a day, postmen from the General Post Office were sent to all the different parts of the town to collect the letters that were to go by the post. The manner in which this postman announced his presence in any street was by ringing a bell which he carried. Those who had letters to go by the Post, on hearing the sound of the bell, would go out and give them to him. See the illustration facing p. 144 of the text].

Page 143.

Para. 1. Complaints—expressions of dissatisfaction. Frequently—often.

Vanity—exaggeration of the importance of. Shortness—i. e., shortness of the duration of—hence the meaning is, that most of us cannot accomplish much in this life owing to the shortness of its duration and yet we are very vain about whatever little we are able to achieve.

When—although ; notwithstanding the fact that.

Examine—carefully consider ; look closely into.

Smallest—most insignificant.

Details—the trifling events which make up the record of our lives ; trivial happenings of life.

They—the trifling details taken collectively, i. e., leaving aside the more eventful episodes of our lives.

Present—disclose A world—an immense mass of objects which ought to arrest our attention and *engage our thoughts*.

By themselves—in themselves.

Trifling—which seemed unimportant at the time. **Objects—**occurrences.

Retracedmemory—when recollected.

Assume—(Lit. put on) acquire.

Vividness—the clearness—here, significance ; meaning.

Delicacy—fineness of structure—here, complexity.

Importance—*i. e.*, which until examination by the microscope—was unnoticed. The writer is here comparing the examination of the form of an insect through a microscope to the recollecting of past events in our lives. Without the aid of the microscope we cannot see, hence we cannot appreciate, the numberless delicacies of structure, the variations in colour and the complications in the organism of a tiny insect. When viewed through the microscope however, that which escaped our notice before now engrosses our attention and exacts our admiration. Similarly in the life of man, the insignificant passing events of every day life have no meaning at the time—they only acquire a meaning and become intelligible in the light of subsequent events. Hazlitt may possibly be hinting that life is not really vain and short if we would only employ ourselves properly in reflecting on each small event of our lives at it occurs. We shall thereby find ample proof of the grandeur of existence, and, when our time comes to die, we shall find that we have done much to understand the mystery of life.

Magnifying glass—the lens of a microscope which enlarges very small objects

Chrysolite—a mineral composed of silica, magnesia and iron, varying in colour from a pale green to a bottle green, and occurring in glassy grains, basalts, lavas and sometimes in large imbedded crystals.

The habitual feelingfragments—The spontaneous feeling of a man's love of life is like one entire and faultless piece of chrysolite, which when sifted close resolves into an endless variety of brilliant parts. cf. Shakespeare.

“ Nay had she been true,
If Heaven would make me such another world
of one entire and perfect chrysolite,
I'd not have sold her for it”—

—Othello. vii 142-45.

Analysed—closely inspected, as through a microscope.

Breaks into—is shown to consist of ; dissolves into—separates into.

Shining—attractive—(if applied to life, instructive).

Fragments—pieces ; elements (if applied to life—events).

Ask—try to find out—**Sum-total**—a total made up of many minor totals ; **grand-total**.

Value—importance ; worth.

Length of the account—the numbers of the event which we passed by as insignificant but which were full of significance, though in varying degrees.

Take...apart—study any one event by itself, isolated from the other events of our lives—it is then that it will furnish ample matter for thought.

Explanation of paragraph 1.

We are constantly complaining of the shortness and vanity of human life, and why? because we do not stop to think over each event as it happens in our life. It is these seemingly insignificant event that lend colour to life and their appreciation, which can follow only from our understanding them, alone can make us realize what existence really is. Life, taken as a whole, is like a perfect piece of chrysolite—but if we would know and understand it thoroughly, we shall have to examine these component elements of which it is made, whose artistic blending produces the perfect result. It is in the details of existence and in their thorough harmony that the glory of life consists.

Para. 2. The Letter-Bell—i. e., the postman.

Lively—(Lit.—as if it were endowed with life). Gay ; bright ; active.

Pleasant—agreeable. **Importunate**—urgent—demanding immediate attention.

Clamour—noise.

Rings—sounds. **Clear**—clearly ; distinctly.

Rings clear...years—the sound of the Letter-Bell brings back distinctly to my mind the events and thoughts with which in bygone years it became associated.

Page 144.

Vibrates to the brain—the sound of the Letter-Bell falling upon the ear calls up past associations and memories (which is a mental process).

Wakes me from...time—forces upon me the realization that time is passing.

Flings me back upon—takes my mind suddenly back to the time when.

My first entrance into life—when I first launched out in life, viz., when I came to London from the town to earn my own living.

Strange—unfamiliar (it is familiar now).

Uncertain—i. e., as to the result—whether I would succeed in life or fail.

Adverse—opposed to my success. (When a beginner in his career, Hazlitt, like all other beginners, felt that every thing around him was opposing the possibility of his success.

Hubbub—jarring, discordant medley. Chaos—bewilderment.

Shifting—changing. Objects—phases.

And when—and at that time. This sound—i. e., of the Letter-Bell.

Alone—only. Brought...myself—interrupted my reverie and brought me back to my senses.

I had ..universe—that I was not absolutely alone and uncared for in this world but that there were people who took an interest in my welfare.

Explanation of paragraph 2.

As I am writing this essay the postman is passing down the street ringing his bell which always recalls to my mind bright and pleasant associations. Besides filling the silent street for a time with noise indicative of the hurry he is in, the sound of his bell brings back to my mind all the varying changes of fortune which I have experienced since the time when I first came to town to start out on the career of my life. When in the beginning I was uncertain of my success, when everything around me seemed unfamiliar and inexplicable, especially the alternating of hope and despair, at the time when everyone and everything around me seemed to be fighting against me so that for a time I despaired of success and was almost afraid of failure—then it was that the sound of the

postman's bell awakened me from my reverie of despair by reminding me that I ought to write to the friends whom I had lately parted from. I thus realized that I was not utterly uncared for in this world—with rivals and enemies only and no friends—and the realization of this cheered me up and served as an impetus to me to diligently work my way through the world in spite of adverse circumstances.

Para. 3. At—on hearing. Loud-tinkling—ringing loudly. Interrupted—not continuous but broken now and then.

Blue hills—hills looking blue in the distance.

Near the place up—Hazlitt was brought up at Maidstone, a town in the county of Kent.

Waves in the horizon—appears before me in imagination.

The long line . . horizon—the image of the long chain of hills looking blue, when viewed at a distance from the place where I was brought up in my childhood appearing at the farthest extremity of my circle of vision, was aroused before my mind's eye

Hovers—hangs. Golden sunset—because sunset tinges the sky with a golden colour.

A goldenthem—I imagine I see my native village at the hour of sunset.

Dwarf oak—a kind of oak tree which grows smaller in size than the giant oak.

Rustlebreeze—the evening breeze, blowing through the leaves of the oak tree, causing a rustling noise.

Journey through life—life here means professional life. Remember, Hazlitt started life as a painter, a most uncertain occupation.

Stares me in the face—stands reproduced before my eye, viz., I see the landscape as plainly as if I were there.

From time—owing to lapse of time since I was there.

Change—alteration in my surroundings.

Not less visionary and mysterious—as unreal and unfamiliar.

PicturesProgress—Christian, the Pilgrim, in Bunyan's Pilgrim's Progress is conducted to the Celestial city from the city of Destruction. The whole journey is imaginary and the pictures by which it has been sought to illustrate various scenes on the journey are consequently shadowy and mysterious.

Explanation of paragraph 3.

At the sound of the Letter-Bell, not only thoughts of my native village but the whole scene, just as I knew it before I left for town, is recalled by my imagination. I imagine that I see the hills in the neighbourhood of my village-home looking blue in the distance against the golden sky at sundown — I even imagine that I hear the rustling of the oak leaves as the gentle evening breezes blow through them;—but though my imagination reproduces the landscape, it cannot enable me to invest the scene with reality and feel the same emotions at sight of the hills and the oak trees as I did when I was there—the lapse of time and the alteration in my surroundings has left the old scenes of my boyhood as visionary and mysterious as the pictures which Bunyan has endeavoured to give of the different places visited by his pilgrim in the course of his imaginary journey to the celestial city.

Para. 4. Lead me a dance—take my thoughts wandering back to

Fixes me recollections—calls back to my mind some phase of my life in town and the experiences connected therewith.

Alarm—signal ; intimation. Break off from—leave off ; end for the day.

That . indeed—it was indeed going to the theatre in those days, —not a matter-of course event as now but an event which was very rare and therefore all the more longed for and looked forward to. It was a treat and hence it was accompanied by a proportionate amount of excitement and joy.

[When an art critic it would be a part of Hazlitt's duty to write criticisms on the different plays which were put on the London stage—it is easy to imagine that going to a theatre then would have lost its novelty through repetition and have become more an infliction than a pleasure].

Reflected enjoyment—enjoyment experienced through reflecting on the enjoyment to be experienced by another.

Conjured up—called up in imagination.

Lively—realistic

Anticipation of the scene—because the imagination would conjure up the scene before in fact it has been exhibited and witnessed.

Explanation of paragraph 4.

If the sound of the postman's bell does not take my thoughts back to the country, it summons up my recollection of the experiences of some long-past stage of my professional career in town. The sound of the postman's bell was a kind of intimation to me, when we had friends coming to dinner, or I was going to the play, that it was time to close work for the day. Going to the play in those days was indeed an event in my life, for I could not afford to go oftener than twice a year and had not been to the theatre more than six times in the course of my whole life. I accordingly took an almost immeasurable amount of pleasure in going and was highly excited when the time for going came—so much so, that I felt a sort of transferred pleasure from sympathy even when I was informed that some one else in the house was going, and my keenness would enable me to call up in imagination a realistic anticipation of the scene to be exhibited at the theatre. But it is very different now.

Para. 5. Maiden lady—unmarried lady.

Who in her youth—this hints that she had passed that stage

Page 146.

Tantalised—teased ; tormented by presenting something to excite desire but keeping it out of reach. The word is derived from Tantalus who was condemned by the 'gods' to stand for ever in water up to his chin but to be prevented from drinking—for whenever he would put his head down to drink, the water would recede.

In this way—by talking to me of going to a theatre.

Airs and graces—acting. "Airs and graces" means manners or behaviour which is not natural but put on.

Mr. Siddons—the greatest tragic actress of the English stage. She was the daughter of Roger Kemble and wife of William Siddons. In the palmy days of her fame she played at the Drury Lane theatre (1755-1831). In 1774 Mrs. Siddons first made herself famous by playing the part of Belvidera in Otway's "*Venice Preserved*." The parts for which she was specially famous were those of Queen Catherine in Shakespear's *Henry VIII* and *Lady Macbeth*.

Part—acting the part of some character in which she had become a favourite with the public

Last receding sound—the sound of the letter-bell heard just before it ceased to be heard any longer by reason of the postman having gone some distance away.

Lingered on the ear—seemed to be heard after in fact it had ceased to be audible.

Lest companion—it is not usual for ladies to go alone to the theatre. In Hazlitt's time the companion would usually be a male, but now a days in London, owing to the perfect safety with which ladies can go about, a female companion suffices, and often the need of a companion is dispensed with.

Places - seats. Good places—seats from which they could get a good view of the performance

Curtain—drop scene. Should draw up—i. e., the performance commence. One line—uttered by Mrs. Siddons. One look—of Mrs. Siddons in her part. Mrs. Siddons was a famous actress

Intelligent report—report of the acting given intelligently by people who had properly appreciated it.

Explanation of paragraph 5.

I remember there was an unmarried lady—a miss-D—who came from Wales and who was to have married an Earl who used to tease me very much by talking all day of her going to the theatre that night to see the acting of Mrs. Siddons in one of her favourite parts. —on these occasions when the sound of the letter-bell announced that the time to go to the theatre had come, and growing fainter as the postman went further and further away, ultimately ceased to be heard, I used to grow very restless harassed by the thought that the lady and her companion might not get seats close enough to the stage from which to get a good view, or might arrive late at the theatre and thus miss the opening scene—thereby depriving me of a fine speech or a significant gesture of a player by its not being mentioned in the vivid and faithful report of the play to be given to me the next morning.

Para. 6. Punctuating of time—i. e., marking off the proper time for the various occupations of life, and adhering strictly to the time thus marked off).

Early period—at the commencement of one's professional career.

Everything..... voice—every petty detail that furnishes that early period of one's life with a tongue, as it were i. e., every incident however insignificant it may outwardly appear, in that early

impressionable period of one's life, furnishes one with a lesson or an instructive tale or moral.

Cf. Wordsworth—*Simon Lee*.

O Reader had you in your mind
Such stores as silent thought can bring
O gentle reader you would find.
A tale in every thing

Also Cf Shakespeare

And this our life exempt from public haunt
Finds tongues in trees, books in running brooks
Sermons in stones and good in everything.

—*As you like it*

Utmost consequence—greatest moment ; extreme importance.

Know—i. e., know beforehand—know until the idea strikes us.

Ideal world—the world of art—the world which is the creation of the artist's imagination in which things appear to be glorious and perfect

Run out of—proceed rapidly and unexpectedly from.

Them—i. e., the apparently striking incidents.

For we them—we cannot tell beforehand what idea capable of being worked up into a picture might be suggested by the occupation appropriate to any particular part of the day.

World of interest—i. e., from the point of view of the artist.

Sustain . . . years—(Lit bear the burden which will be placed upon us in the future), make that progress with the advance of time which we should ; hence, act our part properly in the drama of life.

Embryo—in an immature and undeveloped state.

Which . . . in embryo—to succeed in later life we must not allow any opportunity to improve ourselves which may be presented in the present, to pass by, for, the beginnings of later greatness are in the passing events of the present time, insignificant and trifling though they appear to us.

Recovering—catching again ; hearing again.

Come full round a corner—ring out clearly from a spot down some turning of the street so that I could conclude that the post-man was not far off.

Explanation of paragraph 6.

The punctuation passing events—during the early years of our professional career it is of the greatest consequence to us that

Rembrandt—a famous Dutch portrait painter.

Landscape—a picture, natural scenery.

Vangoyen—a famous Dutch, landscape painter.

It might catch—there might be thrown on it **Dim**—faint

Gleam—a small-beam or stream of light.

Placing...fire—so as the better to see the picture and its blending of colours.

World without—the world outside my studio and matters other than painting.

A task...in it—something to do besides painting.

That landscape—the particular landscape on which the author was then engaged and over which he sat brooding.

Methinks . now—every detail in it is as vividly present in my mind as if I were at this' instant looking at it instead of merely recollecting it.

The *dash* indicates that the couplet which follows gives a description of the picture the author was painting—it represented a canal the water of which was so coloured as to impress the mind as slowly moving. The canal traversed a valley which was covered with yellow coloured flowers and sailing smoothly on its surface was a small boat with out-spread sail. Growing along the banks, every here and there, were clusters of willow trees

Explanation of paragraph 8.

Sometimes when the postman has arrived in our street ringing his bell I have been watching the smouldering remains of the fire in my small studio situated at the back of the house deeply engrossed in thought, or have been anxiously thinking of the fate of some half finished painting in imitation of the style of some great master, after having placed it where the light from the fire in the fireplace might fall on it, so that I might see it more clearly. On such occasions, when I have been thus preoccupied, the sound of the Letter-Bell has made me aware that I had also other interests, besides my art, to attend to.

Para. 9. [This paragraph continues the description which the preceding couplet commenced]

Tremulous—quivering ; shaking. This was due to the motion of the water and the effect of the breeze blowing over the surface of the canal.

Undulating—rising and-falling alternately. By properly blending colours this impression may be produced on the mind.

Reflection--i. e., of the poor, low clay cottage.

Canvas—All oil paintings are painted on canvas.

Lucid—clear. **Commonest**—most ordinary.

Features of nature—scenes from nature.

The painter, by virtue of his art, makes the dull surface of canvas resemble the brilliant surface of a mirror which reflects objects on it since the painting itself is a faithful representation of some scene from nature

Gives one—creates in one. **Strong**—great. **Dandy-school of morals or sentiment**—a class of thinkers who profess overfineness in morals or sentiment.

Painting creates an interest in the objects with which the art is concerned, and in this respect it differs from ethics which does not necessarily make the student of the Science more moral than he otherwise would have been.

Made quiet—trained and made steadfast.

Power—fascination. **Joy**—delight which is experienced on perceiving harmony.

We see things—our art enables us to understand nature better than other people can for the necessities of the art of painting constrains us to study nature thoroughly.

Certainly, painting ... things—it would not be preaching overfineness of morals and sentimentality if it is said that it is through the medium of an appreciative study of the art of painting that we learn how to take delight in the contemplation of nature and how to sympathise with our fellowmen in their weal and woe and how generally to feel interested in their concerns; and that by going through this process for sometime and being strengthened by the feeling that this unintelligible world is yet the work of a spirit-working harmoniously through all, and being enlivened by the intense joy produced by the energy of our highest powers—we at length acquire a power of perception which is no longer disturbed by doubts—but which enables us to see things as they really are in essence, not as they appear to us through the senses and the limitations of space and time. The quotation in the text is taken from Wordsworth's poem "on Revisiting the Wye above Tintern Abbey."

If wehouse—if we are at all to represent, however faintly, through the painter's art "the mysteries of Eternity." The quotation is from Shakespeare's *Hamlet*—

"—But that I am forbid
To tell the secrets of my prison house
I could a tale unfold whose lightest words
Would harrow up thy Soul &c —

I. 5 13, &c.—

Page 148.

Furtive—stealthy ; sly. **Sidelong**—oblique.

Pallet—a thin oval board or tablet with a thumb hole at one end on which a painter lays the pigments with which he paints his pictures.

Afterwards him—later on in his career when he achieves success as a painter and earns sufficient money to enable him to employ a liveried servant.

Ostensible—showy ; visible.

Not be . art—so completely engrossed in his art

Will have such . him—will exercise such a powerful influence over him.

Humble—poor ; lowly **Aught**—anything.

Had to do with—had any connection with

Projects—plans.

Entire—whole hearted—thorough ; perfect. **Affection**—love

Scorneth—despises. **Nicer**—more appropriate ; more skilful

Entire affection hands—a man who takes heart and soul to a favourite piece of work is never willing to part with it, and have it done by others—even though they may be far superior to himself in point of skilfulness and efficiency.

The professor—the man who began as a poor, humble painter but in the course of time has acquired such fame as now to be elevated to the rank of a ' professor ' of painting.

Is above—considers himself too exalted in rank to perform.

Stalking-horse—stepping-stone ; the means by which he hopes to attain ; the horse on the back of which he is to be taken to his goal.

Hobby-horse—a wooden horse on which boys ride; it was a character in the old May games. 'Hobby-horse has come to mean a hobby or favourite object of pursuit.

Explanation of paragraph 9.

The picture had also a windmill and a humble, low roofed clay cottage by the side of it, both of which were reflected in the water, and I recollect what pleasure I felt when I had succeeded in reproducing the quivering and undulating motion of the reflection on the canvas. The surface of the hitherto dull canvas now became like the surface of a mirror faithfully representing a scene from nature. Painting certainly does create in the artist a living interest in the subject of his work in mankind, whom he portrays and in nature, which he depicts—it is not a school which teaches men merely theoretical learning, for before a man can become a true painter he must learn to perceive harmony and with a trained eye to "see into the life of things." There is perhaps no happier period in a painter's life than when he is a beginner and poor—when his whole heart is in his work and besides his work he has no other interests. When later in life he rises in his profession and acquires fame and wealth, his art becomes merely a means to the attainment of other worldly ends; love for his art pure and disinterested no longer exists—art has ceased to be his hobby—the one absorbing interest of his life.

Para. 10. This part—the purely mechanical part, *e. g.*, cleaning the pallet and washing the brushes

Which was—which was also the Letter Bell used to ring out near the author's house about the same time that the inmates of the house dined.

Dinner-Bell—in England the fact of dinner being served on the table is announced by the sounding of a gong or the ringing of a bell.

Fraternal board—(Fraternal from Lat *Frater*, a brother) the dinner table where several people met on friendly terms to partake of the evening meal.

Youth and hope—young and hopeful people—(young people are generally very hopeful about their future).

Wait on—attend—go along with.

Young people have good appetites and a good digestion in consequence of the union of which they enjoy health.

Put it off—postponed it **Loiter**—linger, perform less hurriedly.

Luxurious indolence—comfortable feeling of laziness which succeeds the eating of a heavy meal

Explanation of paragraph 10.

Sometimes as I would be engaged in performing with haste this merely mechanical portion of my work the sound of the letter-bell which was also the signal that it was my time to partake of my evening meal, would inform me that I should go and join the rest of the company at the dinner table where young, healthy and hopeful people would be assembled. But I would more frequently put off this portion of my work till after dinner, so that I might go on musing over my work and the forms of beauty suggested by it, and like an aesthetic voluptuary might continue to enjoy this mood in ease, and make it serve as a connecting link with the thoughts that would form the basis of my next day's work

Para. 11. Dustman—A man who goes about with a cart from house to house collecting all the rubbish and sweepings.

Heavy—loud. **Monotonous**—wanting in variety either in the sounds made or in the ideas called up by association in the minds of the hearers.

Brisk—following in quick succession the one upon the other.

Tinkle—this word represents the noise made by a small bell.

Muffin-bell—the bell carried by the muffin seller. **Muffins** are a kind of unsweetened cake which have to be toasted and buttered before eating—muffins are a great favourite at the afternoon-tea table in winter.

Dilating upon—dealing at length with—writing at length on.

Licence—freedom.

Inventive prose—prose style employed in the writing of fresh varied fancies

Page 149.

Not alike—to the same extent.

Not alike . imagination—All things are not capable of exciting the imagination to the same extent—the imagination will not respond to an equal degree to all *stimuli* alike—the meaning is that some subjects are more fitted than others for an imaginative treatment.

Ingenious—clever—one apt at inventing or contriving.

Arch-critic—one given to criticising the works of others adversely—[Evidently some work of the professor's had been subjected to

point in it and might as well encourage a froggery. Evidently the Scotch professor's imagination had remained unaffected by the consideration that even ugly things have an element of beauty in them for those who can perceive it. It was indeed strange that a native of the country, which had produced Sir Walter Scott and Campbell, should have shown such want of sentiment.

Para. 12. Postman's double knock—the postman always knocks twice in rapid succession on the door ; it is his recognized knock just as 2 sets of double knocks is the recognized knock of the Telegraph boy.

German—(more generally spelt *germane*) near ; akin ; relevant, 'More german to the matter' is a quotation from Shakespeare who has

"The phrase would be more germane to the matter." *Hamlet*.

The matter—the subject we at present are dealing with, *viz*, the power which the sound of different bells has of suggesting ideas and calling forth feelings in us.

How heart—we all know how the sound of the postman's knock sometimes rouses the tenderest feelings in us, (as for instance when we are expecting a letter from a wife, a child or parent, near relative or dear friend).

To a nicety—with very great correctness

Twopenny—i. e., a delivery consisting of those letters and packets only on which a fee of 2 pence had to be paid. The student should remember that in Hazlitt's days, postage stamps had not come into use and the fee for carriage was collected on delivering the letter. The twopenny post consisted for the most part of Local letters. Postage in the days of mail coaches used to be calculated on the distance the letter had to be carried.

General Post—delivery for all letters whatsoever.

Summons—the call to the door made by the postman's knock.

Heavier—more full of sound—of course this is purely fanciful—our expectation is greater in the case of letters coming from people who are at a distance from us, and this would cause a person to seem to notice the difference in the postman's knock which the author has spoken of

It—the news contained in the letter.

Fraught with—(Lit. pregnant with) Having for the receiver of it.

Deeper—greater.

Explanation of paragraph 12.

The postman's knock at our door to deliver letters is more relevant to our subject for we all know how often the sound of his knock arouses in us the tenderest of feelings. We soon become able to distinguish the knock for the local from the knock for the general delivery. We seem to notice that the latter knock is louder and heavier as bringing news from a greater distance. The real explanation however is that our anxiety and interest are greater when the news comes from a person far away, especially if the letter has been more than usually delayed, than when it comes from some one living near us and whom probably we frequently meet.

Para. 13. Catch the sound--although a servant answers the door to the postman's knock, our hearing is so sharpened by our keen expectation that from our room we can hear the postman saying how much is due on the letter by way of postage

Hopes ... postage—(Rise-increase). This for two reasons :—

- (1) Because the amount of postage varies with distance.
and
- (2) Because the amount of postage also varied with the weight of the letter.

Provoked—angered. **Change**—coins of small value in exchange for coins of a larger value.

Who ..door—who does not hear the postman's knock at the door and consequently does not go to open it and take in the letter.

Passes—passes by our door without knocking (having no letter to deliver).

Pang—sharp feeling of pain (lasting only for a time).

Explanation of paragraph 13.

The keenness of our expectation enables us to hear from our room the postman telling the servant who answers the door the amount that is to be paid by way of postage, and our hope is in most cases the greater the more the postman demands--and this because we know that either the letter must have come from some distant friend or relative or that it conveys a great quantity of news, the amount of paper written on having increased its weight. Every subsequent cause of delay in getting the letter angers us, for instance, we are provoked if we have first to get change.

before we can pay the postman, or if the servant does not hear the knock at the door. If, on the other hand, the postman passes by our door without knocking, he having no letter to deliver at the house, we for the time being feel a sharp paroxysm of pain, and in our disappointment we imagine that the postman has overlooked the house intentionally for the purpose of amusing himself at the expense of our misery.

Para. 14. Walked out—*i. e.*, out the house—hence, gone.

Mail-Coach—before Railways were started letters were carried in stage-coaches, drawn by four horses and of which the horses were changed at different stages along the road. The illustration facing page 168 will give an idea of what the mail coach was like. (A stage coach carrying mails was called a mail-coach).

For this reason—because it carries letters which contain *news*.

Look at it—regard it **Bearer**—carrier ; conveyer.

Tidings—news

Messenger of fate—the news bearer of the destiny of others—*i. e.*, it carries tidings from people to others far away telling them how the writer is getting on, hence it may be looked upon as carrying news of how the person in question is being treated by destiny.

Finest—most impressive. **Metropolis**—*i. e.*, London.

Setting off—starting off from.

Piccadilly—a locality in London. It is now the most fashionable part of London. The mail coaches from London used to start from Piccadilly.

Page 150.

Paw the ground—scratch the ground with their hoofs thereby indicating that they are impatient. The action of the horses is compared with the scratching of a cat.

Impatient—restive ; uneasy

As if . . . of—as if they were aware of the fact that they were the bearers of.

Precious—much cherished. **Precious burden**—*i. e.*, letters containing tidings from absent people.

Peculiar—unusual. **Secrecy**—silence. **Despatch**—quickness

Significant—full of meaning.

In all . . . them—in everything that they (mail-coaches) do.

Outside passengers—passengers travelling on the outside of the coach. See illustration facing p. 168

Erect—undaunted **Supercilious air**--haughty contemptuous manner

Borne on—carried. **Through the air**—because they are seated on the outside of the coach.

In a winged chariot--in a vehicle which proceeds along so fast that it seems to fly through space. (The horses employed to drag the mail coaches are the fastest animals that are available for the purpose.)

Explanation of paragraph 14.

Sometimes I take a walk to see the mail coach, by which I am sending a letter, start away, or to meet the one on its arrival by which I expect a letter. Because the mail coach carries letters to friends and relations who are parted from one another, on seeing one, I cannot refrain from the thought that it is a messenger of fate, carrying tidings of how absent people are getting on (hence being treated by destiny or fate) I have particular reasons for indulging in this reflection. The most imposing sight in London is that of the mail coaches about the hour they start from Piccadilly. The horses scratch the ground with their hoofs impatient of waiting, as if they were aware of the nature of the burden they were conveying and of the anxiety of those who were to receive the letters. All persons concerned with the mail coaches behave themselves in a manner, and all proceedings connected with them are conducted in a manner, which suits the nature of the burden they bear, for the secrecy which attaches to the contents of letters and the despatch which should attend their conveyance and delivery infect, as it were, also the behaviour of the men and the conduct of proceedings in connection with those coaches. The passengers speak but little and exhibit a haughtiness of bearing and a contempt for danger which is in perfect keeping with the secrecy, the despatch and the safety which are symbolised by the mail coach. Even the passengers travelling on the outside of the coach display that indifference to the heat of summer or the cold of winter which can only spring from the consciousness that they are travelling by the fastest conveyance available

Para. 15. Drive up—arrive and are pulled up.

Transfer—i.e., from the mail-coach to the post office messengers. The letters for London are delivered over and those from London for elsewhere are taken over.

Irrevocable—because once in the mail coach they cannot be recovered back by the sender

Scrolls—(Lit. rolls of paper with writing on them) letters.

Give wings to thought—communicate one man's thoughts to another.

Bind or sever—according to the contents of the letter—some letters have the effect of making people more attached to each other whilst others give so much offence as to create life-long enmities.

How we hate—on account of their being clumsy and old fashioned.

Putney and Brentford stages—the stage coaches running between London and its two suburbs Putney and Brentford

Sublimest—noblest looking. **Launched on**—sailing on. **Bosom**—surface “Bosom” is very commonly used for the surface of the ocean Cf. Wordsworth “This sea that bares her bosom to the moon.”

Pour down—drive down. **Of an evening**—every evening.

Tear up—cut up. **Devour**—traverse rapidly.

Land's End—the name of a cape, the extreme point of Cornwall.

Explanation of paragraph 15.

The mail-coaches arrive at the station. The mail bags are transferred from the coach to the post office and from the post office to the coach, and then the coach starts off again bearing letters that cannot be recalled and which will either have the effect of bringing people more close to each other or of creating life long enmities. The Putney and Brentford stage-coaches are an ungainly sight to behold as they pull up in a line one after another ready to start, something that the noblest looking spectacle is a ship sailing on the surface of the sea, but I prefer the sight of the mail coaches that pass through Piccadilly every evening, rushing along on their way to Land's End, the extreme point of Cornwall

Para. 16. In Cowper's time—when Cowper, the poet, flourished (1731—1800).

Were hardly set up—were only recently introduced.

Coming in—approach.

Hark! 'tis the.....unconscious of them all—Hark! here is the sharp note of the bugle horn blown by the post-boy over yonder bridge that, with its long array of arches which stand at long

intervals over their abutments spans the channel of the river the water of which is now, during the winter, frozen into ice, on the smooth unwavering mirror-like surface of which the disc at the moon is seen clearly reflected without the least tremour. The post-boy with his boots soiled with dirt and his waist fastened round with a belt, and his hair covered all over with snow—now approaches the village as the messenger of news from the wide busy world. Although he faithfully discharges his duty by carrying behind him the heavy, well-packed mail-bag containing news from all the nations of the world,—yet he is careless as to what he brings, his one end in view being the safe disposal of the mail-bag at the appointed inn, its destination. He is the bringer of ill-news perhaps to thousands, of happy tidings to some, himself remaining apathetic both to weal and woe. He brings news of all sorts—news of houses having been burnt down, of bank failures and the consequent fall of stocks—of births, deaths and marriages. There in the bag he carries on letters of lovers wet with their tears flowing down their cheeks as fast as the sentences dashed off by their rapid pens—or letters full of sighs of absent lovers or those containing replies from their beloved mistresses. The post-boy and his horse carrying all these have in a manner to do with them, but at the same time, how unconscious are they of them all.

[Note. The extract in the text is taken from Cowper's *Task*. BK. IV. (Winter Evening).

And yet ... this—in spite of such a passage containing so graphic a description given by Cowper.

That seem .. being—that appear to touch the very backbone of our national life.

The picturesque andmechanical—things of practical utility which minister to the comforts and convenience of man's every day life are ill adapted to furnish beautiful images fit to appeal to the deepest springs of men's hearts with the force and vividness of a dramatic representation.

New revolution of all France—not the Great French Revolution but the revolution of 26th July 1830.

Contrivance—ingenious product of the human mind.

Less striking and appalling—less effective and awful.

Beacon-fires—fires lighted on hill-tops and used as a sign of danger.

Æschylus—a Greek tragic poet.

The taking . . . Agamemnon —the capture of Troy by the Greeks and the return to Greece after 10 years of warfare of Agamemnon, leader of the Greek hosts The Trojan war was occasioned by the carrying off of Helen of Greece by Paris, son of Priam, king of Troy. Venus had promised Helen, who was considered to be the most beautiful woman in the world to Paris on account of his award to her of the golden apple.

Summary.

1. Complaints are often made of the vanity and shortness of human life—this is scarcely justifiable, for if we examine the smallest details, they present a world by themselves The most trifling objects, retraced with the eye of memory, assume the vividness, the delicacy, and importance of insects seen through a magnifying glass. The sum-total of the value of human life presents a lengthy account, the items in it are very numerous

2. The sound of the Letter-Bell not only fills the street with its importunate clamour, but rings clear through the length of many half-forgotten years. The sound takes my thoughts back to the days when I first came up to town to start life on my own.

3. It even recalls my home in the country and my imagination reproduces all the scenery round my home, but imagination cannot enable me to invest the scene with reality and connect it with feeling Time and change have made the old scenes no less visionary and mysterious than the pictures to illustrate the progress of Bunyan's Pilgrim

4 Sometimes the sound of the Letter-Bell recalls my experiences of the days when I was a beginner at my work, when I was poor and humble and when the sound was the signal for me to end my work for the day if I was going to the theatre or friends were coming to dinner

5. In those days I did not go to the theatre oftener than twice a year and had not been more than six times in all. This was why going to the theatre was, for me, an event in my life. So much excitement had the very thought of a theatre for me that if any one else were going, I used to have a sort of reflected enjoyment and feel anxious and uneasy lest he should be late or not get a good seat. I used to be very eager for an intelligent and full report the next morning.

6 During the early period of one's career he should divide off his day and allot each portion to the performance of its assigned duties. He should try and adhere to the apportionment as strictly as possible.

7 One should not be of a wavering disposition. What he makes up his mind to do, he should carry it through and take the consequences.

8. The sound of the Letter-Bell has often diverted my thoughts from my art, with which they were for the time being entirely engrossed, and has made me conscious that there was a world outside my studio and that I had my duties to perform in that world also.

9. Painting gives one a strong interest in nature and in humanity; it is not the *dandy-school* of morals or sentiment.

10. The most enjoyable period of an artist's life is when he is poor and humble and unknown. For then he is wholly in his art. Later, when he acquires wealth and fame, his art becomes merely a means to the attainment of other worldly ends. Art then ceases to be his hobby-horse.

11. The sound of the dustman's bell or the muffin bell are not capable of appealing to our hearts to the same extent as the sound of post-man's double knock in the morning. As all things are not alike conductors to the imagination, so all sounds are not alike conductors to the emotions.

12. I sometimes take a walk to see the mail coaches start away from Piccadilly. They present an imposing sight. The behaviour of all concerned with the coach and the conduct of all proceedings in connection with it are in keeping with the mission of conveying letters containing tidings to anxious hearts.

LEIGH HUNT.

James Henry Leigh Hunt, a well-known poet and elegant writer, was born at Southgate near London in 1784 Leigh Hunt was educated at Christ's Hospital, at which school he remained till his fifteenth year, and obtained the distinction of first deputy Grecian. On leaving school he entered the office of his brother, who was established in business as an attorney, and afterwards obtained a situation in the war office. In this post he continued till 1808, when, in conjunction with his brother John he started the *Examiner* newspaper, which afterwards attained such eminence as a leading organ of the liberal party. Previous to this he had made various literary

attempts, first in a collection of juvenile poems, published for him by his father in 1801; and subsequently by theatrical and literary critiques furnished by him to the '*News*,' a Sunday paper commenced by his brother in 1805. These critiques were published in a collected form in 1807. On the establishment of the *Examiner* by the Hunts the paper became prominent for the fearlessness with which public matters were discussed, and it was not long before its conductors were made to feel the weight of official resentment. For an article against flogging in the navy they were tried before Lord Ellenborough, but were defended by Lord (then Mr.) Brougham, and acquitted. A second prosecution had more serious consequences, and was occasioned by an article in the paper of March 22, 1812, reflecting on the character of the Prince regent, whose debaucheries were then a subject of public scandal. One specially offensive expression was styling him a "corpulent Adonis of fifty." It resulted in the brothers being sentenced to pay a fine of £500 each, and to suffer two years' imprisonment. This last penalty was endured by Leigh Hunt in a manner which alleviated considerably the inconveniences of incarceration, being cheered by frequent visits from his friends, who also, by the way in which they fitted up his cell with all the appliances of physical and intellectual comfort, rendered it a little elysium. During his confinement he employed himself in several literary works, which were published after his release. They include the *Feast of the Poets* (1814); the *Descent of Liberty*; the *Story of Rimini* (1816). This last is his longest and generally considered his best poem, though in common with his other writings, it was mercilessly assailed by the Tory Critics. Theodore Hook among them contributing his Squib.—

"O jiminy, jiminy!
What a niminy piminy
Story of Rimini!"

In 1818 appeared *Foliage*, a collection of original poems and translations from Homer, Theocritus, Bion, &c.; and in 1819 the *Indicator* was started, a weekly journal on the model of the *Spectator*, which contained some of his best essays. In 1822 Hunt proceeded to Italy, having received an invitation thither from Byron and Shelley the latter of whom was drowned a few days after his arrival. Leigh Hunt continued to reside with his family for several years in Italy, and on his return to England published *Recollections of Lord Byron* and some of his contemporaries which provoked somewhat the indignation of the noble poet's friends. Hunt's principal works are:—*A legend of Florence*; stories from the Italian poets; *Imagination and Fancy* and *Wit and Humour*; *A jar of Honey Mt. Hybla*; the

Town, its memorable characters and events; Autobiography; Table Talk; and the Old Court Suburb. In addition to these works, Hunt published editions of the dramatic works of Wycherley, Congreve, Vanburgh, and Fargutar; of Beaumont and Fletcher, and of Sheridan. Hunt retained his faculties unimpaired almost to the very last and died in August 1859.

Leigh Hunt's prose style is light, graceful and gossiping. As a poet his grand characteristic, according to Moir, is word-painting in which he excels even Kents. He often carries this quality, indeed, to the extent of strange and affected conceits.

He is frequently happy in imitative translations, and he caught a good deal of the tone of the Italian poets.

ESSAY XXII.

A "NOW" DESCRIPTIVE OF A HOT DAY

—Leigh Hunt.

[On page 161 of the text, Leigh Hunt informs the reader what a "Now" description is. The origin of the word "Now" he says "was suggested . . . by the striking convenience it affords, to descriptive writers, such as Thomson and others who are fond of beginning their paragraphs with it, thereby saving themselves a world of trouble in bringing about a nicer conjunction of the various parts of their subject].

Paras. 1-5, describe a hot day in the country; paras. 6-9, a hot day in town; para. 10, is general.

Page 156.

Para. 1. Now--Now-a-days—in the summer time.

The rosy-[and-lazy]-fingered Aurora—the morning twilight was in classical mythology, personified by fancy into the goddess of dawn. Dawn was spoken of by the classical poets as "rosy-fingered" because of the delicate and subdued red glow in the eastern sky at dawn. Leigh Hunt adds 'lazy-fingered' to the characteristics of Aurora because the summer is a season which makes men lazy and disinclines them to work. Issuing from—coming out from.

Her saffron house—i. e., the eastern horizon. The eastern horizon is the home of Aurora where she is represented as living in a house made of saffron plants, the dried stigmas of which are of an orange-red colour, because, immediately before dawn the sky is diffused with an orange-yellow tinge.

Calls up....her—the warmth of the rising sun causes evaporation of moisture from the ground, and this moisture during the early hours of the morning hangs about in the atmosphere in the form of mist. Hunt, therefore, putting it in a fanciful way, imagines the goddess Aurora coming out of her house early in the morning and being modest and coy and not desiring to be gazed at, orders the mists to surround her and form for her a veil to conceal her from the gaze of mortals.

Moist vapours—mists. Goes—goes about.

Veiled—wrapped up and thus concealed.

As long as she can—this of course is, as the writer tells us "till Phœbus, &c."

Phœbus—(another name for Apollo)—the sun.

Coming forth—rising. In his power—in its full blaze.

Looks every thing out—looks around so powerfully that every thing flies before the gaze, hence dissipates the mists.

Sharp—keen ; piercing.

Uninterrupted—undisturbed, i. e. , by being contested. Empire—rule ; sway

Throne of beams—throne composed of beams of light. Being personified, the sun is spoken of as an Emperor, sitting on a throne surrounded by beams of light and from his seat there exercising his authority over the world below.

Explanation of paragraph 1.

This is the hour of twilight. Soon it will be dawn. Even now indications are present, in the yellowish appearance of the sky, that Aurora has left her house and is proceeding slowly along on her habitual morning wanderings. Further the mists that are hovering in the sky are an indication that sunrise is not very far off. When the sun does arise in full blaze, these mists will be dissipated and the sun beams will fall upon the earth with all the force of summer rays.

Para. 2. Now—This is about the time. The use of the word "now" here not only joins on the second paragraph to the first but indicates also the change of time—from early morning to full day.

Mower—one who cuts long grass or growing crops with a scythe—Towards the latter part of summer, in July and August, the sun is hottest in England and it is then that the grass is ripe for hay-making and the corn for harvesting. Hence people would be employed in the fields in "mowing" down grass and crops.

Sweeping cuts—vigorous cuts with the scythe, extending his arm to its full length so as to cut down with one blow as much as lies within his reach. This necessarily is hard work and makes the operator hot. Hence, the sun being hot, the mower, now slackens in his task and shows both less vigour and less rapidity in the movement of his arms. When the mower first went out into the field, the sun was not so hot, but now, as the day has advanced, the sun has grown hotter and hence the change.

Resorts ..beer—drinks beer oftener. Because he becomes more frequently thirsty. In England, among the labouring classes, beer is the common drink and takes the place, with most people, of water. Beer increases one's strength and hence capacity for manual labour (unless of course taken in excess).

Carter—In England, heavy goods, even agricultural products when in large quantities, are carried from one place to another in big carts drawn by horses—the man who drives the horses attached to such carts are called "*carters*."

Sleeps—because of the heat causing fatigue. **A top**—on the top of.

Plods—walks slowly and wearily by the side of, or at the head of his cart. Cf. Gray's Elegy. "The ploughman homeward plods his weary way."

Double slouch—twice the amount of ordinary slouch—i. e., with his shoulders very much depressed or "flopping downwards"—of course through fatigue caused by the heat. (Double slouch=more than ordinarily slouched).

Looking out with—seeing with. **Winking**—closing and opening on account of the glare of the sun.

Shading hat—hat with a broad brim to shade the eyes from the rays of the sun.

Hitch—curl. The heat of the day causes the carter to pull faces or distort his features

Coaches—stage-coaches. These were conveyances which in England did the work of *Dak-garries* in India

Sunny—may mean either *bright* or *with the sun falling upon it*.

With her forehead—so as to shade her eyes from the glare of the sun.

White shirts—shirts of white summer material. **At**—outside ; by ; near.

Rural—country.

At the....ale-houses—Beer shops in the country in England are usually provided with benches placed outside by the door generally in some shady place. In the summer, workmen, during their offtime at midday lounge about on these benches so as to rest themselves before returning to finish their work.

Elm—Elm tree—its branches spread out and shade a wide area.

Is fine—is grand—very enjoyable.

There—in the neighbourhood of the country ale-house.

Trough—a vessel containing water for animals to drink.

Page 158.

Yearning—longing—this is a transferred epithet—it is the horses that yearn to drink the water and their impulse prompts them to stretch out their necks to the full in order to get at the water as quickly as possible. It looks therefore as if the necks were longing to get to the water with as little delay as possible

Having . minutes—note the amount of thirst

Wincing—kicking and flouncing through uneasiness

Docked—cut short. See illustration facing 168.

Flowered gown—a frock made of a material stamped with a design of flowers.

With an indifferent eye—i. e., showing in her eyes no signs of disappointment.

Way—direction.

Lawful—that which was rightfully due as the price of the ale (and no more.)

She receivedtwo pence—the writer here implies a comparison between the behaviour at a beer house of the proprietor's daughter and a bar-maid—or female servant engaged to serve customers. Miss Betty Wilson does not use her eyes to fascinate the customer into giving her a tip for she looks the other way when receiving payment—nor does she look disappointed when on seeing the coins in her hand she finds that she had received no more than the bare price of the ale. The behaviour of a bar-maid would have been very different—in fact exactly the contrary of Miss Wilson's conduct.

Explanation of paragraph 2.

This is the time of day when on account of the heat the mower's energy begins to flag and his arm neither extends so far nor moves

so rapidly as it did earlier in the morning ; he also now feels more thirsty and consequently drinks beer more frequently. Now the carter too may be seen asleep on the top of his load on the cart or walking along slowly and wearily by the side of his cart, his shoulders drooping more than ordinarily through faintness produced by the heat and having his broad brimmed hat pulled well down over his forehead so as to shade his eyes from the sun's glare. He will be observed to be constantly opening and closing his eyes on account of the glare, and the hot air striking against his face is making him pull grimaces. The little girl living with her grandmother will now shade her eyes with her hand as she comes outside the door to see the coaches go past. This is just the sort of day on which labourers look enviably cool without their coats on, in their white shirts, as they lounge about during offtime on the shaded seats outside the doors of country ale-houses. It is on a day like this that a seat under an elm tree near a country ale-house would be fine. On account of the heat of the day the horses too appear to be stretching their necks in eager longing to get to the water trough. The traveller, who has been riding in the heat, calls for another glass of ale, though it is not more than ten minutes ago that he had his last drink : in the meantime his horse flounders and shivers his skin and ineffectually moves his docked tail to keep the flies off. In response to the traveller's order, Miss Betty Wilson, the landlord's daughter, wearing a pair of ear-rings and dressed in a flowered gown comes tripping out carrying the glass of ale with four of her pretty fingers, and when the ale is finished and the time for payment comes, she receives the actual price, two pence, with her face turned away from the customer, nor does she show any signs of disappointment at not having received a "tip"

Para. 3. Fry—get scorched in the sun. The reference is to the following couplet.

"The creaking locusts with my voice conspire
They fried with heat, and I with fierce desire."

Envied—because they paddle about in water which is cool.

Thick with dust—covered thick with dust. It—i. e., the dust on the roads.

Scattering—distributing on all sides.

Horror—mud, which is an abomination when it comes into contact with one's clothes.

Among.. spectators—i. e., by running up against the trousers of those who were standing by—and also by shaking themselves and

thereby transferring the mud on their bodies to the trousers of the standers-by.

Pretty—very awkward ; very unpleasant ; very trying. **Situation**—position.

In a pretty situation—very awkwardly and unpleasantly situated as regard his own comfort—the inconvenience of walking with tight shoes being increased by the trying heat of the day.

Explanation of paragraph 3.

On a hot day, grasshoppers, because they live out in the field among grass get parched, or as Dryden would say "fried," in the sun's heat ; cattle betake themselves to streams or ponds or marshes so that they may avoid the burning ground ; and we men, envy the ducks that swim about on the surface of ponds for they impress us as being delightfully cool, whilst we ourselves are so hot. The roads are thick with dust which becomes very liberally deposited on the foot wear of pedestrians and is carried by the wind on to the trees by the roadside, from there to be again shaken on to the clothes of people walking by them. On a hot, dusty day dogs sent into pools of water to fetch sticks which have been thrown in, on coming out of the water, roll on the dusty ground, and becoming covered with mud run up against the legs of the spectators and dirty their trousers. On such a day too, a fellow with a tight pair of the shoes on who finds at the hour when the sun's rays are hottest that he has three miles further to walk feels most hopelessly miserable.

Para. 4. Sun upon them—i. e., having sunlight pouring into them.

Intolerable—unbearable—(on account of the heat).

Apothecary—one who practises pharmacy, i. e., prepares drugs for medicinal uses

Apprentice—a young boy who is given over, under "articles of apprenticeship" i. e., a contract, to learn a business or trade.

Aloes—a species of plant, native of warm countries, of which the bark is excessively bitter.

Beyond—greater than.

With a . . . aloes—feeling excessively miserable and regretting that he has left school where there was a pond for him to bathe and swim in on a hot day.

Thinks of—i. e., cannot refrain from thinking of.

Men with powdered heads—the servants of great men in England powder their hair so that the colour of the hair appears white. This is a relic of the XVII century, the practice having been brought over into England from the court of Louis XIV.

Thick—i. e., if the hair be thick or growing amply.

Wipe them uphill—on account of the heat the head perspires, and the perspiration causes the hair of the head to hang down over the forehead—so they wipe their head backwards so as to remove the hair from the forehead.

Countenances—faces Expostulate—demonstrate ; reason.

Destiny—fate. Countenances destiny—with faces that are stamped with a look of wretchedness—in short, looking miserable.

Ladle—handle It—i. e., the pump

Forbidden—(most probably) by their parents.

Make a splash—play with water and throw it about on all sides.

Suckers—a small piece of round leather, having a string attached to the centre, which, when saturated with water and pressed upon a stone adheres with such force as to enable a considerable weight to be lifted by the string—used by children as a plaything.

Mighty fishings—great attempts to catch fish, i. e., the tittle-bat.

Tittle-bats—a kind of fish, the *Stickle-bat*.

Explanation of paragraph 4.

On a hot day, a room with the sun's light streaming into it is unbearable, and the young boy who is apprenticed to the apothecary, feeling the heat, recollects with bitter feelings of regret and longing the days when he was at school, where there was a pond to bathe and swim in. On a hot day too, those servants who are constrained to powder their hair regard with envy those who are not so constrained and move about with inexpressible misery stamped on their faces, stopping every now and then to brush the hair back from off their forehead where it hangs down by reason of their hands perspiring. On hot days the boys of the village assemble round the village pump which has a handle to it and splash about in the water until they get their shoes and clothes wet, a proceeding which their parents have forbidden. They also make suckers of leather bathe all day long in rivers and ponds, and being so much near water are tempted to make frantic efforts to catch fish, though fishing in other's waters is prohibited.

Page 159.

Para. 5. Hums along—flies about making a humming noise.

Seems to be—appears to be—because every one feels the heat so much that it seems impossible that even the bee should be talking or complaining of anything else.

Talking heavily—talking sorrowfully of—hence complaining of.

Nowhand—the student will only be required to recollect a day in the month of May in the United Provinces to realize what the author means.

Walled lane—a lane with walls on both sides of it, which of course would increase the heat of the air in the lane.

With dust in it—the presence of dust makes the hot lane much more disagreeable.

Broken bottles in it—to avoid the broken bottles calls for an exercise of attention which is very disagreeable when one is feeling miserably hot.

Near a brick-field—a brick-field is a field where bricks are made. Now bricks have to be baked in fire and the heat given out from a brick-kiln is very unpleasant on a hot day.

A walled.....brick field—the walled lane, the presence of broken bottles in it, and the nearness of the brick-kiln are all circumstances which increase the inconveniences of the heat of the day

Green lane—a lane covered with grass, hence a lane through open fields. *alley*.

Thick-set—planted close to one another.

Hedge-row elms—elm trees planted in a row or series so as to form as if it were a hedge—and which therefore shade the lane.

Rumbling in pebble-stone—flowing over a bed strewn with small stones and hence making a rippling noise. [The noise indicates the presence of flowing water, and on a hot day the mere sight of a stream affords pleasure].

Explanation of paragraph 5.

The bee too, as he hums about, seems, on a hot day to be complaining of the heat; doors and brick-walls are hot to the touch, and a lane with walls on either sides of it, into which has been thrown pieces of broken bottles and near which is also a brick-kiln is so inexpressibly disagreeable that the mere thought of such a place makes one shudder—on the other hand, a lane covered with grass and shaded by rows of elm trees growing on both sides of

it, with a brook in the neighbourhood rippling over a bed covered with little pebbles is, on a hot day, the most pleasant of possible experiences.

[Note—The brook in the neighbourhood of the green lane enhances the charm of the green lane as the presence of the brick kiln near the walled lane, makes it more unpleasant].

Para. 6. [This para. introduces the description of a hot day in town]

Now—on a hot day.

Gossips—garrulous persons; people who cannot refrain from talking—and since they cannot always find appropriate topics for conversation and yet must talk, they spend their time in scandalising others. Gossips=Scandal mongers).

Out of windows—through the open windows of houses.

[It seems that heat stimulates the energy of gossips for they talk the more the hotter it is, perhaps they do so in order not to feel the heat.]

Overpowering—i. e., as regards their strength and energy,—hence fatiguing—(but *note*, they talk all the more nevertheless).

Blinds—are cloth shutters, pulled down in front of glass windows to prevent the glare of the sun's light from entering the room—or in other words “to keep out the glare”—[Blinds are generally fixed on rollers on to the woodwork of a window. *True*]

Let down—pulled down.

Doors thrown open—to let in the breeze. Tea—which is drunk hot.

Continues, &c.—refreshes one notwithstanding that it is taken hot and the day also is a ‘hot day.’ It would be more reasonable to expect that tea-drinking on a hot day would make one feel more hot and “washed out.”

Delight to—take a delight in. Sliver—to divide into thin long strips or pieces.

Lettuce—the popular name of a species of plant which is used as a salad. It has long green leaves which grow from the root one on top of another. It is usual to sever these leaves and to serve the tenderer of them as a salad, to be eaten with cold meat. These leaves are very cool to the taste and hence on a hot day, give rise to a pleasurable sensation when eaten.

People...bowls—delight in making salads, for in so doing they have an anticipation of the pleasure they will get in eating them.

And apprenticescanisters—it is a practice in business places, where people are constantly coming in and going out, bringing dust on their boots, to sprinkle a little water on the doorway to lay the dust and prevent it from spreading into the room. In a shop or warehouse, &c., the duty of sprinkling water on the doorway generally devolves on the apprentice, if any, so that he may be taught what he is to do when he perhaps will have a business place of his own.

Lay—to settle and keep from rising.

Explanation of paragraph 6.

On a hot day, in towns, gossips talk more than ever to one another sitting in rooms, standing in doorways, or through open windows, and though they talk more than ever they invariably start their conversation by saying that the heat of the day is most fatiguing. The reason why they talk more on a hot day is that the unusual heat of the day affords them a topic on which to start a conversation. Having started talking they cannot stop, for it is the nature of a gossip to talk. On a hot day in town the blinds to windows are generally pulled down, flannel waistcoats which are worn on other days are left off, and people prefer to eat cold meat to hot. Women at afternoon tea, express their surprise that though the day is so hot, tea, which is taken hot, should none the less refresh them more on that particular day than on other days. The reason is that the greater heat of the day causes greater fatigue and the temporary relief afforded by drinking tea is therefore more noticeable. On a hot day people take a delight in preparing salads, for the cool sensation experienced in eating them is very pleasurable. In shops and warehouses where numbers of people keep coming in and going out, you can on a hot day see the apprentice employed in every now and then sprinkling water on the doorways from a tin watering can so as to lay the dust.

Para. 7. Water-cart—a cart, made of iron, containing water for the purpose watering the roads.

Jumbling along—moving along making a rattling, disorderly noise.

Middle—centre—the water from the cart is thrown out to both sides, so the water cart moves along the centre of the road in order to water the road from one side of it to the other.

Jolting—jerk—spouting. Water is jerked out because of the cobbled roads over which the cart is moving, causing the cart itself to jolt.

Showers—jets or sprays of water flowing from the little holes in the water tube.

Really does something—confers a real boon on the inhabitants of the street.

Fruiterers'—fruit-sellers'. The sight of the fruit recalls the sensation of eating them, which on a hot day is very pleasant, fruit being cool to the taste

Dairies—shops where milk, butter and cream are sold. The sight of a dairy calls up the sensation of drinking milk, which is a cool drink.

Ices—drinks cooled with ice and ice-creams, &c.

Are the only things—are the only things consumed by (people who can afford to have them)—because of the relief they give from the heat of the day.

Loiter—linger—i. e., remain for a longer time than ordinarily.

People makeflowers—because they afford relief to the eyes from the glare of the sun.

Put into—placed in. Bottles of wine are placed in ice before they are opened so that their contents might get cooled. Putting ice into wine after it has been poured out of the bottle spoils the flavour of the wine.

After-dinner lounge—a person who generally goes out after dinner in the evening—presumably to a club or other place of entertainment. The reference is not to the person who "walks a mile" after dinner for the author uses the word lounge or one who sits about.

Recreates—cools. With application of—by applying to it.

Perfumed water—i. e., scent. Long-necked—bottles having long necks—the reference is to Eau-de-cologne. In Hunt's time all the numberless varieties of scent which are now sold in the market were not known.

Explanation of paragraph 7.

On a hot summer day the water cart which waters and thus cools the road, though it make a rattling, disorderly sound really confers a boon on people. Fruitseller's shops and dairies, because of the sensations they recall, are very agreeable to behold, and those who

are fortunate enough to be able to afford it take nothing, but iced drinks and ice creams and the like. On hot days ladies stay longer than usual in their baths, people make presents of bunches of flowers to them and the dinner wine is put into ice before it is taken at the table; and people who are in the habit of going out in the evening after dinner, and spending some time at a club or other place of entertainment, cool themselves by applying scent to their heads.

Para. 8. Lounger—person without any definite occupation.

Resist—overcome the temptation of.

Feels.....him—because 'jack-boots' or the long-boots worn for riding would be extremely uncomfortable on a hot day.

Buck-skins—riding breeches made of buck-skin (for durability).

Lawn of Cos—lawn is a very fine textured cotton material. Cos is an island in the south-east of the Grecian Archipelago, near the coast of Asia Minor.

Milton speaks of 'Cyprus Lawn' Cf. "Sable stole of Cyprus Lawn." Il penseroso.

Buck-skins.....Cos—buck-skin garments are not so pleasant to wear as clothes made of fine cotton fabrics.

Jockeys—people who make horse riding a profession and at horse races ride other people's horses for a payment.

Walking ..coats—walking about with thick heavy overcoats on.

To lose flesh—so as to grow lighter in weight—the lighter the rider the less weight has the horse to carry and the chances of his going faster are greater.

Curse inwardly—because they are compelled to do something which is exceedingly trying and disagreeable in hot weather.

Hate the sixth, &c.—coaches are made to accommodate six persons inside—but not six unusually stout people. When six 'fat' people get together there naturally is overcrowding, and this is very unpleasant in hot weather.

Thinklarge—curse him for being so 'fat.' Under circumstances such as these people are often apt to overlook their own dimensions.

Page 160.

Spruce-beer—Prussian beer—it is much lighter than English ale.

Read the newspaper—because, owing to the heat, they feel disinclined to do any serious work.

Explanation of paragraph 8.

On a hot day the loungers who cannot resist the temptation of riding his new horse feels extremely uncomfortable in his long boots and buck-skin riding breeches, and realizes that garments made of fine cotton fabrics are far more comfortable and pleasant than those made of thick, heavy material. The jockey who is trying to reduce his weight by walking about in summer with a thick overcoat on also feels the discomfort of unseasonable garments and swears to himself for being under the necessity of so doing. On a hot day five 'fat' passengers by a stage-coach which is built to accommodate six persons, from the unpleasantness of overcrowding if a sixth fat man try to secure a seat, and forgetting entirely their own dimensions, quietly curse the sixth fat man who is trying to get in for being so stout. And clerks in offices on such a day feel hot and lazy and spend most of their time in drinking Prussian light beer and reading the newspaper instead of attending seriously to their office duties.

Para. 9. Old-clothes man—a hawker who buys and sells old clothes, i. e., second-hand clothing.

Drops—sends; shouts.

Solitary—because there is no one else about in the street—the sun being too hot for people to leave the shelter of their houses.

More deeply into—more loudly into, so that it may penetrate and be heard to some distance.

Areas—paved courtyards round which houses in London used to be built. (See illustration facing p. 78).

Bakers—persons who bake bread.

Look vicious—look as if they had lost their temper (because they have to remain in the neighbourhood of an oven which, on a hot day, is very disagreeable).

Aggravated—irritable.

Of a—issuing from a. Tavern kitchen—the kitchen of an inn or public eating house.

Catches hold of us—blows upon us.

The breath of Tartarus—a blast from hell. '*Tartarus*' was, according to classical mythology, that part of the lower regions where the wicked were punished in fire.

Para. 10. Delicate skins—people whose skin is very sensitive to the bites of small insects which fly about, such as mosquitoes.

Beset—pestered. **Sleeping companion**—bed-fellow.

Start up—rise up with a start.

Playing a.....hand—focussing, for the sake of 'fun,' the rays of the sun through a convex lens on to the hand of the other boy who is asleep. Rays of light thus focussed produce an almost burning heat.

Super-carbonated—more than usually covered with coal dust and coal smuts which stick more than ever to the body because of the excessive perspiration caused by the combined heat of the day and that from the furnace.

Cobblers—shoe-makers. Stalls—little shops.

Transplanted—be elsewhere—they wish 'they were dead.'

Too easy—i. e., to be nice. Butter does not taste so nice in a melted condition as it does when it is hard.

To spread—i. e., on a slice of bread.

Dragoons—a particular regiment of cavalry. The dragoons have to wear helmets made of metal—it is a part of their uniform.

Wonder.....helmets—the dragoon feel very uncomfortable with their metal helmets on and wonder whether the Roman soldiers who wore similar helmets felt like them

Lappet—a part of a garment that hangs loose. Unpinned—not fastened.

In.....a dilapidation—with their dress all loose and hanging anyhow about them.

Lookhot—appear as hot as common people who have to do manual labour—a state in which they should not appear before people with refined tastes and susceptibilities lest they disgust or offend their feelings.

Finds he ..writing—feels he cannot write on with the strawberries before him, tempting him to eat them, (note remark on p. 159 of the text—"now fruiterers' shops and dairies look pleasant").

Explanation of paragraph 10.

On a hot day people with sensitive skins are pestered with gnats and boys play practical jokes on their bed-fellows, before whom they should happen to wake up, by focussing on their hands rays of light through a convex len. Blacksmiths appear more than ever covered with coal dust and coal smuts, whilst the shoe-maker sitting in the stifling atmosphere of his little shop wishes he were dead. Butter becomes melted and not at all pleasant to eat on

bread. The dragoon guards who have to wear metal helmets as part of their uniform wonder whether the Roman soldiers who wore metal helmets like themselves felt as uncomfortable as they do. Old women, on account of the heat, get so careless about their dress that they walk about the streets with their lappets unpinned and their garments hanging about them anyhow. Servant girls become very red in the face and hands and fear they look too much like farm servants to be able to appear before the more refined people in towns without disgusting them. And the author too finds he cannot go on writing any more, for he has had a plate of strawberries brought to him and the temptation of eating them at once is overpowering.

Summary.

1. In early morning, in the summer, the atmosphere is changed with unhealthy vapours. These however are dissipated when the sun rises and shines fiercely in the sky.

2. Labourers in the fields work more slowly on account of the heat and feel thirsty oftener. Travellers in stage-coaches visit ale houses frequently and seem to require a glass of 'ale,' every ten minutes. The horses stretch their necks out of their collars in their eagerness to get to the trough.

3. Grasshoppers get parched in the sun; cattle stand in water and ducks are envied. Thick layers of dust are to be seen everywhere. Walking is very troublesome and annoying.

4. Sunlight is very disagreeable. Men with powdered hair feel very uneasy and uncomfortable and step every now and then to brush the hair back from off their foreheads. Boys play with water, make suckers and fish in prohibited waters for tittle-bats.

5. The bee even seems to complain of the heat. A narrow lane is suffocating whilst a lane through green fields in the country lined with hedge-grow elms is pleasing to the senses.

6. Gossips in towns talk more than ever but always introduce their conversation with remarking on the excessiveness of the heat. Blinds are pulled down in front of windows and all warm clothing is left off. Tea in the afternoon is refreshing and making salads delightful. Cold meats are preferred to hot food.

7. The water cart confers a great boon by laying the dust and cooling the atmosphere. Ices are the only things one likes to eat in the hot weather. Bathing is very pleasant. Perfumes are refreshing. Fruits look tempting and so does milk.

8. Riding makes one hot and so is an unpleasant exercise. Walking is the same. Overcrowding is intolerable. Serious work of any description is very disagreeable.

9. The streets are deserted—bakers look vicious, cooks are irritable and the steam from a tavern kitchen blows upon us like a blast from hell.

10. Gnats begin to get troublesome. Butter melts and becomes oily. Military uniforms are unpleasant to wear, and ladies give up tight lacing for the time being and go about loosely dressed.

ESSAY XXII.

A "NOW" DESCRIPTIVE OF A COLD DAY.—Leigh Hunt.

Page 160.

Motto—'Now, all amid the rigours of the year'—this line is taken from Thomson's *winter*—

'Now, all amid the rigours of the year,
In the wild depth of winter, while without.
The ceaseless winds blow ice, be my retreat, &c., &c.

Para. 1. Us—me. Authors usually speak of themselves in the plural number.

A 'Now'—i. e., an essay the sentences and paragraphs of which begin with the word 'now'

At this minute—at the present moment. State—condition.

At once—both (at the same time)

Fit and unfit for the task—'fit' in the sense of having at command the ideas necessary to write an essay on the subject, it being then the depth of winter—and for that very reason also 'unfit' because the cold has numbed his fingers and made writing a very difficult and unpleasant operation.

Being—i. e., the author being.

Page 161.

Had it . ends—the expression having anything 'at one's fingers ends' literally means knowing it so perfectly as to be able to say it without having to think, but here it is used with a pun on it meaning that the tips of his fingers were benumbed with cold.

This—the fact of it being at the present time very cold.

Helps us—assists us. If a person has the feelings about which he is writing at the time when he writes about them, he is enabled to handle his subject in a more realistic and graphic manner.

Set off—begin ; commence.

Right taste—has a double meaning—(1) correct appreciation of the subject of the essay, it being then cold and the author feeling it and (2) a liking for the subject as being appropriate to the conditions of the time.

Clicking in our ear—which we can hear is burning with a pleasant clicking (cracking) sound.

Handle it comfortably—make us comfortable and warm whilst we write. Having felt the cold the author is in a position to give a realistic 'Now' description of a cold day—the fire which is burning in the room will soon warm the temperature of the room, make the writer comfortably warm, remove the numbness of his fingers, and thus put him into the humour to write by removing all bodily discomfort.

[The author only speaks of the removal of the impediments in the way of the act of writing—he says nothing of the quality of the work he will execute].

Explanation of paragraph 1.

I have been asked by a friend to write a 'Now' description of a cold day to supplement the 'Now' description of a hot day which I have already written. I accept my friend's suggestion and accordingly set out to do so. But at the present moment I am both fit and unfit for the task. I am fit because I feel the cold of the day and am therefore in a position to give a realistic account of a cold day. I am unfit because my fingers are benumbed with the cold which makes the work of writing very disagreeable. However, the fact of my feeling cold will enable me to commence my essay with a just appreciation of the subject whilst the fire which is burning in the room will soon remove all my bodily discomfort.

Para. 2. Now, then, to commence—so let me begin.

But first—but before I get on to my subject let me first say something on the use of the word 'Now' for, the reader, &c., &c.

Good-natured—kind.

To have a regard for—to like to read (notwithstanding the many faults which a severe criticism might disclose).

These papers—these essays. Choose—desire ; prefer ; like.

Told—informed. Of the...use—of how the word first came to be used.

Striking—remarkable—Convenience—facility.

Thomson—James Thomson, an English poet of the XVIII century, who is regarded by critics as the best of English descriptive poets. His best known works are 'the seasons' and 'The Castle of Indolence.' Born 1700 ; Died 1748.

Thereby, &c.—because it, &c.

World of trouble—great deal of trouble.

Bringing about—effecting.

Nicer conjunction—a more elegant way of joining together.

Now . brooks—this is a line from Thomson's '*Spring*.' (l. 379).

Foul torrent—flow of muddy water.

Now flaming up to heaven...sun—this is a line from Thomson's '*Summer*.'

Flaming up to a heaven—rising up in the sky like a flame.

Potent—powerful ; blazing

Nowsky—this is a line from Thomson's '*Winter*.' (Line 41).

Cheerless empire...sky—sunless 'expanse of sky—this is the case in winter in countries situated in the northern latitudes.

But now—when now—where now—for now, '&c.—other lines, not quoted in full, commence in this way Hunt illustrates how the word 'Now' is found convenient by descriptive writers to link together the different parts of their subject

Explanation of paragraph 2.

So let me begin, but before I get on to my subject let me say something on the use of the word "Now," because the reader who may be indulgent enough to like to read these essays may desire to know how the word first came to be used in this connection. The use of "Now" in this connection was suggested to me by the remarkable facility it has afforded to descriptive writers such as Thomson of joining together different parts of their subject without the expenditure of much trouble or care I will give you a few instances of the manner in which the word 'Now' has been utilised by Thomson—.

Para. 3. We say nothing of—the preceding remarks do not apply to, for we are not concerned with.

Of a certain 'But'—of the use of the Greek equivalent for the word *But* in a particular way by certain classical Greek writers.

And so—these two words are very frequently used by writers of children's stories because it enables them to leave out of their narrative much which would not be understood by their juvenile readers, and yet to present a connected and complete story 'And so' serves the purpose of therefore, supplying an implied reason for a conclusion.

Business—present concern.

Indigenous—i. e., of native growth—hence, the familiar English word 'Now.'

No other 'Now'—No foreign equivalent.

So present—so familiar, and hence so thoroughly understood.

So instantaneous—so swift in conveying the exact meaning.

So extremely Now—so thoroughly characteristic.

Our own—the English word.

Now of the Latins—the Latin word for now.

Nunc, or jam, ..himself—the word most generally used in Latin literature for the word 'Now' is *Nunc*—but the word *Jam* is also used, though less commonly.

Fellow . ages—*Nunc* and *Jam* are words of a dead language.

He is no Now—being part of a dead language, these words cannot properly express the idea expressed by the word 'Now' which emphatically refers to the immediate present.

Is older—is still more ancient—because the Greek language is older than Latin.

How can . Then—how can the Greek or Latin equivalent for the English word 'Now' express precisely the same idea as the word 'now' itself. If we use the Latin or Greek equivalent for the English 'Now' instead of the word 'Now' itself, we shall have our thoughts carried back to the days of the Roman or Greek ascendancy, and we should then have the absurdity of one word blending ideas both of present and of past time.

A 'now-then' as we sometimes...it—Now then is a phrase often employed to mark off a stage in an argument and means 'and therefore.' It, so to speak, combines the idea of past time with that of present time, because it connects that which has gone before in the course of the argument with what is now coming. Hunt says

the practice of making a compound word of these two words is vulgar. The vulgarity arises from the endeavour to express by what is meant to be one word inconsistent ideas. It is very much like endeavouring to convey the idea of present time by the use of the Latin or Greek word for 'now.'

Page 162.

'Now' and 'then'—another expression very much used, meaning occasionally

Intelligible—is capable of having a sensible meaning put upon it—because the words expressing present and past time respectively are separated by the word 'and.'

Extravagance—conceit—abnormality of language—unusual use of words

Fit—suitable.

Delicious—extremely happy—so happy, that the person is carried away by his happiness and is scarcely conscious of what he is saying.

About to crack his bottle—being drinking. The phrase 'crack his bottle' has its origin in the noise made in extracting a cork from a bottle.

Run...lady—to elope with a lady. **Open**--commence ; begin.

To carve.. chine—about to eat turkey and ham—i. e. a gentle man who is present at a banquet 'Chine' properly means the spine and backbone, but is usually applied to a joint containing part of the backbone and other adjoining portion of the animal. Chine here stands for the ham which is usually eaten along with turkey.

Pelt—throw. **Snow-balls**—balls made of loose snow by pressing the particles of snow together with the hands. Throwing snow-balls at each other is a form of sport much indulged in by boys. A grown up person however, who would take pleasure in throwing snow-balls would not pay a high compliment to his sanity, and hence such a person could also indulge in such a barbarous use of language as to combine 'now' and 'then' into one compound word.

Commit—do ; indulge in.

Ultra-vivacity—unusual liveliness or jollity—'ultra' is a Latin prefix meaning 'beyond'

Excuses a man from—justifies a man in deviating from.

Nicer proprieties of language—the more refined forms of expression.

Excuses ..language—justifies a man's using extravagant language.

Explanation of paragraph 3.

The particular meaning conveyed by the use of the word 'Now.' cannot be conveyed by the use of any foreign equivalent whether of a modern language or of a dead language. Any foreign equivalent for the word 'Now' would have gathered round it ideas by association which perhaps the English word has not. Similarly the use of the Latin or the Greek word for 'now' by carrying our thoughts back to the days of the Roman or Greek ascendancy would unite in one word the ideas of present and past time which would be absurd. The use by writers and speakers of the compound word '*now then*' is for obvious reasons vulgar. Such a deviation from the ordinary use of language can only be tolerated in those whose senses are deprived of their sobriety by reason of the unusually jolly frame of mind in which they are in.

Para. 4. But to begin—and now to go direct to my subject (having given some account of the use of the word '*now*.')

[N. B.—No explanation is given of this paragraph because it consists only of the words "But to begin"].

Para. 5. Now—in winter. The moment—as soon as. Perceive—feel

With their faces—the face not being covered over the cold air in the room strikes against it and produces the sensation referred to.

No doubt, before the air in Leigh Hunt's room was heated by the fire, he perceived the cold with his face.

Warm ..bodies - their bodies are warm because they are covered with warm clothes

'Here's a day'—it is indeed an exceedingly cold, typical winter day.

Pity—feel compassion for.

Poor little sweep—the miserable little sweeper boy who ill-fed and ill-clad has to be out in the raw cold of a winter morning to sweep the streets.

Boy with the water-cresses—the boy who goes about from street to street selling water-cress. Water-cress is a kind of plant that grows in water and is eaten as a salad. The reason why the water-cress boy is pitied more than boys hawking other things is stated in the sentence which follows.

Ditch—pond—(in which the water is very cold) Marvellous—wonderful.

Great lumps . falling—the sound of falling snow. Snow would only make a sound in falling if it got congealed in its passage through the atmosphere and fell in hard lumps on to the ground. Usually there is no noise accompanying snow-fall. The writer takes this exceptional case to emphasise the extreme coldness of the day.

Thick with snow—covered with a thick layer of snow.

The breath is visible—the breath issuing from our mouths is quickly congealed on coming into contact with the cold air of the room and appears as steam. (This can be seen any morning in the winter in these provinces)

Explanation of paragraph 5.

On a cold day people, immediately on waking up in the morning, feel the cold air of their bed-rooms strike against their faces though their bodies are warm because they are covered over with blankets, and they exclaim to themselves "Here's a day"! Kind-hearted people pity the poor little sweeper boys who, notwithstanding the cold, have to turn out insufficiently clothed, early in the morning to sweep the streets and the water-cress seller who has to go into cold water to gather the cress. Everybody in fact wonders how it can be possible for any person to go into a pond on a morning like this. It sometimes is so cold that even the snow in falling to the earth becomes congealed so that it makes a noise on coming into contact with the ground and the roofs of houses. If at such a time we look out of the window, we shall soon see the roofs of neighbouring houses become very quickly covered with a thick layer of snow. The breath as it issues from our mouths also becomes congealed on coming into contact with the cold air in the room, so that as we lie on our backs we can actually see it mixing, in the form of steam, with the air in the room.

Para. 6. Hate getting up—dislike getting out of bed because it is warm under the bed clothes but cold in the room.

Hate shaving—because water has to be applied to the face in shaving. Even hot-water gets very quickly cold when the temperature of the atmosphere is very low.

Empty grate—fire-place without a fire in it. It is considered very unhealthy to have a fire in a bed-room on account of the gas which escapes from the burning mineral coal. Therefore a fire is not generally lighted in a bed-room unless the occupant is ill and a fire has been ordered by the medical attendant.

Ewers—jugs used to hold water for purposes of washing the face and hands. It is usually kept in the bed-room on a table called the "washhand stand."

You may hardness—water soaked in wet towels gets frozen, so that the towel becomes so hard that it can be made to stand on end

Window panes—the sheets or pieces of glass set in the wooden framework of windows

Frost whitened—covered with a layer of white frost.

It is foggy - i. e. a dense fog is spreading in the air. A fog is caused by the particles of moisture floating in the air collecting round them minute particles of coal dust or other solid impurities which makes them heavy, and so prevent them from rising from the ground. Fogs are more frequent in towns than in the open country.

Brazen—dull, like the colour of brass.

Dull, brazen beam—dim, cheerless light. Because the light of the sun cannot penetrate the gloom of the thick fog. Sometimes a fog is so dense as to shut out the sun's rays absolutely.

If it is fine - if the morning is clear. **Outside**—that side which is exposed to the outer air

Stuck . **icicles**—have icicles adorning to them. The moisture in the air which is deposited on the outside of the windows becomes frozen and forms thin strips or little lumps of ice, called icicles.

Detestable—hateful

Thaw—the process of snow melting into water. When the temperature rises, all the snow which is about either in the form of snow or frozen as ice, begins to melt and become converted into water

A thaw is spoken of as hateful because the roads become slushy as after a shower of rain, and water drips from the roofs of houses, from the branches of trees and so on.

Begun—set in. **They drip**—water trickles down the outside of the windows in consequence of the conversion of the icicles into water and this water drips on to the ground below.

At all events—in any case—(whether it be frosty, foggy or a thaw have set in).

Horribly—dreadfully.

Delicate shavers—people with tender skins which become irritated when shaved in cold weather.

Fidget—move restlessly and uneasily. **Chambers**—rooms.

Looking distressed—Of. "looking a picture of misery"—Looking miserable (at the thought of having to undergo the unpleasant process of shaving).

Cherish in their bosoms—place under their clothes, in order to warm it a little before using it

Hard-hearted—inconsiderate—having no feeling for the distress of others.

Enemy—the razor is called an enemy because it inflicts pain when used early on a cold morning.

Coax .. chins—by placing both hand and the razor under warm clothes both hand and razor are warmed, that the razor does not feel so cold and the hand loses some of its numbness thereby lessening the danger of cutting the chin. In shaving the face, round the chin is the most difficult part to shave, and most people cut themselves round about there. The literal meaning is, 'by flattering the razor induce him not to cut the chin.'

Savage is a cut—a cut on a cold morning is really most painful.

Makes them—obliges the shaver.

Think destiny .. hard—to think that one's fate cannot really be evaded, for, in spite of all their precautions they could not avoid getting cut.

Explanation of paragraph 6.

On a winter morning one does not feel disposed to get out of bed or to shave, and the sight of the empty grate in the bed-room, without a fire burning in it is hateful. The water in the jug on the washhand stand is frozen, the window panes are covered with a layer of frost and the towel is so hard that it can almost be made to stand on end. Winter mornings are of three kinds :—they may be foggy in which case the sun can only send a dim, cheerless light into rooms, or they may be fine, in which case the outside of windows will be stuck with icicles, or the temperature of the atmosphere having risen a most hateful thaw will have set in which will cause roads to be slushy, and the roofs of houses and the branches of trees to drip. But whatever kind of morning it may be, it will be sure to be very cold. People with delicate skins will feel nervous and uneasy about their shaving and will try to warm their razors and their hands by placing both under their warm clothes for a time in order to make the razor feel less cold, as also to lessen the chances of cutting themselves, whilst shaving round the chin.

A cut during shaving is, on a cold morning, exceedingly painful, and those who, after taking all these precautions still cut themselves, cannot but think that fate is really unconquerable

Page 163.

Para. 7. Is fine —is really enjoyable.

Seem to laugh at us—on account of the miserable look we have on our faces when we enter the breakfast room.

Herebedchamber—because there is a fire in this room whereas there was none in the bed-room.

Always—invariably—(this is instinctive).

Poke it—stir it up with a poker, so as to make it blaze brightly.

Grow—become. Selfish—inclined to think of self only and to have no regard for the comforts of others.

About—in connection with securing.

Your blood is young—you being young your blood has more animal heat than that of older people, so you don't feel so cold as they do.

Truly—really ; actually.

That.....case—this is not a correct conclusion to arrive at ; boys feel the cold as much as grown up people. (Elders do exercise a sort of tyrannical sway over their youngsters in this connection)

Albeit—although. Too hard—extremely hard and therefore difficult to spread on bread

Rolls—a kind of bread made in the shape of a roll especially for the breakfast table—it is less solid than ordinary bread.

Toast—a slice of bread cut from a loaf and toasted near a fire

Are at their maximum—the demand for them at the breakfast table reaches its maximum on account of the appetites of the people being sharpened by the cold, and also because rolls and toast are eaten hot

Former—i. e., the rolls. Glorious —very tempting. Issue out—are taken out.

Smoking—hot. Come—i. e., come wrapped in—(to keep them hot)

People who come with single knocks at the door—either with a message, to deliver something or to take orders. These classes of people knock only once at the door to indicate the nature of their

mission—visitors are recognized by their knocking several times in succession on the door.

Are pitied—because of the contrast between their situation and that of the people inside the house who are seated comfortably at breakfast in a warm room.

Voices . streets—boys are shouting in the streets whilst engaged in, &c.

Sliding—this is a feat which is accomplished generally without any skates on the feet—whenever the ground is covered with snow boys delight in taking a sharp run for a short distance and then sliding along over the snow by virtue of the impetus to move forward which the body has acquired in the course of the run The ground being covered with snow the obstruction caused by friction is reduced.

Dustman—see note on Essay XXI. Para. 11.

Sounds cold—the sound of a bell suggests the idea of metal, and the idea of a metal bell is associated with a feeling of something cold to the touch.

Selling fish—because fish is cold to the touch.

Hoarse voice—caused by sore-throat brought on by cold.

The unpleasantness of being out in the cold is a sufficient infliction—it is hard to realize how people can bear in addition the further discomfort of shouting out whilst they have a sore throat, a performance which must be exceedingly painful.

Hate their slates—because they are very cold to the touch.

Blow their fingers--their fingers get benumbed with the cold and the boys blow them to warm them.

Detest infinitely—heartily hate.

The no-fire—the fact of there being no fire in the school-room—the idea is that the presence of fire in the school-rooms would tend to make the boys effeminate whilst the absence of fire will make them hardy.

Parish beadle—an inferior church officer, having a variety of duties, such as the preservation of order during church service, the chastisement of petty offenders, &c.

Redder than ever—drinking a large quantity of beer gives one a red nose. The redness of the beadle's nose caused by beer drinking is increased by his wiping it in cold weather when he frequently suffers from a cold in the head.

Explanation of paragraph 7.

On a cold winter morning breakfast is very enjoyable, and as we enter the breakfast room where there is a fire with a miserable look on our faces, the fire seems to laugh at our wretchedness and say 'Ha! ha! here's a better room than the bedchamber.' As if instinctively, the first thing we invariably do on entering the room is to stir up the fire so as to make it blaze brightly; then follows a scramble for seats nearest the fire, in trying to secure which everyone seems to act selfishly, grown up people almost acting tyrannically towards boys, telling them that their blood is young and so they don't feel the cold, a by no means correct conclusion to arrive at even though it should be admitted that young blood has more animal heat than old. On a cold day butter becomes very hard and exceedingly difficult to spread out on bread, and our appetites being sharpened by the cold, breakfast rolls and toast are in great demand, especially the rolls which look very tempting as they are taken out hot from the flannel in which they come wrapped from the baker's. When we ourselves feel so comfortable, everyone else who is differently situated excites our compassion and we pity their lot. The noisy voices of boys can be heard coming from the street where they are either sliding or throwing snow-balls; and the sound of the dust man's metal bell sends a shiver through us by calling up ideas of cold things. On cold winter mornings school boys detest their slates because they are cold to touch and blow their benumbed fingers to warm them, and think the argument which denies them a fire in the school-room most senseless. The parish beadle's nose appears redder than ever because he has a cold in the head and has been rubbing his nose.

Para. 8. Rich—grand—i. e., pleasant.

Hopping about—jumping or sitting about hither and thither.

Crumbs—bread crumbs; tiny fragments of bread.

Look—appear. Wiry—thin—because the leaves have fallen off them. In cold countries trees shed their leaves in winter.

Cheerless—because they have been denuded of their leaves. Albeit—although.

Evergreens—a species of plant that keep green all through the year and hence never shed their leaves. Birch—a kind of tree. Boughs—branches.

Dishevelled—disordered. Stiff—hard, because it is frozen.

Kennel—gutter; drain along the side of the road.

Ices over--is covered with ice ; the water in the drain becomes frozen.

Illegal--forbidden. **Slide**--narrow paths along which to slide.

Pathways--narrow roads paved with stones or covered with cement.

Make ..pathways--sliding over any particular strip of a path-way makes that part very slippery and people are apt to slip--hence the making of slides is forbidden.

Ashes . doors--to prevent people from slipping on the ice.

Strewed--spread out ; thrown down. **Doors**--entrance to houses.

Crunch--crush with a grinding sound. **Tread**--step on the ground.

Kick--scatter with your feet ; throw up as you walk. **Mud-flakes**--thin, tiny masses of frozen mud.

Horribly--dreadfully ; extremely. **Cities**--large, busy towns.

Horribly...cities--because of the traffic in the streets of large towns.

Hard frost--if it be freezing quickly--this would indicate very great cold.

All the world--almost every one.

Buttoned up--button up their outer garments so as to keep out the cold.

Great-coated--wear overcoats.

Ostentatious--fond of showing that they do not feel the cold--and indirectly therefore that they are not so old as they appear to be.

Page 164.

Pretended beggars--beggars who pretend that they have no warm clothes to wear in winter.

Delicious--delightful--delicious is a word applied to taste, and as the man is selling roasted apples or potatoes, both eatables, the use of the word is very appropriate.

Vendor--seller. In spite.....hot--notwithstanding that he is selling 'hot' things.

Stamping--thumping or knocking his feet upon the ground in order to warm them. The feet get very cold through standing on cold ground.

Up and down—whilst walking backwards and forwards—(in order to stimulate the circulation of the blood).

Explanation of paragraph 8.

In the winter season all kinds of sounds seem to be dull and the smoke issuing from chimney pots looks grand and warm, and we pity the poor birds exposed to the cold which hop about from place to place for bread crumbs. Trees look thin because they are denuded of their leaves although to the imaginative person they seem still to be beautiful, especially the evergreen and the birch whose branches resemble disordered hair on women's heads. In the winter the mud in the streets becomes hard and the water in the drain along the side of the street becomes covered with a coating of ice. Boys mischievously make slides on pathways, and ashes are scattered in front of doorways, and you as you walk along the street either crush with a grinding sound the snow on the road under your feet or scatter with your feet tiny masses of frozen mud, or if you are in a town, you find it dreadfully muddy. But should it be freezing quickly, every one will be wearing big overcoats which are buttoned up, except old gentlemen who do not wish to show that they are old and therefore they feel the cold, and those who pretend to be beggars and who therefore go about with naked feet to excite pity. The roasted apple and potato vendors' delightful cry of "All hot" is heard though the vendor himself is cold, and little boys cannot imagine why he should eat cold meat for his dinner in preference to his hot apples or potatoes.

Para. 9. On the alert—on the look out for an opportunity.

Cutler—a man who deals in knives, scissors, &c.

Abound with—skating shoes are exhibited at.

Swift shoes—skating shoes are made of iron or steel, their soles being perfectly smooth. These iron shoes are fastened on to the ordinary wearing boots.

The scene of action—where the skating is going on.

Pond or canal—which is usually either a pond or canal.

Grinding noise—the noise made when any brittle thing is crushed—this noise is produced by the rubbing of the surface of the skates against the surface of the ice.

To and fro—as people move to and fro whilst skating.

See tumbles—see some of the skaters fall down.

Banbury cake-men—sellers of Banbury cakes—a well known kind of cakes, originally made at Banbury, a town in Oxfordshire.

Blackguard boys—mischievous boys ; ill-behaved, naughty boys.
Shivering—trembling with cold.

Any body but—any body so long as he was not a brother—as a rule when other young men are about, a brother is the least interesting person to his sister, who would prefer talking to other girl's brothers

Cutting figures of eight—skating backwards and forwards so as to cover a path resembling the arithmetical figure 8—Expert skaters alone can do this.

For his part—so far as he is concerned.

Figure—i. e., the figure he is cutting in the eyes of others—hence 'figure' here means both the perfect shape and proportions of his body as well as the skill of his performance at skating.

Affect to—pretend to—in reality they feel very cross and ashamed.

Thump—hit ; strike **By-standers**—the lookers-on who have seen them fall, and who have laughed at it. It is natural to laugh when we see any one tumble, however, serious the consequences of that tumble may be.

Thawing days—days on which the ice on the surface of the ponds and canals begins to melt.

Idlers—people who have no serious occupation.

Persist ... skating—keep on skating up to the last moment skating is possible. Skating becomes impossible when by reason of a thaw setting in ice begins to melt and the layer of ice formed on the surface of a sheet of water becomes too thin to bear the weight of the human body.

Slush—the mixture of water and melting ice.

Bending—because it is becoming less firm owing to the thaw which has set in.

Humane-society-man—the Royal Humane Society, established in 1774 has for its object the saving of life from drowning. During the skating season the society sends men to the various sheets of water round about London to assist in saving skaters from drowning should the ice break.

Ferocious—savagely angry. Because skating over melting ice is dangerous and might result in drowning, in which case, the Humane-Society-Man will have to go into the cold water to rescue the drowning person.

The deaths—i. e., drown them.

At once warm and numb in the feet—you feel warm because of the exercise you have been taking, but your feet feel numb 'from the tight effect of the skates' which interferes with the free circulation of the blood.

Carry them—carry your skates in your hands on your way back from skating.

Ostentatious air of indifference—"a boastful attitude of proud concern."

Done wonders—accomplished a feat really wonderful.

Whereas—whilst the real fact is.

Fairly had three slips—you have tumbled down three times by reason of your bad skating and not because some one else came into collision with and pushed you down.

Barely achieveedge—just manage to skate along by the edge of the sheet of ice, as there are not many skaters in that part and you have not to suddenly stop yourself or turn about much. Expert skaters keep to the middle of the pond or the canal because there they can display their dexterity in suddenly stopping and twisting about, thereby also keeping themselves in practice.

Explanation of paragraph 9.

When the weather becomes very cold, skaters look out for opportunities for skating and cutlors' shop windows are adorned with skates to tempt people to buy them. On nearing a pond or canal where people are skating you hear the grinding noise of the skates as they rub against the surface of the ice, you see people falling down, and the Banbury-cake-man engaged with a group of naughty boys in playing hockey on the ice. Ladies stand near the edge of the ice, shivering in the cold, and watch the skating admiring the performances of any one rather than their own brother, especially that of the man who is cutting figures of eight and who on his part is taken up in admiring his own figure. Beginners keep on tumbling at which they laugh, but their laughter is only pretended, they really feel annoyed and ashamed and secretly wish to hit the spectators for laughing at their falls. On days on which the ice melts, people who have no serious occupation insist on skating on the thin sheet of ice up to the last moment that skating

is possible. This is very dangerous, and these people therefore become a source of anxiety and possibly of annoyance to the Royal Humane-Society-Man who is so angered at their conduct that he inwardly wishes to drown them instead of save them from drowning. When you have finished skating, you feel warm in your body on account of the exercise you have had, but your feet are numb because the tightness of the skates has interfered with the free circulation of the blood in your feet, and taking off the skates, with them in your hands, you walk away with a boastful attitude of proud unconcern as if in the skating arena you had really achieved something astonishing, whereas the truth is that you have had three falls because of your bad skating and have all along kept along the edge of the ice to avoid difficult situations which require a good deal of skill to get out of.

Para. 10. Look sharp—remain watchful all the time lest their horses should slip on the ice and fall. Unless too late, a horse can generally be stopped from falling by pulling the reins tight.

Seem brittle in the legs—move their legs in such a manner as to give one the impression that bending them ever so slightly would cause them to break.

Old gentlemen feel so—old people who are generally sufferers from rheumatism find it very painful to bend their legs.

Coachmen—drivers of private carriages.

Cabmen—drivers of hackney carriages. The word cab when used by itself means simply a hackney carriage but when 'handsome cab' is spoken of a particular kind of hackney carriage is meant.

Swing theirsides—move their arms about vigorously (to stimulate the circulation of the blood.)

Page 165.

Look pleasant—because of the brightly blazing fire in the furnace.

Detestable—hateful—because potatoes are cold looking things.

Fishmonger's—fish shops. Still more so—because fish is colder looking than potatoes.

Plash—a small pool—(the sight of wet fish suggests that of water in which they live).

Live.....window—remain in an open stall on a raw, cold day surrounded with wet fish.

. Men from behind counters—i. e., bank clerks—a counter is a table edged round with a railing on which money is counted when it either is paid into a bank or paid out by the bank.

Chariot—carriage.

Hardly think ..chariot—do not consider even the honour of speaking to a noble lady sufficient to compensate them for the discomfort of having to go out in the cold—i. e., even going out to speak to a noble and rich customer is considered a nuisance.

Wheezy—coughing and making a wheezing noise whilst breathing because of having cold on the chest.

Effeminate—feeble-looking. **Hatless**—without a hat on; bare-headed.

Aproned—wearing an apron. **with**—having.

Graphic--having the power of caricaturing characteristic peculiarities happily.

Cruikshank—George Cruikshank, an English artist, was born in 1792. He acquired skill in caricature at an early age, and for upwards of fifty years contributed illustrations to magazines and other publications

Noticeth—sketches—represents the pastry-cook.

Chilling his household warmth—making the atmosphere of his house quite cold.

Cellar—an underground chamber where coal, ice, &c., are stored.

Miss Joneses—young ladies. **Muff**—a covering for receiving both hands to keep them warm. They are made in the shape of a padded tube with openings at either end. The outer cover is generally of some kind of fur, and between it and the lining there is a layer of cotton wool.

Furs—jackets made of fur, and necklets of fur for wrapping round the neck (something like a comforter)

Steps—the steps leading up to the front door of the house.

Explanation of paragraph 10.

On a cold day when it is freezing out in the open, riders are ever watchful lest their horses slip on the ice, whilst the horses themselves move their legs in such a way as to give one the impression that the slightest attempt to bend them would cause them to break; old gentlemen suffering from rheumatism also find that bending their legs is very painful. Coachmen and cabbies who have to sit

still on their coach boxes in the cold move their arms about vigorously to stimulate the circulation of their blood and thereby keep them warm. Blacksmiths' shops, because of the blazing fire in the furnace, look pleasant, whilst the cold look of potatoes and of fish makes potatoe shops and fish shops look detestable, and we wonder how a fishmonger can remain in his open stall surrounded by his little pile of wet fish. In offices clerks envy their fellow clerk who has been fortunate enough to have the seat next the fire place allotted to him, and bank clerks look upon it as a nuisance having to leave their counters even to attend to some noble lady customer who is waiting outside in her carriage. The feeble looking pastry-cook coughs, and in breathing makes a wheezing sound as bare-headed, with his hands in his trouser pockets, and with an apron on he stands outside his door attending to the ice which has been brought and seeing to its being put in the cellar. Young ladies with their hands in muffs, with fur jackets on, and with furs round their necks look comfortable and warm. And the baker who is told by the servant girl cleaning the front door steps that she does not feel cold finds it hard to believe her.

Para. 11. Rejoiceth—makes glad. The gatherers together—the members of the family who assemble at the dinner table to dine together.

Gout defleth the morrow—people suffering from the gout grow careless as to how they may feel on the next day.

Thinking it.....bottle—and indulge in extra doses of liquor, justifying their action with the argument that the coldness of the day makes their drinking necessary. The gout is a disease which is aggravated by taking alcoholic stimulants.

Sofa—is a long seat with a stuffed bottom, back and sides—a drawing room couch.

Wheeled round to the fire—pulled up to the fire. The legs of drawing room furniture are usually fitted with little wheels or castors, as they are called, to facilitate their being moved about in the room.

Burn their legs—warm their feet by placing them so close to the fire that in time the leather of their boots gets so hot as almost to burn the feet.

Little boys their faces—little boys put their faces close up to the fire.

Tormented betweencomplexions—are uncertain as to what they shall do,—whether they will sacrifice the delicacy of their

complexions and warm themselves by sitting close to the fire or they will endure the cold and preserve their complexions.

Freeze—get numbed with the cold. At the pianoforte—as they sit playing the piano—note—a piano is an expensive piece of furniture, and lest the varnish should get blistered, it is usually kept at some distance from the fire

Vex—annoy. In the fire—so close to the fire that her knees seem almost thrust into the fire.

Theyspoil—that her grand nieces should not be spoilt by being allowed to have too much their own way.

Explanation of paragraph 11.

On a cold day people are delighted when dinner time arrives for the cold has sharpened their appetites, and gouty people indifferent to the consequences, make the cold an excuse for drinking more than is good for them. After dinner is over the members of a family make themselves comfortable round the drawing room fire, the men sitting so close to it as almost to burn their feet, and the boys their faces; the young ladies on the other hand usually keep at some distance from the fire preferring rather to bear the cold than spoil their complexions, and play the piano though their fingers are numbed with the cold because they are afraid that refusal to do so will annoy their grand-aunt who is desirous above everything else that her grand-nieces should not be spoilt by being allowed to have their own way in every thing.

Para. 12. Muffin-bell—see notes on Essay XXI, para. 11.

Soundeth sweetly—the sound of the muffin bell is pleasant to hear—because it reminds one of the muffins which the man is selling.

Page 166.

Play goers—people fond of the theatre and who therefore go to see performances very frequently.

Get—suffer from. Invalids—chronic sufferers from illness.

Stop up—close up. Crevice—small opening in a door or wall.

Stop up...room—so as to prevent a cold draught coming into the room.

And make themselves worse—but in trying to keep out draughts they also shut out the access of fresh air, and by remaining in a stuffy room they feel rather worse than better.

Comparatively silent—not so frequented by people as they would be where it not so cold—hence there is also less noise in the streets

Rises ..moanings—makes a moaning sound as it blows now strongly, now feebly.

Burns blue—because in a frost, a bright fire looks blue.

Crackles—makes a crackling sound whilst burning.

A bit of heaven upon earth—is one of the most enjoyable pleasures upon earth.

Crowd.. chimney—sit huddled together near the fire-place.

The blue flame . facts—the blue flame from the fire being evidence that their stories about ghosts are true. The allusion is to the belief that a fire burns blue at the approach of a ghost.

The owl . a-cold—it is so cold outside that the owl when it comes out at night inspite of his thick coat of feathers, feels cold.

Note.—The quotation is from Keats' *Eve of St. Agnes* :—

“St. Agnes Eve ! Ah, bitter chill it was,
The owl, for all his feathers, was a-cold ;
The hare limp'd trembling through the frozen grass,
And silent was the flock in woolly fold.”

Petrifaction—a thing converted into stone.

Slate and stillness—stony stillness. Slate, because the roofs of houses in England are covered with slabs of slate

Feels like ..stillness—the surrounding country looks so still that it seems to have been turned to stone.

Cut...wind—swept by an extremely cold (cutting) wind.

Steam pitifully—perspire profusely, the perspiration rising in the form of steam, owing to contact with their hot bodies.

' Oldest men '—and hence having the longest experience. Since an old man, in the course of his experience extended over a large numbers of years has never experienced such cold weather, it must indeed be very exceptional. It is a way people have of speaking of any thing a little out of the way as if it were quite extraordinary.

Makes a point—takes care to remark—does not fail to observe.

Seen—met with ; experienced.

People...or not—the cold makes the chins of people so insensitive that they begin to feel that they have no chins at all—

(having no chin is a disfiguration and hence the feeling that one has no chin would be painful).

Waggoner—the driver of a waggon or cart—(he would therefore be exposed to the cold.

Setting his teeth together—keeping his mouth tightly closed so as to prevent his teeth from clattering.

Puckering up—gathering up in wrinkles. Get to—reach; arrive at.

Thinking the time will never arrive—owing to the discomfort of being out in the cold the time taken in getting to his destination seems so dreadfully long that the waggoner begins to think that his journey has no end.

Five Bells—presumably a public house or inn.

Explanation of paragraph 12.

On a cold winter day the sound of the muffin-bell is very pleasant to hear because it reminds one of the pleasure of eating hot muffins at afternoon tea. It also calls up other pleasant associations for when we think about the tea-hour, our thoughts wander on to the evening when after dinner we shall sit by the fire, feeling comfortable and warm, and finally we think of our beds. In winter, theatre goers suffer much from cold feet, and people who suffer chronically from illness stop up all the small openings in the doors and walls of their rooms to keep out cold draughts, but in so doing they keep out also fresh air and the consequence is that instead of feeling better for their caution, they feel worse. On cold winter evenings the streets are practically deserted, the fires burn with a bluish flame, and the wind rises and falls making a moaning noise. The most enjoyable occupation on such an evening is to sit by the fire in any easy chair with one's legs stuck up on a stool and with the light at the back of him, reading or dozing over an interesting book. The poor and ignorant people who live in cottages spend their winter evening huddled together close to the fire in the parlour, telling stories about ghosts and goblins, which, to their superstitious minds seem to receive confirmation from the fact of the fire burning with a blue flame. Even the owl looks cold notwithstanding his thick coat of feathers. The whole country looks so still that it seems to have been converted into stone. Every one in the mail coach is cold, the horses drawing it alone looks warm as the perspiration from their bodies evaporates in the form of steam. Old men are very careful to observe that they had never before in the whole course of their long experience, met with such weather. Peoples'

chins become insensitive on account of the cold, so that they wonder with some feeling of pain whether they have any chins at all. The waggoner on his way to the Five Bells presses his lips together tightly so as to prevent his teeth from clattering, and gathering up his cheeks in wrinkles, begins to think that he will never get to his destination.

Para. 13. People... fireside—the warmth of the fire near which they sit, makes them feel drowsy.

Fear it—i. e., going to bed. **Different—i. e.**, cold because there is no fire in that room.

Furthermore—moreover **Apt—likely.**

Warming-pans—a warming-pan is a long-handled covered pan into which live coals are put It is used for warming beds.

Hot-water bottles—rubber bottles filled with hot water. These bottles are taken into the bed for the purpose of warming the feet—and the bed generally.

Are in request—are much needed.

Eschew—avoid; fight shy of, because they are cold when first put on.

Go to bed. ..socks—this practice is unhealthy and therefore prohibited by their parents

Explanation of paragraph 13.

During winter evenings the warmth of the fire near which they sit makes them feel drowsy, and they therefore, as the evening draws on desire very much to retire to rest but still are afraid to do so because it is very cold in their bedrooms, then being no fire there, and further the change from warmth to cold is likely to wake them up. People resort to artificial means such as warming pans and hot-water bottles to warm their beds, and mischievous children do not change their day clothes for their night clothes because the latter are cold, and go to bed wearing the socks they wore in the daytime.

Para. 14. And make.....first—so as to warm the bed.

Explanation of paragraph 14.

A little boy to whom this passage was read out said it was quite true, and added that elder brothers made their younger brothers get into bed first in order to warm the bed for them.

Summary.

1. At the request of a friend Hunt writes this 'now' description of a cold day to supplement his 'now' description of a hot day. But he labours under a difficulty in so far as the cold paralyses his hand.

2. Before proceeding to write on his subject, the author informs the reader of the origin of the use of the word 'now'—and remarks that its use was suggested to descriptive writers by the remarkable convenience it afforded them in linking together the various parts to their subject—Some lines from Thomson's 'Seasons' is quoted to illustrate the above statement.

3. The English word 'now' is peculiarly adapted for the purpose—no foreign equivalent for the English 'now' could serve the purpose so well.

4. Immediately on waking up, people, in winter, feel the cold air strike against their faces. Getting up is extremely unpleasant. There is sometimes a snow-fall.

5. Water freezes in cwers, and the weather sometimes is foggy and sometimes clear but always cold. When the weather is clear, icicles form on the outside of the windows. Shaving is unpleasant, troublesome and a process attended with some danger.

6. A hot breakfast is very enjoyable, and every one selfishly tries to secure the seat nearest the fireplace. Hot rolls are very nice and the demand for them great. Butter becomes so hard that it is difficult to spread it on bread. Boys play with snow-balls or slide on the ice in the streets, and hate going to school because their slates feel cold and there is no fire in the school-room.

7. Trees are stripped of their leaves; the mud lying on the road becomes hard; the drain has a thin layer of ice spread over it; boys make illegal slides in the pathways; and people wear heavy overcoats to protect themselves from the cold.

8. Skaters go to frozen ponds and canals to skate. Beginners keep constantly tumbling whilst expert skaters show off their skill by such performances as cutting figures of 8.

9. Riders have to be very careful lest their horses slip on the ice; blacksmiths have a comfortable time of it near their blazing furnaces; fishmongers have a miserable time of it; and clerks in offices feel disinclined to rise from their seats.

10. Gouty people regardless of the consequences to them drink more than is good for them. Young ladies fearing to spoil their complexions sit away from the fire and bear the cold.

11. Play-goers suffer from cold feet, and invalids fear draughts. The roads are deserted and the surrounding country appears as if it were converted into stone. The wind makes a moaning noise. Sitting in an easy chair by the fire, dozing over an interesting book is supremely enjoyable. Ignorant people spend their evenings by the fireside telling stories of ghosts and goblins.

12. People are afraid to go to bed owing to the cold, and artificial means of warming the bed, such as warming-pans and hot-water bottles, are resorted to.

WASHINGTON IRVING.

Washington Irving, a distinguished American author, was born at New York in 1783. His father having died while he was still young, the care of his education, which took place at home, devolved on his elder brothers who were young men of considerable attainments. His health, during his early manhood, was exceedingly delicate; and he spent a great deal of his time wandering about Manhattan Island, observing the beautiful natural scenery of the place, and listening to the traditions of the old Dutch and other settlers. Irving's literary career was commenced in 1802 with a number of sketches contributed to the *New York Morning Chronicle*. But his literary work was destined to be interrupted on account of his indifferent health. He was ordered to travel abroad. He visited France, Italy, Switzerland, Holland and England. On his return he resumed his literary activity and commenced a series of humorous and graphic sketches, which were published under the title of *Salmagundi*. About this time Irving began the study of law; and though he was admitted to the bar, he never practised as a lawyer. In 1809 he gave to the world his humorous *History of New York* by Diedrich Knickerbocker. This work instantly made Irving the most popular American writer. On the breaking out of war between England and the United States, a few years afterwards, he was attached, with the rank of colonel, to the Staff of General Tompkins, Governor of New York. On the establishment of peace Irving went to Liverpool to represent the commercial house of "Irving Brothers," a firm which subsequently failed, upon which Irving exclusively occupied himself with literature. After having travelled over England he commenced his *sketch-book*, which became so rapidly popular both in America and England that Irving's reputation was made. Other works published by Irving are *Bracebridge Hall*; the *Tales of a Traveller*; *Life of Columbus* and the *Conquest of Granada*. In 1829 Irving was appointed Secretary to the American legation in London, and about

the same time the University of Oxford conferred upon Irving the honorary degree of LL.D. In 1832 he returned to America. In 1846 Irving retired from public life and went to reside on his beautiful estate, Sunnyside, on the banks of the Hudson, about 25 miles from New York. He died in 1859.

"Irving is the first of native American writers to attract and hold fast the admiration of Europe. His powers of observation, his subtle humour, his rich imagination, and his correctness of expression make him one of the best writers of English prose.

Irving's essays on England and English life deal with their subject in a "spirit of kindness and gentleness" unequalled even in the works of English writers of occasional papers. Prof. Covernton however says that much of it "must be taken as the outcome of a sentimental and romantic mind bent on depicting only the brighter and more picturesque side of what it saw. He gives us an ideal peasantry living in Arcadian bowers, and a chivalrous aristocracy cherishing its feudal dependants. The truth is that Irving's enquiries could never have penetrated to the lower strata of the people"

ESSAY XXIV.

THE STAGE COACH.—Washington Irving.

Page 167.

Para. 1. In the course of—during. Tour—a journey from place to place—the word is etymologically connected with the word *turn*.

December tour—tour undertaken during the month of December.

Yorkshire—one of the counties in the North of England.

Rode—travelled as a passenger.

Public coaches—coaches which conveyed the public in return for a fare—stage coaches. Irving is writing of a time before the introduction of railways, when people had to travel about in stage coaches, just as people have to travel in *Dak* garries in this country in those parts of it where there are no railways.

Day preceding Christmas—i. e., December 24th—this day is called Christmas Eve. Christmas—an annual festival, originally a mass, in memory of the birth of Christ, held on December 25th.

Both inside and out—see illustration facing p. 168.

By their talk—it could be known from the subject matter of their conversation.

Seemed—appeared to be Principally—i. e., primarily most of the passengers seemed bound for, &c.

Bound to—on their way to ; going to ; having for their destination and the object of their journey.

Mansions—residences ; houses. To...dinner - to be present for Christmas and join in the festivities.

It—the stage coach.

Loaded also with—also carrying a number of. Hampers—baskets. Hamper is a word applied to a consignment of provisions.

Game—certain animals and birds which are shot for the purpose of eating, e. g., deer, hares, pheasants, partridges, &c.

Delicacies—rare or choice articles of food ; dainties.

Hares hung—hares were hung. Dangling—swinging (hares have very long ears).

About—around. Coachman's box—the driver's seat—so called because there is generally a box under the cushion.

Impending—approaching—the coming Christmas dinner.

Rosy cheeked—with a red colour on their cheeks, betokening health.

Buxom—Lit. pliant, yielding—here blooming.

Manly spirit—courage In high glee—in high spirit ; in a rapture of delight

Promising themselves—anticipating.

Promisingenjoyment—they anticipated spending their Christmas holidays most happily at home.

Gigantic plans—used humourously. Big schemes ; the various schemes they had formed for enjoying themselves during their Xmas holidays.

Rogues—boys—when applied to boys, rogue is a playful term of endearment like *imp*, devil.

Impracticable—impossible to accomplish.

Impracticable feats—impossible tasks planned in their eagerness to enjoy themselves.

Emancipation—freedom ; release.

Abhorred thralldom—detested slavery—this is how schoolboys usually regard the discipline of school life. Thralldom is a compound of *thrall* a slave, and the suffix *dom* meaning state or condition.

Book, birch and pedagogue—school books, the schoolmaster's cane and the schoolmaster himself, all three of which children detest.

Birch—a kind of tree of which the small, thin branches are traditionally used by schoolmasters in flogging their pupils.

Pedagogue—schoolmaster. Lit. a boy-leader from Greek *pais*, a child and *agogos*, leading.

Full of—thought of little else besides.

Anticipations—the joyful prospect.

Household—the whole domestic establishment including the servants **Down to**—extending even to ; including.

The joy they were to give—how pleased they would make their little sisters.

Crammed—filled ; loaded.

The meeting..... impatience—the object they were most eagerly expecting to meet.

Impatience—eagerness. **Bantam**—the name of a pony.

According..... talk—from the way in which the boys described or spoke of him.

Steed—horse.

Page 168.

Since Bucephalus—since the time of Alexander the Great's famous horse Bucephalus Bucephalus was the name of Alexander's famous horse. It always knelt down when its master wished to mount it and lived to the age of 30 years. It is said that no one but Alexander could manage that animal After its death Alexander built a city and named it Bucophala, in memory of his horse.

Leaps—jumps. Clear—jump across without touching with its legs.

Para. 2. Particular—special. **Guardianship**—care.

They were..... coachman—they were placed under the special care of the coachman during the journey.

Whenever..... presented—whenever they got a chance.

Addressed..... questions—put a lot of questions—children are generally very inquisitive and curious.

Pronounced him—declared him to be

Best fellows—*i. e.*, they declared the coachman to be a very good natured person.

More than ordinary—unusual.

Air of bustle and importance—manner of busy activity.

A little on one side—*i. e.*, slanting a little on one side.

Christmas greens—the holly. Stuck—thrust-fixed.

Mighty—very consequential; very important (used comically) the behaviour and look of the coachman is that of a man who has very important matters to attend to.

Full business—full of importance and a look of busy activity.

Particularly season—the coachman has always a look of importance &c, but it is more than ever noticeable during the Xmas season.

Commissions to execute—charges to carry out; orders to carry-out.

Interchange—exchange. Great interchange—extensive exchange of presents. People at Xmas send presents to their relatives and friends which these coachmen carry to their destination.

It may not be unacceptable to . untravelled readers—it may be interesting to those who have not travelled and so have not seen for themselves what the following sketch will describe

Sketch—a short description or account. (Lit an account which notices broad features only leaving out all matters of mere detail).

Serve as . representation—be a description which will hit off the characteristic peculiarities and prominent traits of the class of functionaries known as 'stage coach' drivers. A functionary is a person having a particular function or duty to perform, generally applied to holders of public offices.

Air—general demeanour.

Prevalent.....fraternity—found among all the members of the class.

Fraternity—a community or brotherhood; a profession—from Latin *frater*, a brother.

Craft or mystery—profession. The word *mystery* here means any occupation which requires peculiar skill in those who carry it on, and hence is a *secret* to others. The meaning of the word *craft* has degenerated in modern English, 'but here the word is used in its original sense of profession.

Para. 3. Commonly—generally; this is characteristic of the class. Full—round. Mottled—spotted. Forced—driven.

Hard feeding—excessive eating—*hard* here has an intensive force as in *hard* work.

Every vessel of the skin—every vein in the body, including the veins of the face.

Swelled into jolly dimensions—grown very fat—fat people are supposed to be very good humoured, hence the use of the word *jolly*.

Potations—draughts—from Lat. *poto* to drink.

Malt liquors—liquor prepared from malt or barley or other grain, as distinguished from *wines* which are prepared from grapes. The most common kind of malt liquor is *Beer*, and it is notorious that much beer drinking makes a person *fat*.

Bulk—dimensions --size

Increased—enlarged. By a multiplicity of coats—by his wearing a number of coats, one over the other.

Buried ..cauliflower—just as the head of the cauliflower is surrounded by layers of broad leaves, so the body of the coachman was covered with several coats which formed, so to speak, so many layers.

Upper one—the one he wore on the top of the rest.

Reaching—extending down to—it was a very long coat so as to completely cover his body from the neck, downwards.

Broad-brimmed—the projecting border round the hat was broad.

Low-crowned—the raised top of the hat was not very high.

Huge—thick Roll—the handkerchief was first rolled into a cylindrical shape and then placed round his neck.

Huge roll—because the handkerchief was very large.

Page 170.

Knowingly—smartly. As one who knows how to look elegant would do.

Knotted—tied into a fancy knot.

Tucked in—having the ends fixed in.

Bouquet—bunch. Buttonhole—a hole similar to a button hole made in the collar of a coat for the purpose of holding flowers.

Enamoured—(from *amour*—love) one who had fallen in love with him.

Country lass—country girl. **Commonly**—as a rule.

Smallclothes—breeches; trousers. **To meet**—so as to meet, i. e., down to or as far as.

Jockey-boots—boots similar to those worn by jockeys; hence, riding boots.

Reach—extend up to.

Para. 4. Costume—dress. All this costume—a humorous reference to the quantity of clothes the coachman was wearing. **Maintained**—adhered to; kept up at all times.

Precision—exactitude. **Has a pride**—takes a pride.

Excellent materials—stuffs of good quality. **Seeming**—apparent.

Grossness—coarseness; vulgarity.

Seeming appearance—he looks a common, coarse vulgar fellow.

Discernible—noticeable.

Propriety of person—decency of apparel. **Inherent**—natural.

Consequence and consideration—influence and respect.

Conferences—talks; chats.

Housewives—mistresses of families—hence, elderly women.

Of great trust and dependence—a man who can be trusted and depended upon, i. e., a trustworthy and reliable man.

To have a good understanding with—to be on terms of familiarity with.

Para. 5. Where the . changed—at one of the stages along the route where a change of horses took place.

With something of an air—in a manner which shows that he is conscious of his importance, hence in a somewhat lordly or haughty manner.

Abandons—leaves

Cattle—horses—this is a slang use of the word.

To the care of—to be attended to by.

Ostler—also written 'hostler' (from Lat. *Hospes*, a host). Originally the word was applied to the proprietor or *host*, of an inn, but

now it is applied to the person who is engaged to attend to the horses at an inn. The word has come to be so applied because formerly the inn-keeper himself used to attend to the horses in person.

Merely—simply.

When off the box—when he comes down from the coach box.

Rolls about—walks about hither and thither just as his fancy takes him.

Yard—enclosure ; compound. Absolute—perfect.

With an . lordliness—with an air of great importance and dignity.

Throng—crowd. Admiring—i e., who admire him on account of his skill which gives him a superior position.

Shoeblocks—boys or men who are engaged to clean the boots of guests putting up at an inn. Now this duty generally devolves on the servant called " buttons."

Nameless—people who loiter about an inn just with the purpose of earning whatever they can. They are not servants engaged by the inn, and hence have no particular duties assigned to them. Hence they have no name which can describe them in terms of the work they do.

Hangers-on—dependants—people who frequent the inn just for the purpose of getting what they can.

Infest—frequent ; loiter about.

Run errands—carry messages for other people.

Odd jobs—miscellaneous duties—i. e., duties not specially assigned to any of the regular inn servants.

Privilege—permission ; something conceded or granted.

Battening on—from A S *betan* to improve. Getting fat on—hence feeding on.

Drippings—etymologically the same as ' droppings '—hence the leavings ; waste food.

Leakage of the taproom—the small quantities of ale that leak out of barrels which have been tapped. The taproom is a room where beer-barrels are stored. As necessity arises one barrel of beer after another is fitted with a tap and the contents gradually drained off. The leakage spoken of is from the taps after they are fitted to the barrels.

Look up to him—look up to implies respect ; look down upon implies contempt.

Page 171.

As to an oracle—regard his utterances in the same light as the ancient Greeks regarded the utterances of the oracles—i. e., consider him infallible, and as such, one whose statements were to be implicitly believed and relied on.

The 'Oracles' of ancient Greece were supposed to be voices of gods who communicated with any one who desired to consult them. It was subsequently discovered that the voices that were heard were only voices of priests who thus imposed on an ignorant and credulous people. The oracles at Delphi were celebrated all over ancient Greece.

Treasure up—carefully remember.

Cant phrases—professional slang. Echo—adopt and then repeat.

Topics of jockey lore—[lore—learning]. Subjects connected with horses and horse racing.

Jockey lore—the subject in which jockeys are well versed. jockeys are the riders of Race-horses at races—this is their calling.

His air and carriage—his general attitude and deportment.

Ragamuffin—from *rag* and *muffin*, a poor creature. Ragamuffin was the name of a demon in the old moralities. Literally the word means a poor creature in rags—vagabond.

Has a coat to his back—has a coat to wear.

Rolls in his gait—swings to and fro in his walk.

Slang—vulgar language.

Embryo Coachey—coachee is slang for coachman. Embryo means a child in the womb. Hence embryo coachee—a person not yet completely developed into a coachman but yet on the road to becoming one in as much as he has picked up some of the ways of a coachman.

Para. 6. Pleasing serenity—good-humoured calmness.

Reigned—prevailed. Countenance—expression of the face.

Perhaps . journey—perhaps it was on account of the good humour I was in that I fancied every one whom I saw in the course of the journey to be looking happy and joyful.

Animation—excitement ; cheerfulness.

A stage coach—with it—a journey in a stage coach always has the effect of making people cheerful.

Puts the.. along—used in a figurative sense. Creates a stir or bustle in every place through which it passes. But if used literally, the meaning would be :—makes the surrounding scenery on both sides appear as if it were moving as it (*i. e.*, the coach) swiftly passes on.

The horn—is a bugle carried with the coach and blown when the coach nears a village to intimate to intending passengers the arrival of the coach.

Bustle—stir ; excitement.

Band-boxes—a box made of card-board for carrying light articles, such as hats, bonnets, laces, etc.

Secure places—to get good seats in the coach.

Take leave of—bid farewell to in an appropriate manner.

Group—of persons, friends and relatives.

World—a number of. **Small**—trifling.

Commissions to execute—things entrusted to him by others to be done by him for them.

Jerks—flings ; throws with a jerk. **Parcel**—packet.

Public-house—a public drinking shop ; inn.

Knowing leer—significant side glance implying that he knew from whom the *note* came.

Of sly import—having a mischievous meaning.

Half-blushing, half-laughing—trying to conceal her feelings by laughing, but betraying them by her involuntary blushes.

Housemaid—an indoor maid-servant.

Odd shaped—strangely folded—because it came from a 'rustic lover.'

Billet-doux—(pronounced *billedos*) A French word meaning "sweet note"—love letter.

Rustic—country. **Admirer**—lover

Para. 7. Rattles through—passes through making a rattling noise (because of the stones on the road).

Runs to the window—*i. e.*, for the purpose of having a look at the passing coach, the passing of a coach through a village would introduce some variety into the dull life of the place.

You have glances—you catch glimpses of.

Fresh—full of natural colour—beaming with health.

Giggling—laughing in a light, frolicsome manner ; tittering.

Corners—where two roads meet ; turnings.

Juntos—a Spanish word—groups. Assembled—gathered.

Idlers—people who have no work to do and hence kill time by lounging about from place to place and talking idly.

Wisemen—used humorously for wise acres ; i. e., those who pretended to wisdom without having it ; simpletons who are unconscious of being such, and who are made much of by a circle of admirers—cf. goldsmith—

“ Where village statesmen talked with looks profound,
And news much older than their ale went round.”

Take their stations—take up their positions ; stand there.

Important purpose—of course, this is ironical.

Company—people. Sagest knot—wisest group (ironical).

Blacksmith's—i. e., blacksmith's shop. The noun is omitted after the genitive.

Fruitful of—which gives rise to. Speculation—conjecture. The passing of a coach gives rise to various surmises at the Blacksmith's because of the chance of his getting work in the way of shoeing the horses or mending the tyres of the coach, &c.

With the lap—in the act of shoeing a horse The smith raises the horse's heel on to his lap for sake of convenience in shoeing the horse. The 'lap' is formed by the part of the body between the waist and the knees.

Page 172.

Pauses—stops in the middle of his work The vehicle—i. e., the coach.

Whirls by—passes quickly by—the idea of *whirling by* comes from the fact of the wheels of the coach turning round.

Cyclops—the smiths. In Greek mythology the cyclops were a race of one-eyed giants who were supposed to inhabit the island of Sicily. They assisted Vulcan (the smith of the Greek gods) in forging the thunderbolt for Zeus. Hence the name is applied metaphorically to smiths.

Anvil—the iron block on which a blacksmith beats pieces of heated metal with his hammer.

Suspend—stop for a time. **Ring**ing—resounding. The beating of several hammers in succession on the anvil in regular time produces a sort of musical sound.

Suffer—allow. To grow cool—so that it has to be heated again.

Sooty spectre—"the dirty figure of the bellows-blower, who, in the lurid darkness of the smithy, looks like a dim apparition from the depths of the earth.—(Covernton).

Labouring—working; toiling. **Bellows**—an instrument for blowing a current of air on to a fire which works by forcing the air through a narrow opening.

Leans on the handle—pauses in his work for a time.

Asthmatic engine—the bellows—because they pull and blow like a person suffering from asthma whose breathing is "hard."

Heave a long-drawn sigh—give out a long pull—the bellows-worker, pausing in his work, all the air in the bellows is allowed to escape.

Glares—stares—his eyes look glaring in contrast with the murkiness with which he is surrounded.

Murky—dark.

Sulphureous gleams—pale or lurid light of the smithy like the colour of the flames from burning sulphur.

Para. 8. Impending—ensuing. **Animation**—liveliness.

In good looks—looking neat and clean. **In good spirits**—cheerful and in good humour.

Game, poultry—(poultry from Lat. *pullus*, the young of any animal). The difference between game and poultry is that whereas the former word includes both animals and birds which are wild and are killed by shooting them, the latter includes only domesticated birds which are expressly bred for the table.

Luxuries—delicacies.

Were in brisk circulation—were being actively exchanged between friends and relatives—i. e., people were sending each other presents of game, poultry and other delicacies of the table.

Grocer's—i. e., grocer's shop—a tradesman who deals in tea, spices, tinned provisions, &c.

Thronged—crowded—filled.

Stirring briskly about—moving busily and actively about the house.

Puttingorder—tidying and decorating their houses for Christmas.

Glossy—smooth and shining. Branches—i. e., branches with leaves on them. Holly leaves are very smooth and have a bright, shining surface. Cf. Tennyson's *In Memoriam*—

“Again at Christmas did we weave.

The holly round the Christmas hearth.”

Began ..windows—began to be seen at the windows because they were put up for the purpose of the Xmas decoration—At Christmas, doors and windows are decorated with holly.

Para. 9. scene—the sight. Brought to mind—recalled; reminded me of.

An old writer's account, &c.—the reference is to the account given by M. Stevenson in his work ‘Twelve Months’ published in 1661. In quoting from him Irving modernizes his language and abridges the length of his description.

Capon—a young cock fattened for the table. Mutton—the flesh of sheep (not goats).

Must all die—all the above named species of birds and animals must be killed, for they are all eaten at Xmas time.

In twelve days—i. e., for twelve days. In accordance with a law supposed to have been passed in the reign of Alfred the Great, the Christmas festivities were formerly kept up for 12 successive days, commencing with December 25th. It seems that in 1661, when Stevenson's book was published, the practice was still respected.

Multitude—large number. Will not—cannot.

A multitudelittle—a large quantity of meat will be needed to feed people on the occasion of a festival which extends over a space of twelve days

Square it among—as much of these things is eaten as of pies and broth. All people eat pies and broth throughout the year but all cannot indulge in such luxuries as plums and spices, sugar and honey, except during periods of festivity when of course they do.

Plums—means dried plums—in the form of resins and sultanas, and plums preserved in sugar.

Pies—a kind of dish, made of cut up meat enclosed within a covering of pastry.

Broth—soups of various kinds.

Now or never—it is more necessary at this season than at any other.

Be in tune—be played. The youth—young people.

To ..heat—to make themselves warm—the younger people cannot get near the fire for the elders, who are too old for romping, sit round it and monopolise it.

Market—articles bought in the market.

Leaves half her market—At Xmas time so much has to be bought that they cannot all be brought home at once. People doing the shopping have to bring in the articles in two, three or even more lots. If, however, the maid forgets to bring a pack of cards on her return from her first visit to the market, she is sent back immediately for it alone, lest in the hurry and bustle of the day, the cards may be forgotten at the last moment and the amusements of Christmas eve spoiled.

A pack ..eve—it is usual on Christmas eve to play a game at cards, known as "Post and Pair."

Great is . breeches—master and mistress both exert themselves to their utmost in dispensing hospitality and entertaining their guests and this, irrespective of the circumstance whether the master or the mistress be really ruler in the house. On this one occasion and in relation to this one matter, neither the husband nor the wife will permit the other to domineer over him or her. The allusion is perhaps to some old custom by which holly was adopted as the badge of men and ivy of women.

Wears the breeches—actually rules the house. A woman is said to wear breeches when she usurps the authority which her husband ought to have in the house.

Dice and . butler—the butler is a superior domestic servant who has charge of the wines. The later the guests sit up playing cards and gambling, the longer will they call for wine, and the butler will not forget to help himself too. The reference may also be to some old custom by which a portion of the winnings at the gambling table were given over to the butler as a perquisite.

Do not lack wit—i. e., if he is a sensible fellow.

Sweetly ..fingers—he will not omit to taste all the nice dishes he prepares for the Christmas entertainments.

Page 173.

Para. 10. Fit of ..meditation—Reverie—the meditation is called luxurious because it was concerned with a luxurious condition of affairs, viz., the preparations for the Christmas festivities.

Fit—short indulgence in.

My companions—the boys who were returning from school in the coach.

John—the name of a servant who had been sent to escort them home.

General burst—simultaneous exclamation.

Old carlo—dear dog, Carlo.

Bantam—the name of the pony which they had been praising on the road.

Rogues—boys—called rogues because all boys are more or less mischievous.

Para. 11. Sober-looking—grave-faced.

Livery—the dress given to a servant by his master.

Superannuated—(from Latin *super*, above—*annus*, year) very old.

Pointer—a species of hunting dog trained to point out game by scent. 'To point' in the language of hunting means to stand still with the nose pointed in the direction of game and the tail stiffened out.

Redoubtable—sturdy ; formidable (used humorously).

Rat of a pony—Rat like pony—i. e., a small pony.

Shaggy—overgrown.

Rustic tail—not 'docked' tail but a long tail such as horses in the country usually have. The docking of the tail was a fashion in town.

Dozing—with his eyes half-closed as if in sleep.

Little dreaming ... him—unaware of the fact that very soon the boys would constantly ride him.

Para. 12. Fondness—affection. Leaped about—jumped about the person of.

Footman—servant, i. e., the man referred to as 'John' above.

Hugged—embraced. Wriggled—shook.

Para. 13. Offat last—the whole party started off at last. Bounding--jumping.

Overpowering . anecdotes—Asking him so many questions and telling him so many stories about school in quick succession that John had neither time nor opportunity, either to answer the questions, or to listen to everything that was said.

I do not know—I cannot exactly tell. Predominated—i. most strongly tinged by my feeling ; was uppermost.

With a feelingpredominated—with a feeling which was a curious mixture of both pleasure and pain, and in the then state of my feelings, I could not nicely discriminate which of the two—whether pleasure or pain—was the uppermost.

Cf. Tennyson—

“Fresh as the first beam glittering on a sail,
That brings our friends up from the underworld,
Sad as the last which reddens over one,
That sinks with all we love below the verge ;
So sad, so fresh, the days that are no more.

—*The Princess*—

Known--experienced. Summit of earthly felicity—the greatest pleasure attainable in life

[This same idea occurs in Gray's *Ode to Eton College*, where, speaking of schoolboys, he remarks :—

‘Alas ! regardless of their doom,
The little victims play.
No care have they ills to come.
No thought beyond to to-day.’]

To water the horses—to let the horses have a drink.

Page 174.

Resuming our route—recommencing our journey.

Brought . of—showed to us ; gave us a sight of. Neat—elegant.

Country seat—a country house or mansion—used with reference to the home of well-to-do people who have homes both in the country and in town.

Just distinguish—just make out.

Trooping along—going along forming a little band, like troopers usually go about in parties.

Carriage road—i. e., the carriage drive leading from the gate to the house.

Witnessing the happy meeting—seeing the manner in which the boys were welcomed by their mother and sisters.

Grove—cluster.

Para. 14. Determined—decided. Pass the night—stay for night.

Great—large. Rousing—brightly burning; cheerful.

Beaming—shining out. For the hundredth time—once more just as I had often done so before. “Hundredth is used indefinitely.

Picture—model. Convenience—comfort.

Broad—free, open; liberal. Honest—innocent.

Of spacious dimensions—roomy; commodious.

Hung round with—having hanging on the walls on all sides.

Christmas green—the branch of some evergreen used for Christmas decorations.

Flitches—a ‘flitch’ is the side of a hog salted and preserved.

Suspended—hung.

Smoke-jack—a contrivance for turning a spit by means of a fly-wheel turned by the current of air ascending in a chimney. This contrivance is used for ‘roasting’ joint.

Ceaseless—continuous. Clanking—the noise made by the spit as it rotated.

Well-scoured—well scrubbed and washed with boiling water hence, very clean.

Deal table—a kitchen table made of *deal*, a common kind of wood.

Extended along—was placed along.

Round of beef—a joint of beef made into the shape of a round lump by being tied round with string and having a thin stick of wood passed through it to keep the ends in position.

Hearty—substantial. Viands—eatables.

Tankards—metal mugs having lids to them.

Seemed mounting guard—appeared to stand like sentinels on either side of the viands.

Inferior order—of the commoner class of people.

Attack this stout repast—to commence this substantial meal.

Gossiping—chatting ; talking. **Settles**—low benches with high backs.

Trim—tidily dressed.

Fresh—having a fresh looking complexion ; healthy looking

Bustling—active.

Seizing...moment—taking advantage of a suitable moment.

Flippant—full of light-hearted mirth ; frivolous. **Rallying**—mocking.

Scene—spectacle. **Completely realized**—was a perfect concrete illustration of.

Page 175.

Poor Robin—the pseudonym of Robert Herrick, one of England's lyrical poets (1591-1674). He was vicar of Dean Prior in Devonshire from which he was ejected by Cromwell but reinstated by Charles II. under the pseudonym of Poor Robin. Herrick issued a series of almanacs in verse illustrative of old English custom—which began in 1661 and were continued after Herrick's death. The passage quoted by Irving is from the Almanac for 1684.

Humble—modest. **Idea**—conception.

Leafy hats—the leaves growing at their top. **Do bare**—shed.

To reverence—i. e., as a token of respect ; to pay respect to.

Winter's silver hair—hoary headed winter ; winter is spoken of as an old man with grey hair because of the white snow that falls in winter.

Now trees their.... hair—just as a man takes off his hat in order to show respect to a venerable old man, so the trees in the cold season stand bare-headed by taking off their hats composed of leaves in order to pay respect to the hoary-headed figure of winter.

A toast—here means a piece of toasted bread which is frequently put into mugs of *ale* to make the flavour richer.

Para. 15. Post-chaise—a chaise was a light carriage. It was used by people who wished to travel from one place to another in less time than a coach would take. A post-chaise is a chaise that goes from one place to another, changing horses at different posts or stages *en route*.

Stepped out—alighted from it. **Glimpse**—a momentary sight.

His eye caught mine—i. e., our eyes met. **Sprightly**—cheerful.

The Continent--i. e., the continent of Europe. Englishmen living on an island speak of the mainland of Europe as the 'continent.'

Cordial--hearty. Countenance--sight of the face. Brings up--recalls

Odd adventures--strange incidents.

Transient interview--companionship lasting only a short time ; short meeting.

I was ..time--I was not in want of leisure--I was not in a hurry.

Merely--only Tour of observation--a course of travel, the object of which was to observe the manners and customs of the people of the country.

Give him--spend with him. Give him the pleasure of my company Seat--house Solitary--by oneself--lonely.

In something style--in the manner guests were welcomed in the olden days before the manners became so formal.

Cogent--convincing. Festivity--merrymaking ; enjoyment

Made me loneliness--had made me feel a little disinclined to remain by myself.

The preparation ..loneliness--the whole Christian world around me was busily engaged in making elaborate preparations for Christmas, and I naturally felt my isolation at such a season somewhat keenly.

Closed with--accepted.

Summary.

1. In the course of a December tour in Yorkshire, Irving had occasion to travel by a coach just a day or two before Christmas. The coach was loaded with presents in the shape of hampers of game, and other delicacies sent to friends and relatives, which the driver was instructed duly to deliver. The coach was crowded with passengers, among them being three boys going home from school for their Christmas holidays. Irving was greatly struck by the gleeful anticipations of joy 'at home' the boys had formed.

2. The boys were entrusted to the care of the driver of the coach. Coach drivers, especially during this season, are men of mighty care and business and consider themselves very important. The driver in charge of this particular coach was a perfect type of his class.

3. A coach driver is generally a fat man with a broad, red face. He wears a broad-brimmed, low-crowned hat, a huge coloured handkerchief as a muffler round his neck, and several coats, the outer one reaching down to his heels. He wears tall boots which reach about halfway up his legs.

4. Though a common man, the coach driver is very particular about his appearance and dresses neatly. His clothes too are generally of a tolerably good quality. He enjoys great consequence and consideration along the road.

5. On reaching a stage he promptly abandons the care of the horses to the ostler and walks about the inn yard just as his whim takes him. He is much respected and looked up to by the miscellaneous crowd who hang about inns and taverns.

6. The passing of a stage coach through a village is an event which causes great excitement in the village. People rush to meet friends or to secure seats for themselves. Others go to despatch parcels and some entrust commissions to the coachman to execute.

7. As a coach rattles through a village, people run to the windows of their houses to see it pass, and groups of idlers assemble at street corners for a like purpose. The smith in the act of shoeing a horse stops in the middle of his work, the bellows-blower allows the air in the bellows to get exhausted, whilst the man at the anvil stops beating the red-hot-iron and allows it to get cold.

8. The approach of Christmas has invested the village with a look of busy activity. The houses are being decorated with holly and other Xmas greens.

9. Irving quotes a passage from M. Stevenson, descriptive of Christmas preparations.

10. On nearing their home the boys in the coach suddenly catch sight of the servant who has come to meet them accompanied by the dog 'Carlo' and the pony 'Bantam.' They utter simultaneously shouts of joy.

11. They are met on the road side by an old sober-looking servant in livery, a superannuated pointer and a rat of a pony.

12. The boys were very pleased at meeting the old servant and leaped about him—but the object of their particular joy was 'Bantam,' whom all wanted to ride at once. It was decided that they should ride in turns, the eldest riding first.

13. They then set off for the house where Irving could see their mother and sisters waiting under the portico to welcome them.

14. Irving breaks journey in the evening and passes the night at a village inn. He describes at some length the kitchen of an English Inn which he remarks is "a picture of convenience, neatness, and broad, honest enjoyment."

15. Irving meets an old friend Frank Bracebridge, who persuades him to spend a couple of days at his father's country seat. The friends start off

ESSAY XXV.

CHRISTMAS EVE—Washington Irving.

Christmas Eve—the evening before Christmas. "Christmas day" Says Brand, "in the primitive church, was always observed as the Sabbath day, and like that was preceded by an eve or vigil" Hence the modern Christmas eve.

Page 176.

Para. 1. Brilliant—bright, *i. e.*, the moon was shining brightly. Moonlight—here an adjective meaning lighted by the moon.

Whirled rapidly—travelled quickly. 'Whirled' because the wheels were rotating.

Frozen—*i. e.*, the snow which lay on the ground was frozen

Postboy—the postillion or boy who was riding the horses of the post chaise

Smacked—cracked; struck smartly with a sharp noise. Cf. Cowper—

"Smack went the whip, round went the wheels,
Were never folk so glad."

—John Gilpin.

Incessantly—constantly.

Part of the time—'part' is to be parsed as an adverbial object.

Were on a gallop—were running at their full speed.

Para. 2. "He knows where he is going"—*i. e.*, the postboy knows that he is going where, on an occasion like the present, he will get plenty of good cheer and amusement.

My companion—*i. e.*, Frank Bracebridge.

Is eager to arrive—is very keen on arriving at the house.

In time for—in time to have his share of.

Merriment—the merry making ; amusements.

Good cheer—good food ; hospitality. Servants' hall—servants' table.

You must know—let me inform you.

Bigoted devotee of—staunch follower of the principles of.

School—here means a set of opinions in any particular department ; mode of thinking.

Prides himself—is proud of the fact.

Keeps up—continues to show.

Old English hospitality—the hospitality which past generations of Englishmen used to show to guests and strangers.

Tolerable specimen—a fairly typical example. Rarely—seldom.

Meet with now-a-days—come across at the present day.

In its purity—in its original form—i. e., free from the taints of modern ways of thinking.

The old English country gentleman—Irving says in another part of the Sketch Book, about the English country gentleman :—“I do not know a more enviable condition of life than that of an English gentleman, of sound judgment, and of good feelings, who passes the greater part of his time on an hereditary estate in the country.” (The student is invited to recollect the account of the English country gentleman which can be gathered from a study of ‘*Tom Brown's School Days*’)

For—because. Our men of fortune—richmen of the present day.

Fashion—conventionality. Is carried so much into the country—is followed to such an extent even in their lives in their country homes.

Strong—pronounced ; prominent. Rich—sterling ; fine

Peculiarities—characteristic features. Ancient—former.

Rural life—life in the country. Polished away—swept away by being modified by the influence of foreign fashions which had been adopted in Town (London). Cf. Cowper—

“ Were England now

What England was, plain, hospitable kind
And undebauched ! But we have bid farewell
To all the virtues of those better days.”

The Task : the garden.

Para. 3. Honest Peacham—Henry Peacham, an English writer (1576-1650), was the author of "Art of Living in London" and "The complete gentleman" and several other works now completely forgotten. The last mentioned work was very popular at one time and furnished the model of a country gentleman of the old type. Irving speaks of him as 'honest' because he reproduced faithfully the conditions of the life of country gentlemen of the time.

For his text-book—derived his maxims and rules of conduct from.

Chesterfield—Philip Dormer Stanhope, Earl of Chesterfield (1674-1773) is famous as the author of "*Letters to his son*," published in 1774. In these he endeavours to train his son to the life, not of a country squire, but of a gentleman and man of fashion and of the world. His "*letters*" display much knowledge of the world but indifference to those moral obligations which were not considered as having any binding force among the fashionable society of the day. Chesterfield's ideal of a gentleman is that of one having all the superficial and sparkling accomplishments of the day, but wanting in moral purity. His teachings are therefore suited to a polished man of the city, not to a country gentleman.

Determined in his own mind—came independently to the conclusion.

Condition—manner of living

Truly—really ; unquestionably. Envable—highly desirable.

Paternal lands—hereditary estate ; ancestral property.

Page 178.

Strenuous advocate for—strongly in favour of.

Revival—restoration. Rural games—country sports.

Observances—ceremonies and festivities. Holiday observances—Modes of celebrating the ceremonies to be observed on the occasions of holidays.

Is deeply read in—has made a thorough study of.

Treated on—dealt with—ought to be 'treated of.'

Range—sphere. Flourished—lived and wrote.

Since—ago. (Since should be parsed as an adverb).

Para. 4. Regrets—is sorry that—(because in the olden days he would have been in his element.)

When England was itself—when Englishmen retained in full the characteristic traits of their nature. (This was before the purity of English manners and customs was contaminated by the introduction of foreign influences, especially after the 'Restoration.'

Peculiar—special ; characteristic.

Main road—principal thoroughfare. **Lonely**—secluded.

Gentry—collectively used for 'country gentlemen.'

That most Englishman—that blessing or piece of good fortune which Englishmen most prize.

Opportunity—chance.

Of indulginghumour—of doing just as he likes ; of acting exactly as his peculiar whims and caprices prompt him.

Molestation—interference—especially in the form of remarks passed on his conduct by his neighbours.

Being representative of—he being descended from

Great part—the greater number. **Peasantry**—the farmers.

Tenants—i. e., cultivators who hold from him on rent.

Looked up to—respected. **Appellation**—name.

"The Squire"—this way of styling him indicated that they knew of no one else to whom the appellation of squire could apply.

Accorded—given. **Since time immemorial**—from so long past that people scarcely now remember when it was first accorded.

To give you these hints—to inform you about these little peculiarities of my father.

To prepare you for—to prevent you from being surprised at, &c.

Eccentricities—peculiarities ; oddities. **Otherwise**—if you are not prepared for them.

Absurd—ridiculous at the present day.

Para. 5. Along—by the side of.

Park—extensive ground, attached to the country mansions of gentlemen for the purpose of preserving game.

At length—at last. **Stopped**—was pulled up.

Heavy—massive ; solid. **Magnificent**—grand ; impressive on account of its massiveness.

Style—fashion of building. **Of**—made of.

Fancifully—artistically. **Wrought**—ornamented. **At top**—at the top.

Flourishes—decorations ; showy embellishments

Fancifully wroughtflowers—decorated at the top with showy designs of flowers, scrolls and other fantastic figures.

Columns—the pillars of the gate.

Surmounted...crest—had the family crest carved at the top of them.

Crest—A device or emblem, adopted in feudal times by noble families to distinguish the retainers of one from those of others.

Close adjoining—very near the gate.

Porter's lodge—the gate-keeper's quarters.

Buried—hidden from sight.

Shrubbery—shrubs or small trees growing about it.

Page 179.

Para. 6. Porter's bell—A bell fixed in a pillar of the gate for summoning the gate-keeper to open the gate.

Resounded—echoed. **Frosty**—cold ; freezing. **Answered**—responded to.

Distant barking—the sound of the barking came from some distance from the gate.

Garrisoned—defended. **Strongly**—full. **Full**—clear.

Little—small in stature. **Primitive**—old fashioned.

Antique taste—old fashioned style. **Kerchief**—A piece of cloth, shaped like a handkerchief which used to be worn by women in former times over their heads—from *Fr. couvre chef*=head cover.

Stomacher—A covering of stiff cloth worn over the breast and lower part of the body by women in the 16th and 17th centuries.

Silver hair—gray hair. **Peeping**—showing.

Curtseying forth—bowing as she came along. **Expressions**—exclamations.

Simple—genuine. **Up**—here indicates the position of the house, viz., that it was further on.

Keeping Christmas eve—participating in the Christmas eve festivities.

Best hand at—most proficient in telling stories or in singing songs among the servants.

Para. 7. Proposed—suggested. Alight—got down from the chaise

Park—grounds. Follow on—come along behind us.

Wound through—extended in front of us with many turns and bends

Noble—beautiful ; picturesque.

Avenue—A road lined on both sides with lofty, shady trees. An avenue need not necessarily lead to house, but here the word *avenue* is applied to the drive that led to the house from the gate.

Naked branches—i. e., branches denuded of their leaves, it being the winter season.

Glittered—sparkled—this was due to the moonlight falling on the snow deposited upon the leafless branches.

Rolled through—seemed to traverse or travel across as she revolved in her orbit.

Deep vault—vast expanse.

Sheeted—covered with a thin layer. Slight—thin.

Sparkled—glittered. Caught—fell upon.

Frosty crystal—a crystal of ice that had been formed by the frost freezing the snow.

Transparent—clear ; through which objects could be seen.

Vapour—mist. Stealing up—slowly rising up.

Low ground—evidently the ground sloped downwards towards the house.

Gradually—slowly. Shroud the landscape—envelop the whole surrounding country.

Para. 8. With transport—with very great joy ; with rapture of delight.

Scampered up—ran with speed and trepidation.

Degree of—an amount of.

Filial reverence—the kind of respect that is due from a son towards his father (from Lat. *filius*, a son).

Them—the trees.

Page 180.

As—In the same way as. **Look up to**—regard with affection and respect.

Cherished us—helped to bring us up.

Scrupulous—strict ; particular.

Exacting our holidays—compelling our presence at home during holidays.

Direct and superintend our games—he used both to dictate to us what games we were to take part in as also to watch over and guide our performances

Strictness—rigour ; exactness.

According to their original form—as they were originally played—not as they had been improved upon in the course of time.

Precedent—instances.

For precedent and authority—to find trustworthy accounts of the way in which these games were played in the past.

"Merrie disport"—merry sport or game I assure you—believe me.

Pedantry—display of learning.

There never...delightful—all other kinds of pedantry are more or less offensive, but the form it took in this old gentleman, far from being inelegant, was positively graceful and amusing.

Policy—wise principle. **Delicious home feeling**—delightful feeling of love for my home.

Choicest gifts—one of the most precious blessings. A parent cannot do better than to teach his children to love their home.

Para. 9. Interrupted—i. e., in our conversation. **Clamour**—noise. (Caused by the braking of).

Troop—pack ; a large number assembled in one place.

Sorts—species ; classes.

"Mongrel . degree"—this is a quotation from Goldsmith's *Elegy on the death of a mad dog* :—

"And in that town a dog was found.

As many dogs there be,

Both mongrel, puppy, whelp and hound.

And curs of low degree."

Mongrel—a dog of mixed breed. **Puppy**—a very young dog.

Whelp—a young dog, little larger than a puppy.

Hound—a large hunting dog. **Curs**—dogs of very inferior breed.

Degree—position in the rank of dogs, which is determined by their breed.

Bounding—running forward with leaps.

The little dogs and all, &c.—this is a quotation from Shakespeare's *Kind Lear* iii-6. where Lear pathetically exclaims. "The very dogs have forgotten me."

And all—elliptical for "and all the rest."

Laughing—because of the witty application of the quotation to his own case.

Yelp of delight—a loud bark expressive of joy.

Caresses—behaviour indicative of their love for their young master.

Para. 10. **Come in full view of**—reached a part of the grounds from where we could distinctly see the mansion.

Thrown in deep shadow—appeared dark by reason of the shadows of trees and probably of the other part of the house falling on it.

Lit up—made to look bright.

Cold moonshine—the moonshines with a reflected light, it does not give out heat like the sun, hence its light always feels "cool." This added to the fact that the night was frosty made it appear as if the *cold* was due to the moonlight. Hence the moonshine is called 'cold'—*moonshine*—the light from the moon.

Irregular—not built in any of the recognized geometrical shapes. **Some**—fairly large.

Magnitude—size.

Seemed to be of—appeared to be built in. **Architecture**—style of building houses.

Different periods—different ages or epochs.

Seemed to be.....periods—seemed to have been built in such different styles of architecture as were in fashion in different periods of time.

[The style of architecture varies like the style of dress of manners with different epochs or periods of time. There have been

several styles of architecture, each of which had been fashionable for a time and had then given way to some other. The style of architecture which was in vogue in the classical times of Rome and Greece is known as the *classical*. The style of architecture which the Norman Conquerors brought with them to England is called "*Norman*." All feudal castles were built in that style, and to the present day in England specimens of that style are preserved in some of the old mansions of ancient families. Other styles of architecture which, at different periods of the world's history, have been fashionable in Europe are the *Gothic*, the *Saracenic* and the *Moorish*].

Wing--block of the building.

Evidently--from the style in which it was built. Ancient--old.

With--because it had.

Stone-shafted bow windows--projecting windows, the bars and cross-bars of which were made of stone.

Page 181.

Jutting out--the windows projected outwards from the wall.

Overrun--covered completely ; grown over.

Ivy--a kind of creeper which grows over ancient buildings.

From among--through.

Foliage--leaves. Diamond-shaped--shaped like a rhombus ; resembling the diamonds on playing cards.

Panes of glass--the small pieces of glass which were fixed or fitted in between the ribbed woodwork of the window.

1 Glittered with--sparkled in. Taste--style (in fashion).

In the French.....time--was built in the style fashionable in France during the time that Charles II was an exile at the court of Lewis XIV. On the abolition of monarchy in England, the sons of Charles I, Charles and James took refuge at the Court of Lewis XIV, and there imbibed a liking for everything French. On the Restoration, the likes and dislikes of the sovereign naturally influenced much the fashions in England. With the exile of the heir to the throne many nobles and commoners who had sided with the king in his struggle with Parliament also sought safety by flying to France. They too, on their return, influenced to a great extent the manners and fashions in England.

One of his ancestors monarch--one of his forefathers, who on account of his having been a staunch and loyal adherent of Charles

II, had gone into a voluntary exile on the continent along with that king, and came back from exile on the restoration of that king in 1660.

The Restoration--the restoration of monarchy in England and of the House of Stuart to the English throne. Charles II. returned in 1660.

Para. 11. The grounds about the house--the land around the house--(compound).

Laid out--arranged ; ordered. Formal--pompous ; showy ;--hence unnatural.

Flower-beds--patches of land *planted* with flower trees.

Clipped shrubberies--plots of land planted with small sized plants which were closely cut and trimmed into various shapes.

Clipped--trimmed or closely cut, often into fantastic shapes of birds and beasts.

Cf. *Tennyson*--

"The peacock-yew tree of the lonely Hall"--

Enoch Arden--

Raised terraces--Level platforms of land rising one above another.

Balustrades--railings composed of a row of small pillars.

Ornamented--decorated ; adorned Urns--vases for flower pots.

Leaden--made of lead. Jet of water--a fountain.

Preserve--maintain. Obsolete finery--old fashioned decorations.

State--condition--i. e., without any change.

The modern fashion in laying out gardens is to change as little as is possible of the natural look of the grounds. the gardener's duty being merely to attend to the plants which require artificial aid in order to enable them to grow, and to keep the place free from weeds and other wild shrubs.

Fashion--style. Air of magnificence--appearance of grandeur.

Courtly--dignified ; suited to a refined taste.

Befitting.....style--suitable to the traditions of a good old English family.

Boasted--spoken of with pride. Imitation of nature--i. e., simplicity.

Sprung up with—originated in and become fashionable along with.

Republican notions—doctrines of political equality.

Did not . government—was not suited to a country where the form of government itself was a standing embodiment of the notion of inequality.

Smacked of—had a touch of.

Smacked.....system—had a touch in it of the ultra-radical principles of the Levellers, an extreme Republican sect of the Puritans which appeared in 1647.

Introduction...gardening—the indulging of one's political prejudices in connection with gardening.

Apprehension—fear. **Intolerant**—bigoted.

Creed—*i. e.*, views in connection with politics ; political creed.

The only instance—*i. e.*, when commenting on the modern style of gardening.

Meddle with—dabble in ; interfere

Glad of—glad to hear of and thus to avail himself of.

To defend, &c.—*i. e.*, to justify his preference for the old style of gardening.

Attacked—unfavourably criticised ; spoken of in terms of disparagement.

Modern—of the new school—*i. e.*, the school that believed a garden ought to be modelled after a natural landscape.

Modern.....gardeners—modern dressers of gardens who are of opinion that grounds should be so laid out, and plants, trees, water courses, buildings &c. should be so disposed as to produce the effect of a picturesque natural landscape.

Para. 12. Approached—neared.

Page 182.

Burst—a loud peal. **Revelry**—noisy merriment.

Permitted, encouraged—the former means mere *passive consent* ; the latter, *active interest* so that the person who encourages anything himself helps its accomplishment or execution.

The...Christmas—from the Nativity to the Epiphany (see note on para. 9, p. 172)

Provided—conjunction = if.

Conformably.. usage—in accordance with old custom.

Hoodman blind—another name for the game more commonly called 'Blindman's buff' A man is blindfolded with a handkerchief and is required, whilst so blindfolded, to catch others who run round him and pull and pinch him. The person who is ultimately caught becomes 'blindman' in his turn, and thus the game continues.

Shoe the wild mare—Another game, very similar to Blindman's Buff, so called because in playing it the players said

"Shoe the wild mare.

But if she won't be shod, she must go bare."

Hot cockles—A game in which a person covers his eyes and guesses who strikes him—so called because the person blindfolded kneels down and holds his hand behind his back, crying out "Hot cockles hot."

Steal the white loaf—a game in which a loaf is stolen at the risk of having one's face chalked. (This game is mentioned by Brand, but its peculiar name is not stated by him).

Bob apple—A game in which people suspend a cord with a cross stick having an apple fastened at the one end and a lighted candle at the other and endeavour to catch the apple with the mouth whilst the stick is turning round and round.

Snap dragon—a game consisting in snatching plums or resins out of a dish of lighted spirits, so called because the fruit is believed to be under the protection of a fire-breathing dragon who tries to burn up those who seek to steal his treasures.

Yule clog—a large log of wood placed in the fireplace to produce a bright fire in honour of Christmas The word yule means Christmas and probably has a Gothic origin. Wedgwood says that the word yule is the name of the Christmas festival among the Scandinavian and connected races. In England the use of the word is confined almost entirely to the northern counties where the language was open to Scandinavian influences. 'Yule-tide' is another name for Christmas Dis frequently used on Christmas cards 'Clog' is a heavy block of wood.

Christmas candle—A candle of uncommon size lighted during Christmas and supposed to be symbolical of Christ the "light of the world" who was born on Xmas day. "In the buttery of St. John's College, Oxford," says Brand, "an ancient Candle-socket of stone still remains ornamented with the figure of the Holy Lamb. It was

formerly used to burn the Christmas candle in, on the high table at supper, during the twelve nights of the festival.

Mistletoe—a kind of evergreen plant much used for Christmas decorations. It was an object of particular veneration among the ancient Druids. The mistletoe grows on the oak tree.

Imminent—everpresent. **Peril**—danger.

To housemaids—and was a source of constant danger to the pretty housemaids, who, during the Xmas festival, if caught under a branch of mistletoe were liable to be kissed.

Para. 13. **Intent upon**—engrossed in; keen on. **Ring**—i. e., ring the call-bell outside the door.

Oxonian—a graduate or under-graduate of the University of Oxford.

Just from—only recently come down from. **University**—where he was “keeping terms.”

Fine—well-built and imposing looking. **Silver**—grey. **Open**—frank.

Florid—of a fresh ruddy colour.

Physiognomist—a person skilled in reading a person's character from the features and expression of his face.

Singular mixture—curious combination.

In which, &c.—one skilled in physiognomy could have made out from his features, had he been told, like I have been, of some of the old gentleman's peculiarities, that he was a man of eccentric temper and a benevolent heart. Irving quietly ridicules the claim of physiognomists that physiognomy is a science. Like palmists, physiognomists have to be told something about their subject before they can make anything like a correct pronouncement.

Para. 14. **Family meeting**—i. e., the meeting between Frank and the other members of the family.

Warm—cordial; full of feeling.

Ushered—introduced. **Company**—the people assembled.

It—the company assembled in the mansion. **Was composed of**—consisted.

Different.....connection—distant relations sprung from various collateral members of the family which was a very large one.

Usual proportion—the expected (or ordinary) number.

Comfortable—well married ; living in comfort ; well off.

Superannuated spinster—old maids. The force of superannuated here is to indicate that the maiden ladies had passed the age at which the state of unmarried life would reasonably be expected to terminate.

Page 184.

Blooming—in the full flush of their youth and beauty.

Half-fledged striplings—youth passing from boyhood to manhood—These youngsters are here spoken of as the young of birds whose feathers are only half-grown.

Boarding-school hoydens—romping girls still kept at boarding-schools, but who because of the Christmas holidays had come home from school. The word 'hoyden,' also spelt *hoiden*, was formerly applied to youth of either sex but now is generally applied only to a bold romping girl. A boarding-school is a residential school.

Round game of cards—a game of cards which does not admit of partnership, but in which each individual plays on his own account. Therefore the game is not restricted to any particular number of players.

Folk—people.

Budding—growing into manhood or womanhood.

Fully engrossed—completely taken up in playing.

Profusion—abundance.

Wooden horses &c.—toys of various kinds. Penny trumpets—cheap trumpets or bugles.

Tattered—broken and torn—i. e., the children had broken the dolls and torn their clothes.

Fairy beings—little children pretty and sportive as 'fairies' were supposed to be. Fairies are proverbial for their diminutive size.

Frolicked through—passed in play.

Showed.... night—indicated that a group of children, both boys and girls, had been playing there during the day but who with the advance of the evening had fallen asleep and had been carried away to their beds.

Para. 15. Scan—closely survey.

Restore.....state—make it as nearly like what its original condition had been as was possible.

Heavy—massive. **Warrior**—soldier. **By**—by the side of (preposition.)

Hung—was hung up against the wall. **Buckler**—shield.

Enormous—very long. **Antlers**—the horns of a deer. **Inserted in**—fixed in.

Branches—i. e., the arms of the horns.

Fowling-pieces—light guns for shooting birds. **Implements**—gear.

Cumbrous—heavy; clumsy. **Workmanship**—style of making furniture.

Convenience—elegance. **Carpeted**—covered with carpet.

Parlour and hall—resembled partly a well-furnished reception room and partly the common room of a house where the family gatherings took place.

Para. 16: **Grate**—a framework consisting of iron bars placed inside the fireplace to hold the coals whilst burning. It was too small to hold the yule-clog and had therefore been removed.

Overwhelming—enormous; (heavy and projecting).

To make way for—i. e., to make room for the lighting of a wood fire, &c.

Page 185.

Vast volume—great quantity (both of light and heat).

Yule-clog—vide para. 12.———**Cf.** Tennyson's description of Christmas in *In Memoriam*.

"The yule-clog sparkled keen with frost,
No wing of wind the region swept,
But over all things brooding slept
The quiet sense of something lost."

Was particular in—was very strict about.

Illumined—lighted. **According to**—in accordance with; following.

Para. 17. **Hereditary elbow chair**—arm chair which had been in the family for generations and had been used also by his ancestors. It was the seat of honour reserved for the head of the family.

Hospitable—where it was customary to entertain a number of guests, as was being done on the present occasion.

Like the sun of a system—a simile taken from the solar system ; just as the sun forms the centre of the group of the bodies called the solar system and imparts to them heat and light, so the squire was the central figure in that assembly of relations and dependants, all of whom looked up to him and depended upon him.

Beaming.....every heart—making all those who were around him cheerful and happy. And just as the sun disseminates its own warmth and light to all the heavenly bodies revolving round it, so the squire being the central figure and patron of the company was casting all about him his genial and kindly looks by which the hearts of his tenants, kinsfolk and other relations and retainers—seated all round him—were gladdened and cheered up.

Shifted—changed Position—the place where he was sitting.
Wag—move to and fro.

An emanation from the heart—a sincerity of feeling—when the hospitality is genuine, the feeling which prompts it is sincere and flows directly from the heart.

Felt—i. e., by the recipient.

Puts...ease—makes the stranger feel perfectly at home.

There is an emanation ease—from a sincerely friendly welcome and entertainment accorded to guests by the host there proceeds such a silent flowing out of the kindness and cordiality of his spirit that though it passes all description yet it is none the less unmistakable in its effect, as it is through the mysterious working of it, that the guests are at once made to feel quite at home, putting aside their natural hesitation and shyness.

Cavalier—gentleman (Lit. a knight—one who goes to war on horse back. The term was applied to the followers of king Charles I. in his conflict with the Parliament in the 17th century).

Para. 18. Announced—i. e., intimation was given that supper was ready.

Spacious—roomy.

Oaken—i. e., the floor was covered with boards made of oak and the walls had panels of oak let into them.

Panels—Wainscots ; wooden linings ; planks of wood inserted in a frame.

Shone with wax—were made to shine by being polished with wax ; they were covered with wax and then briskly rubbed over with cloth.

Family portraits—paintings of several members of the family.

Accustomed—customary ; usual. **Great**—big. **Tapers**—candles.

Wreathed with greens—garlanded with Xmas greens run through with a string.

Beaufet—side-board. **Family plate**—silver vessels belonging to the family, such as plates, dishes, mugs and the like.

Abundantly—plentifully. **Spread**—covered. **Substantial**—satisfying and strength-giving—not necessarily 'rich'

Fare—food.

Standing—permanent ; constant ; invariable.

Page 186.

My old friend—my favourite dish.

Minced pie—a small round pie made of a mixture of meat, eggs, sugar, resins, lemon, orange-peel and spices, all cut up into tiny pieces and enclosed in a cover made of flour.

In the ..feast—among the dishes served for supper.

Perfectly orthodox—quite according to old custom. The custom of eating 'minced pies' at Christmas time is a very ancient practice.

Predilection—particular liking or weakness for mince pies.

And that I needpredilection—and finding that I have no reason whatever to be ashamed of, and therefore to conceal, my special liking for mince-pie [The Squire and his tenants formed a non-puritanic conservative party, assembled at the family hall of the Bacebridges for joining in the time-honoured festivities of Xmas held in the perfectly orthodox style The puritans being rigid dissenters fasted on Christmas day and so the customary Christmas dishes such as mince-pie were strongly objected to by them.] What Irving means is this—not being among a party of Puritans he had no reason to be ashamed of his great liking for mince-pie.

I greeted.....acquaintance—I was as glad to see the mince-pies as I would have been to see an old friend, and I greeted him by eating a good number of these pies

Para. 19. Mirth—merriment.

Prompted—increased.

Humours—witticisms. **Eccentric personage**—funny character.

Quaint—peculiar. **Tight**—of a stout muscular build—not flabby.

Brisk—active. **Air**—manner. **Arrant**—confirmed ; thorough-going

Bill—beak.

Pitted with—marked with the characteristic little hollow scars of.

Dry perpetual bloom—a colour which had no freshness in it and never changed (unlike the bloom on young faces which is fresh and varies with every passion).

Like autumn—in autumn the leaves assume a reddish tinge previous to their falling off the trees By comparing the colour on Simon's face to the colour of frost bitten autumnal leaves, Irving quietly insinuates that old Simon was in the autumn of his life.

Vivacity—liveliness. **Drollery**—queerness of manner ; archness of manner, funny way of acting.

Lurking waggery of expression—a look of half-concealed mischievousness.

Irresistible—never failed to be amusing and so produced laughter.

Para. 20. The wit—the witty or funny man.

Dealing—indulging. **Sly**—i. e., on the sly or quiet. **Making**—causing ; creating.

Infinite—unbounded. **Merriment**—mirth ; fun.

Harping upon old themes—dwelling repeatedly on subjects which by his frequent reference to them had grown stale (one of his eccentricities).

Chronicles—the events which had occurred in the history of the family.

Next him—seated next to him at the table.

Continual agony of stifled laughter—in a state of great pain due to the constant attempt to suppress her laughter.

In spite of her awe of—notwithstanding that she was in great fear of.

Reproving—reproachful.

Opposite—in front of her, on the opposite side of the table.

Para. 21. He—old Simon **Idol**—the object of fond regard ; favourite ; darling.

Part—section—i. e., the boys and girls.

Turn of his countenance—at every change of expression of his face

Wonder at it—be surprised at it—their admiration was perfectly natural.

A miracle of accomplishments—a person unusually accomplished; a person having an extraordinary skill in a number of different arts. 'Miracle' is anything which transcends the ordinary laws of nature, and hence is highly wonderful.

In their eyes—in their opinion; in their estimation.

Imitate—enact.

Punch and Judy—well known characters in an ancient popular puppet-show. "Punch" is the buffoon of modern puppet-shows; he is a comic figure, fat and short, with an enormous hump on his back, a wide mouth and hooked nose. "Judy" is his wife. The puppet-show of 'Punch and Judy' represents a domestic tragedy—Punch in a fit of jealousy, strangles his infant child, when Judy flies to her revenge. She brings a club with which she beats her husband till Punch, exasperated, seizes another club and beats her to death, then flings into the street the two dead bodies. These attract the notice of a police officer, who enters the house. Punch flies for his life but is arrested by an officer of the inquisition and is shut up in a prison. From there he escapes by means of a golden key. The derivation of 'Punch' is uncertain; according to the generally received opinion it comes from *Paccio d'Aniello*, a humorous Neapolitan peasant of the 17th century. So recently as 1887 Punch and Judy shows were quite common sights in the streets of London and at country fairs but by 1900 their popularity seems to have died out.

Make a hand—shape his hand to resemble the head of an old woman by staining it with burnt cork and tying round it a handkerchief.

Page 187.

Ludicrous—comic; grotesque; exciting laughter.

Caricature—a ludicrous representation in which a general likeness to the original is preserved but the different parts or portions are monstrously changed or exaggerated.

Into such a ludicrous caricature—into such a funny representation of another object

To die with laughing—with—through—Lit. to laugh so much that the act of the laughing would kill them—'could not stop laughing.'

Para. 22. Let into—informed of ; told. His—old Simon's.

Independent income—an income which was not earned by work.

Careful—frugal ; economic. **Revolved through**—moved about among ; put up with.

Family system—the whole family including the collateral branches—the whole family is compared to the solar system.

Vagrant—eccentric ; erratic ; wandering. **Orbit**—the path of the heavenly bodies round the sun.

He revolved orbit—he was quite irregular in his round of visits to his relatives. The idea is taken from the path of a comet which is not uniform like that of an ordinary planet but very irregular, sometimes approaching quite close to the sun, at other times receding far away from it.

[Note—The whole family, including direct and collateral branches, is compared to a planetary system, of which the squire is the sun. The other members of the family moved in fixed orbits, like the planets, at less or greater distances from the squire, according to the degree of nearness of the relationship. Master Simon, however, has neither a family to care for, nor any definite duties to perform, and so leads an aimless life, which is compared to the irregular course of a comet, which cuts across the paths of the planetary system.]

Remote—i. e. as regards relationship.

Extensive connections—having a large number of well-to-do relatives.

Chirping buoyant disposition—cheerful, light-hearted temperament.

Always enjoying the present moment—always trying to find immediate opportunities for 'fun.'

Scene—place. **Company**—people ; associates ; society.

Rusty—surly ; peevish. **Unaccommodating**—selfish.

Uncharitably—unjustly—Irrving himself was a bachelor when he wrote the Sketch Book and remained so till his death.

His frequentcharged—old bachelors, living alone and seeing but little company, generally contract stiff and unconforming habits ; they lack that easy and obliging behaviour which makes a person agreeable to all kinds of society ; but this defect did not exist in Master Simon's case because of his frequent changes of scene and company.

Para. 23. Was a complete family chronicle—knew the complete history of the whole family, even of the collateral branches.

Versed in—had knowledge of—knew; **Geneology**—descent.

Intermarriages—i. e. marriages between members of the different collateral branches (of the same family)

Beau—a man admired for his good looks, smartness and gaiety.

Habitually—always **Among whom...**fellow—and so a suitable husband for one of them.

Master of the revels—the man who directed and superintended their games—"master of the revels" was formerly an office of the royal house-hold.

Sphere—circle. The sphere in which he moved—the little world in which he lived, i. e., the circle composed of the different branches of the family of the Bracebridges

Para. 24. **Factotum**—a man who was required to do everything, a jack of all work.

Particularly delighted—especially pleased.

Jumping with—agreeing with. **Humour**—fancy; opinion.

In respect to old times—in the matter of sticking to old ways.

Scrap—fragment; a few lines of. **Presently**—very soon after (supper).

Specimen—sample. **Talent**—aptitude. **Supper**—i. e., things connected with the meal.

Page 188.

Beverages—drinks. **Introduced**—brought on the table.

Called on for—asked to sing. **Bethought himself**—collected his thoughts; rallied his memory; recollected.

Sparkle—merry twinkle; gleam.

Excepting that--with the exception of this fault that &c.

Occasionally—now and then. **Ran ..into**—lapsed into.

Falsetto—a false or artificial voice, such as is the case when a man tries to imitate a woman's voice. **Singing** in this artificial voice is a type of singing by itself, and when a complete song is sung in a false voice the effect is melodious—but when a natural voice lapses in the course of singing one song occasionally into a falsetto the effect is less desirable.

Notes—the sounds produced from.

Split reed—cracked musical pipe Reed is the name for the hollow stems of many tall broad leaved grasses growing in marshy places. Musical instruments are made from the hollow stems of many of these grasses.

Quavered forth—sang out in a voice which had many vibrations in it—i. e., it was a quivering or shaking voice.

Ditty—song.

Beat up the dram—i. e., play music. (Lit. play on the drum again after its having been laid aside for a whole year.)

Make . cheer—entertain them in such a manner ; give them such a welcome ; show them such hospitality.

Keep out weather—make them insensible to the cold of the season ; make them quite warm and comfortable.

Para. 25. Disposed—inclined. After a hearty meal every one feels in high spirits and in good humour.

Harper—a person who sings songs to the accompaniment of the music of the harp

Strumming—(the use of this word is an instance of the figure *onomatopœia* in which a word illustrates the sound it signifies—cf. 'the *buzzing* of bees')—playing on the harp in an unskilful, monotonous manner

To all appearance—as far as could be judged from appearances ; evidently.

Comforting himself—trying to cheer himself by driving out of his head all melancholy thoughts and the idea of his miserable condition.

Home-brewed—'ale' brewed at home 'Brewing' is the process of preparing 'ale' or 'beer' by fermentation.

Hanger-on—a servile dependent.

Ostensible—nominally ; apparently

'Harp in hall'—music in the servants' quarters. The phrase is taken from old romances and ballads. Chieftains in the middle ages were attended by family harpers who celebrated the achievements of the 'House' in songs sung to the accompaniment of the music of their harps

Para. 26. Figured couple—"performed the figures or steps of the dance only between a few couples The dance was a 'country-dance' in which the dancers are arranged in two lines opposite each

other. The squire being an old man did not care to dance all the way down the lines but performed only a few steps.

Partner—one of the two that dance together, whether gentleman or lady.

Connecting-link—a bond of union. Being only middle aged and very active he could take part with the elderly people as also with the younger ones.

Old times and new—the elderly people who belong to the 'old times' and the younger people who belong to the 'new' times.

Withal—also. **Antiquated**—old fashioned **Taste**—style.

Accomplishments—social attainments. **Piqued**—prided **Gain credit**—win applause. **By**—over dancing, &c.

The heel and toe—A kind of dance in which the toe of one foot is brought up to the heel of the other.

Page 189.

Rigadoon—(Fr. *rigadon*, so called from the refrain *ric-dindon*—which ended a very old dancing song) A gay, brisk French dance, performed by one couple only.

Graces—dances with graceful steps or movements. **Ancient school**—older style.

Assorted himself with—chosen as his partner. **Romping**—boisterous.

Wild vivacity—boisterous agility. **Kept him stretch**—kept him in a hurry of movements; strained his agility beyond the bounds of elegance.

Defeated—frustrated. **Sober**—serious. **Elegance**—gracefulness

Who by her elegance—whenever the old gentleman tried to perform one of his elegant figures, he was violently hurried away by his nimbler partner to the utter disorder of his limbs and motions.

Ill-assorted—wanting in harmony and compatibility of temper; badly matched.

Matches—unions; used in a double sense (1) partnership in dance and (2) marriages.

Antique—old. **Prone**—have a tendency towards.

Para. 27. **Let out**—chosen for his partner. **Maiden**—unmarried.

Rogue—the young tease. **Little knaveries**—mischievous tricks.

With impunity—freely. **Madcap**—wild ; unruly ; wayward.

Like all women—women generally prefer dashing and wild young fellows to tame and submissive ones

Most interesting—most worthy of attention ; most charming.

Ward of the squire's—a girl under the guardianship of the squire

Shy glances—coy looks. **Kindness**—love.

Just the . girl—just the sort of person likely to cause a sentimental young girl to fall in love with him

Picked up—acquired ; learned. **Small—i. e., petty** in themselves but weighing much with ladies.

Draw landscapes—reproduce scenes from natural scenery by drawing them.

Dance divinely—dance exquisitely ; dance very well indeed

But above all—but what attracted the ladies more than anything else.

Wounded at Waterloo—this was his highest recommendation with the ladies, and made him quite a "hero" in their eyes ; he had participated in the glories and perils of the greatest of England's victories.

Well read in—who had read a good deal of. **Poetry—i. e., of the romantic school, e. g. Byron, Shelley, &c.**

Romance—the literature of romantic fiction ; novels treating of strange adventures.

Resist—withstand the attractions of.

Such a . perfection—one in whom were reflected, as in a mirror, all manly and graceful qualities ; the very pattern of heroism and grace.

The phrase seems to have been suggested by Shakespeare's description of Hamlet as—

" The glass of fashion and the mould of form.

The observed of all observers "

Para. 28. Caught up—picked up. **Guitar**—a stringed musical instrument—the favourite musical instrument of the south of Europe, especially Spain and Italy.

Lolling—leaning carelessly against ; reclining indolently.

Attitude—pose ; posture. **Studied**—assumed (in imitation of the style of some one else) for the purpose of producing effect.

Began—commenced to sing. **The**—particular ; the favourite.

Air—tune—here, a song sung to the particular tune.

Troubadour—The Troubadours were a class of minstrels who flourished in the south of France in the middle ages, and composed poems and songs which they sung to the accompaniment of the harp. Their songs and poems were chiefly on amatory and warlike subjects. The word comes from the Provencal *trouber*, to invent

Exclaimed against—objected to.

Page 190.

Good—genuine. **Minstrel**—songster.

Casting up his eye—looking upward, as if to recollect some appropriate love song.

Struck into another strain—began another tune ; burst forth into another tune.

With a charming air of gallantry—assuming the winning manners of a gallant lover towards his mistress. 'Gallantry' does not here mean bravery but the respectful attentions of a lover to the lady of his heart.

Herrick—See note on 'Poor Robin' in para. 14, p. 175.

Night-Piece—A serenade, or complimentary song addressed to a person at night. The whole is the address of a lover to his mistress, inviting her to meet him at night.

THE SONG.

(1)

Lend thee—to light thee on thy way. **Her eyes**—'Her' refers to the glow-worm and 'her eyes' to the bright speck in the tail of the female firefly.

Cf. Heber—Evening on the Ganges.

"The fire-fly lights her lumps of love"

Shooting-stars—meteors which dart through the sky with a brilliant glow.

Attend thee—wait on thee, i. e., guide thee on thy path.

Elves—fairies **Glow**—sparkle brightly. **Befriend thee**—help thee in finding thy way.

(2)

Will-o'-the-Wisp—called also jack-o-lantern is a luminous appearance seen in marshy places which often leads travellers astray.

Mislight—lead astray, i. e., from the road to our meeting place.

Slow-worm—a harmless reptile having a very brittle body, also called "blind worm." The bite of the 'blind-worm' is more poetical than real.

Cf. Shakespeare's *Midsummer Nights' Dream* :—

"You spotted snakes, with double tongue,
Thorny hedge-hogs, be not seen;
Newts, and blind-worms, do no wrong
Come not near our fairy Queen."

On, on thy way—go ahead on thy way.

Stay—pause. Affright—frighten.

(3)

Dark—darkness Cumber—obstruct; hinder; impede.

What though—elliptical for 'what does it matter though.'

Moon does slumber—is not shining in the sky. The moon is fancifully spoken of as 'slumbering' during the dark phase.

Tapers—candles. Clear—bright.

The stars . number—though the moon does not shine, yet that ought not to discourage thee for the myriads of stars that are shining will, like so many bright candles, light thee on thy way.

Cf. Shakespeare, who calls the stars
"blessed candles of the night."

—*Merchant of Venice*—V. 1, 220.

(4)

Then Julia—i. e., since I have pointed out that nothing can be a bar to your coming to meet me

Woo thee—persuade thee; win thee over to doing what I request.

Silvery—white

Thy silvery feet—thy feet white and shining like silver, "silver-footed" is the translation of a Greek phrase used as a permanent epithet of Thetis, the mother of Achilles.

Cf. *Ben Johnson*—

"And all the silver-footed nymphs were drest
To wait upon him, to the ocean's feast"

—*Neptune's Triumph*.

My soulthee—I will tell thee of my soul devouring love for thee

Para. 29. In compliment to—to be in praise of.

Unconscious—unaware.

Application—reference; i. e., that the song was intended to apply to her.

Cast upon—looking down at

Suffused—spread over; covered over. Blush—colour, caused by rush of blood to the face. Beautiful—because it added to her beauty

Gentle...bosom—soft flutter of emotion in her breast.

Of. Goldsmith—

“The bashful look, the rising breast
Alternate spread charms”

—*The Hermit.*

Exercise—exertion.

[Note.—The doubt of the author is only *affected*. There can be no doubt that the song was really in compliment to the ‘fair Julia’. The attitude and aspect of the lady which the author pretends to ascribe to her indifference and to the fact that she had been dancing shows clearly that she was keenly alive to the purport of the song.]

Page 191.

Plucking to pieces—pulling to pieces, i. e., the tearing asunder the bunch and plucking some of the petals out of the flowers.

A choice . flowers—A bunch or nosegay of selected hot-house flowers

Hot-house flowers flowers grown in a conservatory or glass-house provided with heating apparatus. By this means out of season flowers and plants, native of tropical countries, are reared in the winter season in England.

Para. 30. Broke up—dispersed

Dusky glow—a faint glimmer The idea is probably taken from Milton's *Il Penseroso* :—

“Woe glowing embers through the room
Teach light to counterfeit a gloom.”—

The season . . . abroad—the Christmas season, when according to popular belief no evil spirit can be seen about. Cf. Hamlet Act I, Sc. I.

“Some say that ever” against that season, comes
Wherein our Saviour's birth is celebrated
The bird of dawning singeth all night long
And then they say, no spirit dare stir abroad”

Steal from—go out stealthily from, so as to be unobserved.

The fairies . . . hearth—the reference is to the domestic fairies called Brownies, who were in the habit of visiting the house and stretching themselves at full length across the chimney—Cf. Milton's L' Allegro : —

“Then lies him down the lubber fiend,
And, stretched out all the chimney's length,
Basks at the fire her hairy strength;
And crop-full out of doors he flings,
Ere the first cock his matin rings”

Para. 31. Ponderous—heavy. Fabricated—designed and built; manufactured.

In the days of the giants—in some mythical age when giants lived and built many stupendous things, things too massive and bulky to be built by man

With—had Carved—wrought into figures by the chisel.

In which . . . intermingled—the design of the carving was that of a mixture of flowers and grotesque images

Stared mournfully—gazed sadly. Faded—soiled by time.

Damask—a kind of cloth with a rich silky appearance and of a flowery pattern, so called from Damascus in Syria where it was made.

Tester—a flat canopy over the head of a bedstead

Niche—a hollow in the wall

Para. 32. Strain—sound Break forth in the air—be diffused in the air.

The waits—the amateur musicians who come round on Xmas eve night to sing carols

Casement - window.

Receded - retired further and further from the base of window and therefore also from me.

Soft—subdued. Aerial—faint, like those of music wafted from a distance on the breeze.

Accord with—harmonise with. Tender—soft and faint

Remote—distant

Summary.

1. Irving drove with Bracebridge to his house in a post-chaise.
2. Bracebridge proceeds to describe his father, the squire, to Irving, telling him that he is a man of the old type.
3. The squire is a strict conservative in his tastes and opinions, taking "honest Peacham for his text-book rather than Chesterfield," and is a great advocate of the revival of old rural games.
4. Living off the main road, and in a secluded place, the old squire does just as he likes, indulging all his old fashioned whims. Being the biggest landholder in the neighbourhood, he is looked up to by all the tenants.
5. They reach the gate of the squire's mansion.
6. The gate-bell was rung and the wife of the porter came out of the porter's lodge to open the gate, apologizing for her husband's absence by saying that he was up in the servants' hall, taking part in their Xmas merry making.
7. Alighting from the chaise at the gate the two friends walked along an avenue to the house.
8. Bracebridge junior is filled with rapture at the sight of the scenes of his childhood and tells Irving that his father always supervised their games with as much strictness as some parents supervise the studies of their children.
9. A troop of dogs of all sizes and breeds run towards them barking and with their mouths open, as they approach the house, but on recognizing Bracebridge their barking was changed into whelping.
10. The squire's mansion was an irregular building showing in its various parts different styles of architecture.
11. The grounds of the mansion were laid out in the old fashioned style of gardening, the new fashioned style of imitating natural scenery being regarded by the squire as too democratic and hence not suited to a country with a monarchical form of government.
12. Music could be heard proceeding from the servants' hall where the old Christmas games were evidently in full swing.

13. The servants were so intent upon their Christmas sports that it was some time before we could get them to hear our bell. On our arrival being announced we were met by the squire and his two other sons. The squire's countenance disclosed a singular mixture of whim and benevolence.

14. As the evening was far advanced, the squire would not permit us to change our clothes but introduced us in our travelling garments to the company assembled at his house. The party consisted of people of both sexes and of all ages—mostly distant relatives, descendants of collateral branches of the original stock.

15. The apartment, in which the guests were assembled, presented the appearance of an odd mixture of parlour and hall.

16. The grate from the fireplace had been removed in order to make room for the yule clog, which, according to ancient custom, was blazing in the fireplace.

17. It was really delightful to see the old squire seated in his hereditary elbow-chair, by the hospitable fireplace, beaming warmth and gladness to every heart. There is an emanation from the heart in genuine hospitality which cannot be described, but it immediately puts the stranger at his ease. I had not been in the house many minutes before I found myself made quite at home, as much as if I had been one of the family.

18. Supper was announced shortly after our arrival. It was served in a spacious oaken chamber. Besides the usual lights, two great wax tapers called Christmas candles, wreathed with greens, were placed on a highly polished beaufet among the family plate. The squire made his supper of frumenty, though the table was spread with an abundance of substantial fare. I was happy to find mince pie among the dishes.

19. The mirth of the company was greatly promoted by the humours of an eccentric personage whom the squire called Master Simon. He was a brisk little man, with the air of an arrant old bachelor.

20. He was evidently the wit of the family, dealing much in sly jokes with the ladies, and making infinite merriment by harping upon old themes.

21. He was the idol of the younger part of the company for he must have appeared a miracle of accomplishments in their eyes. He could imitate Punch and Judy; make an old woman of his hand and cut an orange into ludicrous caricature.

22. Master Simon was an old bachelor of a small independent income, which, by careful management, was sufficient for all his wants. He revolved through the family system like a vagrant comet in its orbit, sometimes visiting one branch and sometimes another. His frequent changes of scene prevented his acquiring those rusty unaccommodating habits with which old bachelors are uncharitably charged

23. Master Simon was a very popular person. He was a complete family chronicle, he was the beau of all the elder ladies and superannuated spinsters amongst whom he was considered rather a young fellow, and he was master of the revels among the children.

24. Of late years he had resided almost entirely with the squire, to whom he had become a factotum and whom he delighted by jumping with his humour in respect to old times, and by having a scrap of an old song ready to suit every occasion. After supper was over Simon was called upon to sing and he quavered forth a quaint old ditty.

25. An old harper from the servants' hall was next summoned. He was a kind of hanger-on of the establishment.

26. Then there followed a dance which, like most after supper dances, was a merry one. Some of the older folk joined in it—the squire himself figured down several couple with a partner with whom he had danced at every Christmas for nearly fifty years. Master Simon who piqued himself on his dancing had all his sober attempts defeated by assorting himself with a romping school girl

27. The young Oxonian had led out one of his old maiden aunts. The most interesting couple in the dance was the young officer and a ward of the squire's, a beautiful blushing girl of 17. The young officer was just the hero to captivate the heart of a romantic girl. He was tall, slender and handsome, could draw, sing and dance and talk French and Italian and had been wounded at Waterloo.

28. Immediately after the dance, the young officer picked up a guitar and began a little French air of the Troubadour. The squire objected to anything but good old English on Christmas eve. The young minstrel thereupon gave Herrick's 'Night-Piece to Julia'

29. Julia never looked at the singer all the time he was singing but kept her eyes cast upon the floor. She must however have known that the song was intended to apply to her for she blushed, and in her excitement plucked to pieces a choice bouquet of hot house flowers.

30. The party broke up, after the song, for the night with the kind hearted old custom of shaking hands. As I retired to my chamber I found that the Yule clog still sent forth a dusky glow.

31. My room was in the old part of the mansion. The room was panolled, with cornices of heavy carved wood. The bed was of rich though faded damask and stood in a niche opposite a bow window.

32. I had scarcely got to bed when a strain of music seemed to break forth in the air just below the window. It proceeded from a band of carol singers. They went round the house, playing under the windows. As the sounds receded more and more, they became more and more soft and aerial and when they ultimately died away, my head sunk upon the pillow, and I fell asleep.

ESSAY XXVI.

Page 192.

CHRISTMAS DAY—Washington Irving.

Para. 1. Woke—awoke out of my sleep.

Had been a dream—had not actually occurred but had been seen by me in a dream, and that I was merely recalling what I had seen in a dream.

But—except. Identity—sameness. Ancient—old-fashioned.

Chamber—room. The identity ... chamber—the fact that I was still in the same room in which I had slept during the past night. Convinced me—made me certain of.

Their—refers to the events of the previous evening.

Reality—actuality. Musing—meditating and contemplating.

On my pillow—awake, but with my head on my pillow.

Little feet—the feet of little children.

Pattering—to patter is to make a noise like that of falling drops of water or hail. Little children having short legs take small strides, and hence their steps are quick. Their bodies being light the noise their feet make against the floor is also slight. Hence the sound made by little children's feet would be a quick succession of small sounds. Pattering therefore means, making a quick succession of small sounds like the sounds made by drops of falling rain.

Whispering consultation—a consultation carried on in a whisper or undertone. Consultation—mutual deliberation

Presently—very shortly afterwards.

Choir—lit. a band or organized company of singers, especially in church service—here means only a band or group.

Small—little ; weak—being voices of children.

Chanted—sung. Forth—out.

Christmas carol—a carol is a song of praise or devotion, such as is sung at Christmas or Easter.

Of. “ In the darkness sing your carol of high praise—Keble.

Burden—refrain—that portion of a song or hymn which is repeated at the end of every verse.

Rejoice—be glad in your heart ; be joyful.

Our saviour—according to the Christian faith Jesus Christ came on this earth in the form of a man and with a man's nature in order to experience what temptation was, and by his death on the cross, he secured salvation in the next world for all believers, if they honestly repented, on this earth, for the sins committed by them.

Para. 2. Rose—got out of bed. Softly—noiselessly. Slipped on—hastily put on.

Beheld—saw.

Beautiful little fairy groups—small group of beautiful little fairy—like children The allusion is to the popular belief that fairies are very small creatures Of

“ Fairies small, two foot tall
With caps red on their head ”

—*Dodsley's old plays : Fumius Troes*, l. 5.

(See illustration facing the title—page).

Painter could imagine—the children were so pretty that even the imagination of an artist could not have created prettier creatures.

Lovely—beautiful.

Seraphs—a seraph is one of an order of celestial beings, each having three pairs of wings. In *Ecclesiastical art* and in poetry a seraph is represented as an angel, and therefore as very beautifully.

Going the rounds of—visiting the different portions of.

Every chamber door—outside the door of every room.

Appearance—i. e., before them

Mute bashfulness—a shyness which made them speechless.

Remained—remained standing where they were.

Playing onfingers- moving their fingers over their lips in a playful manner, indicative of indecision.

Stealing—snatching stealthily so as to be unobserved whilst so doing.

Shy glance—a furtive side look at me.

From under—hidden by.

By one—by the same. Impulse—sudden resolution to act.

As if impulse—as if prompted by the *same* sudden determination to act.

Scampered away—ran hurriedly away.

Turned—turned round.

An angle—a turning. Gallery—passage.

In triumph—in a triumphant tone. Escape—i. e., from me.

Page 194.

Para. 3. Conspired—combined. A conspiracy is an agreement between a number of persons to act together to accomplish a common purpose.

Produce—bring about Feelings—which one person entertained towards the others—relations

Stronghold—Lit. a place of security—here means a place where the old-fashioned hospitality was so securely kept that it could not escape Hence a place where the old-fashioned hospitality was preserved or maintained. The severe conditions of life in modern times are making it more and more impossible for people to be so hospitable now as they used to be in the olden days.

Old-fashioned hospitality—Hospitality on the scale, to the extent and in the spirit in which it used to be dispensed formerly.

Looked out upon—opened out on—faced.

Beautiful landscape—a lovely piece of natural scenery.

Sloping lawn—a stretch of land covered with well-trimmed grass and inclining downwards.

Fine stream—a lovely, clear brook.

Winding—flowing along with many twists and turnings.

Foot—bottom.

Note—the lawn was sloping and dipped down in the direction of the stream.

Tract—stretch ; expanse

Park—a tract of ground kept in its natural state, about or adjacent to a residence, for the preservation of game, for walking, riding, or the like.

Beyond—on the other side of the stream.

With—having growing on it.

Noble clumps—magnificent or noble clusters.

Herds of deer—a number of deer together is technically called a 'herd'

At a distance—situated a little distance away.

Neat hamlet—a compact little village.

Hanging over—impending over it, floating about in the air over the houses.

Dark—blackish looking.

Spire—a tower tapering upwards to a point ; church steeple.

Strong relief—pronounced contrast

Custom—fashion **Which**—the fact of the house being surrounded by evergreens. In England, in the winter season trees are denuded of their leaves ; they put forth new leaves in spring.

Extremely frosty—freezing hard.

Vapour—mist ; moisture.

The light vapour.... cold—from the light evening vapour was precipitated or caused to fall down, the white frosty substance called hoar-frost by the action of the cold at night.

Fine—tiny. **Crystallisations**—minute white depositions of hoar-frost.

Bright—brightly shining ; brilliant.

Dazzling effect upon the glittering foliage—the leaves of the trees were covered with tiny crystals of ice formed by the frost converting the water vapour (mist) into ice. The sun's rays falling upon these brightly shining crystals were reflected from them with an almost dazzling brilliance.

Robin—a kind of small bird with a red breast.

Perched upon—seated upon, when speaking of birds the proper word to use is "perch"

Mountain ash—a species of mountain tree.

Hung—dangled. Clusters—bunches.

Just before—right in front of.

Basking—warming himself in the heat of the sun's rays.

Cf. "Basks at the fire his hairy strength. Milton.

Piping—uttering in a shrill tone.

Querulous—peevish ; murmuring.

Glories - grandeur. Train—tail.

Strutting—pacing about with that affectation of movement which accompanies the consciousness of dignity.

With the pride—in the proud manner which characterises the walk of.

Gravity—in the dignified manner which characterises the walk of.

Spanish grandee—Spanish nobleman. Spain was at one time the first power in the world, uniting as she did under the rule of one sovereign dominion not only over Spain and the New World, but also the territory included in the Holy Roman Empire. Spain is no longer what she used to be, but the nobility of Spain cannot forget their past greatness. Hence even to this day they affect what no longer they can legitimately claim. Successive strokes of good fortune had raised their forefathers to a position of enviable eminence in Europe. This circumstance developed in time a type of character and that character has been transmitted by the principle of heredity to succeeding generations ; and though in modern times Spain is but a shadow of her former self, yet the pride and arrogance which characterised every action of the Spanish grandees of old has been tenaciously retained by their degenerate descendants. *Covernton* remarks —Spaniards are famed for a certain grave dignity, so that, as Bacon says, they seem wiser than they are. Hence the comparison of a peacock to a Spanish nobleman, proud and gorgeous, but dull, is especially apt.

Terrace—a raised level space or platform of earth, supported on one or more sides by a wall or a bank of turf.

Para. 4. Scarcely—not quite. Invite—call me to attend.

Showed me the way—pointed out the way to me by going ahead of me.

Principal part—the greater number of the members constituting the family.

Assembled—gathered ; collected.

Gallery—a platform projecting from the walls of a building and overlooking a ground-floor.

Furnished—supplied ; stocked.

Hassocks—small, thick cushions for resting the knees when kneeling during prayers so as to save the clothes from getting dirty.

The old gentleman—the squire

A desk—the desk referred to was a standing desk—one built so high as to enable a person to read from a book placed on it whilst in a standing posture

In front of—facing. **Acted as**—acted the part of.

Page 195.

Clerk—a parish officer. being a layman (not a clergyman) who leads in reading the responses of the Episcopal church service, and otherwise assists in it. (Webster)

A clerk is always subordinate to a higher officer—in the case of the clerk of a church, he is subordinate to the Rector

Made the responses—the responses are the answers of the congregation to the priest or clergyman, in the litany and other parts of the Divine service. Master Simon *alone* made the responses during the private service conducted in the squire's mansion.

Acquitted himself—discharged the duty entrusted to him, **Greatest** utmost

Gravity—solemnity of deportment.

Decorum—propriety of behaviour ; decency.

Para. 5. Constructed from—adapted from—it was composed by modifying one of Herrick's poems.

Herrick Robert Herrick was born in London, and studied in St John's and Trinity Hall Cambridge, 1613-17. His 'wild,' unbaptised rhymes' quickly earned him the friendship of Ben Jonson and his ring of hilarious spirits in London. In 1629 he took orders and was presented to the Daven living of Dean Prior near Totus. In 1647 the Puritan Supremacy ejected him, but he resumed his duties in 1662. He died in 1634. The whole collection of Herrick's poems number more than 1200, and many of them are among the most exquisite examples of English Lyric art. His principal poems are (1) The mad maid's song (2) The Night Piece to Julia (3) Gather ye rose-buds (4) To Daffodils (5) Cherry ripe (6) Bid me to live, &c.

Adapted to—set to the music of.

Melody--musical tune.

Good voices--for singing

Effect -effect is something that is produced by an operating agent or cause--effect here therefore means the *impression* that was produced on the hearers by the singing of the carol.

Extremely--immensely

Particularly gratified--especially delighted.

Exaltation--elevation--due to the joy, the hope and the satisfaction which he felt.

Sally--outburst. Lit. *Sally* means the issuing of troops from a place besieged to attack the besiegers

Grateful feeling--feeling of gratitude. **Delivered**--sang

Glistening sparkling or gleaming with emotion.

Rambling out of--wandering away from.

Bounds of--restrictions or limits placed by the necessity of attending to &c

His voice rambling out . . . tune--he singing utterly regardless of the requirements of the air or the timing of the music.

Crown'st--adorn ; bless

Glittering sparkling with youth, beauty and plenty.

Guiltless mirth--innocent merriment or pleasure.

Wassail bowles--Wassail is a salutation used on New Year's Eve and New Year's Day over the spiced-ale-cup, hence called the Wassail bowl. (From Anglo-Saxon, *was heil* be whole ; be well).

—Brewer.

The beverage used for a Wassail-cup was made of ale flavoured with spices, sugar, toast, roasted apple, &c.—also called lambs wool.

In ancient times Wassail was an expression of good wishes on a festive occasion, especially in drinking to some one Geoffrey of Monmouth, relates on the authority of Walter Calenius that this lady (Rowena), the daughter of Hengist, knelt down on the approach of the king and, presenting him with a cup of wine, exclaimed Lord King *waes heil*, that is, literally, Health be to you—N. Drake.

Lord--Vocative case -- O' Lord.

Plenty-dropping hand--abundance. **Dropping**--giving. The word dropping is used to convey the idea that the abundance is sent from High, the Abode of God.

Soiles—makes the soil of my land fertile.

For my bushell sowne—for the bushell of seeds that I sow.

Twice ten for one—20 bushells by way of harvest.

Para. 6. Understood—came to know.

Saint's day—the special days of the year dedicated to each of the saints of the English church

Once—at one time. Universally—generally; throughout the country.

The case—*i e*, early morning service used to be read on Sundays and saint's days.

Seats—homes. Custom—the practice.

Falling into neglect—is being neglected; is gradually being given up.

Dullest—most superficial—one who cannot penetrate beyond the externals or surface of things.

Sensible of—aware of; conscious of; must have noticed.

Order—regularity, hence, general tranquillity.

Serenity—peacefulness. Household—homes.

Exercise of—participation in.

Beautiful—graceful. Gives—furnishes; supplies.

Key-note—the fundamental tone of a chord, to which all the modulations of the piece are referred—here means the leading or prominent trait or characteristic.

Temper—disposition of mind; mood.

Gives the key note to every temper—imparts its own characteristic to all tempers; sets all tempers in harmony with its own.

Attunes to harmony—adjusts all temperaments to mutual agreement and good will. [The metaphor is from *harmony* as used in music, which means “a simultaneous combination of accordant sounds”]

Must be sensible harmony—what Irving means is shortly this:—That the practice of occasional attendance at family prayers in the morning impresses the senses with an idea of righteousness, and this impression imparted in the early morning lasts throughout the day tincturing every thought that enters the mind and every act that is done. This feeling is productive of the best results. - It

seems to establish and maintain generous and kindly relations between the different members of the family and to give to daily life an order and serenity which is otherwise generally wanting.

Page 196.

Para. 7. Denominated—called ; designated (from Lat. *nomen*, name).

True—downright.

Old English fare—the food that was usually eaten at breakfast in the olden days in England when the country was conservative in spirit.

Bitter—occasioned by pain or distress felt by the mind.

Lamentations—expressions of regret. **Of**—consisting of.

Censured—blamed. **Modern**—present day.

Effeminacy—the weakness and delicacy characteristic of women but which is unbecoming a man.

Weak nerves—deranged nervous system which makes men nervous and causes them to lose their manliness.

Decline—falling away of—show disappearance.

Old—the former. **Heartiness**—vigour.

Admitted them—permitted such things as toast and tea to be served at his table

Palates—tastes. **Brave**—bold—suggests the idea of competition with the commodities preferred by modern taste, such as tea, toast &c.

Sideboard—a sort of sidetable.

Para. 8. Master . . Mr.—young boys and youths before they are grown up into manhood are styled "Master"—adults are termed Mr. **But**—except.

Escorted—accompanied. The word 'escorted' means accompanied with a view to protect from danger and since the companions were dogs, the use of the word is very appropriate.

Gentlemanlike—well-behaved ; well-trained.

Seemed—appeared to be.

Loungers—loiterers. **Establishment**—the place.

Loungers about the establishment—dogs which were allowed to roam about the place at will. Hunting dogs are kept confined in their kennels until they are required out for a hunt. So also are watch

dogs, being let loose only at night. These dogs were neither exclusively watch dogs nor hunting dogs. They were merely kept in the house as pets and companions without being required to do anything in particular

Frisking—lively ; active ; given to leaping and gamboling.

Spaniel—a species of dog with long ears and long hair covering its body

Steady—sober ; not frisking ; sedate.

Stag-hound—a species of dog used in stag-hunting.

Race—stock of dogs

Time out of mind—for such a large number of years that it had been forgotten when the first dog of that stock had been bought.

Dog-whistle—a special whistle used for calling dogs.

Obedient to—obeyed the summons communicated by the blowing of the whistle.

Hung to—was suspended from ; was fastened in.

Gambols—playful tricks ; sportive pranks.

Glance—cast a look sideways.

Small switch—a little whip

Para. 9. Still more—yet more.

Venerable—old **Look**—appearance.

Yellow sunshine—sunlight which has a yellowish tinge.

Pale moonlight--white light of the moon.

Remember that Irving was introduced into the presence of the house late on Christmas eve and he first saw it by moonlight.

Feel the force—realize the truth.

I could not idea—I could not help realizing the truth of the squire's view.

Formal terraces—terraces made in strict accordance with forms or rules

Heavily moulded—massively built.

Balustrades—rows of balusters or pilasters, joined by a rail, serving as a railing for balconies.

Clipped—trimmed into various shapes.

Air—style.

Aristocracy—superiority, owing to rank, wealth and social position.

Carried with aristocracy—were associated with the idea that they formed an inseparable part of a nobleman's stately mansion

Unusual—extraordinary ; very large.

I termed a flock of them—I called a collection of a number of pea-cocks a '*flock*'

Gently—courteously.

Phraseology—use of words.

I must peacocks—that a collection of peacocks was properly called a *muster* and not a flock. Both *muster* and *flock* are words used to denote a collection of individual birds of a particular species.

Page 198.

In the same way—similarly.

Air—manner. **Pedantry**—display of mere book learning.

Went on—proceeded.

Sir Anthony Fitzherbert—A writer of the 16th century whose "Book of Husbandry" appeared in 1523, and was very popular at the time. He died about 1538.

Ascribe to—attribute to ; credit the bird with.

Glory—pride **For**—because.

Being praised—when it is praised **Presently**—immediately

Set up—spread out.

Against the sun—in such a fashion as to intercept the sunlight. So that by falling on it, the colours of the tail will shine out

To the intent—with the intention or purpose.

At the fall of the leaf—during autumn when, in England, the leaves of trees fall off.

When his tail falleth—during which season also the peacock sheds the feathers of its tail

Mourn—lament the loss ; fret over the loss.

Hide—conceal himself so that he cannot be seen.

Corners—secluded places. **Come again**—grow again.

Note.—Notice the petty and superficial pedantry of Master Simon.

Para. 10. Display of small erudition—parade of “a little learning”

Whimsical—trifling.

Consequence—importance.

Great favourites with—*i. e.*, that peacocks were his father's favourite birds.

Extremely—exceedingly ; to the utmost extent.

Keep up—maintain ; preserve. Breed—stock.

Keep up the breed—make the species continue to multiply,—so that it might not be extinct

They belonged to Chivalry—they were associated with the age of chivalry—the middle ages when bold and adventurous knights—errant went about the world in pursuit of noble deeds.

They had—they were characterised by.

Pomp—display. Magnificence—grandeur.

Highly—most appropriately.

Becoming—fitting ; suiting.

Old family mansion—the old family dwelling house of an ancient and noble family.

Air of greater state—an appearance of greater grandeur and dignity.

Perched—seated. Antique—ancient ; old.

Stone balustrade—the pillared railing of a terrace or balcony made of stone.

Para. 11. Hurry off—go away in a hurry ; rush off.

Appointment—a meeting with others arranged by agreement.

Choristers—singers in the choir of the village church.

Perform—render, both instrumentally and vocally—there was no organ in the village church.

Music—musical compositions.

Agreeable—pleasant.

Cheerful flow of animal spirits—display of activity and good humour.

Little man—small man ; man of short stature.

Confess—admit. Surprised—astonished.

Apt—suitable ; fitting.

In the range reading—within the list of authors whose works are usually read by people.

Circumstance—fact.

Page 199.

With a smile—a smile playing on his lips whilst he was telling me ;—because he was amused at the opinion I had formed. I had naturally thought that Master Simon, since he had read and could quote so readily from the works of out of the way authors, was also well versed in the works of the authors of repute. From what Frank Bracebridge told me I found that I was wrong.

Whole stock of erudition—total amount of learning.

Studious fit—a sudden and short-lived attack of the reading mania.

On a evening—because nothing else could then be done.

Ancient—old time **Worthies of the pen**—writers ; authors—This is somewhat sarcastic because Simon did not really quote from the works of the famous writers of the earlier times but only from second and third rate writers.

Were his standard authorities—were the writers from whom he adopted his views and opinions.

Who know—who have read ; who are acquainted with.

Looked up to them—regarded them with a veneration amounting to.

Kind of idolatry—a species of idol worship.

Quoted them—repeated their opinions—reproduced extracts and passages from their writings.

Note.—People who read a number of books on the same subject by different authors soon find out that no individual writer's opinions can be said to be entirely correct whilst those of another entirely wrong. Writers contradict each other so much in relation to their views on same subject. When however a person had read only a few books at the outside, he is liable to accept the views expressed by the few writers whom he has read as 'gospel truth' and as infallible.

On all occasions—the meaning implied is whether their quotation at the time and in that particular connection would be appropriate or not.

Picked out of—chosen from. Adapted to set to.

Tunes—airs That were popular—that found favour.

Choice spirits—acknowledged authorities on music.

Last century—eighteenth century.

Practical application—apt quotation *i. e.*, his quotations from authors which fitted the particular circumstance under consideration.

Scraps of literature—quotations from books.

Looked upon—regarded. Prodigy—wonder; marvel.

Note—Irving may here have had in mind Goldsmith's lines on the village schoolmaster.

Para. 12. Distant toll—they could not hear the tolling of the bell but they could hear the sound produced by the tolling of the bell—They heard the ringing of the churchbell in the distance.

Little particular—laid some insistence on. Household—*i. e.*, the persons constituting his household—includes also servants.

Considering—the squire considering or regarding it as.

Thanks—thanksgiving.

Old Tusser—Thomas Tusser (1527-80), in Fuller's phrase "successively a musician, schoolmaster, servingman, husbandman, grazier, poet, more skillful in all than thriving in any vocation," was born at Rivenhall, Essex. For a time chorister at St. Pauls, he was educated at Eton and Cambridge; and after residence at court as a retainer of Lord Paget, he married and settled as a farmer in Suffolk, where he compiled his famous work, *A Hundred Good Pointes of Husbandrie* (1557) Tottel published in 1573 an edition of this book entitled "*Five Hundred Pointes of Good Husbandrie*," with a curious metrical autobiography.

Withal—in addition. Feast—entertain—give food and drink to.

Para. 13. Disposed—inclined. Specimen—sample.

Achievements—*i. e.*, what he is capable of doing in the line of music.

As—since. Destitute—without.

An organ—a large musical instrument built on the principle of a harmonium for playing the tunes of sacred music. The characteristic feature of an organ is the volume of sound it gives out.

Band—a company of musicians.

Page 200.

Amateurs—those who practise themselves a little in music from a liking for the science without intending to make music their profession or to earn a living out of their knowledge of the science.

Established—formed.

Sorted a choir—formed a choir by selecting singers from among the residents of the village. The voices that constitute a choir should not be uniform—some should be high pitched, others low pitched, some should be deep others not so—in short a mingling of *bass* and *tenor* voices is required to produce the desired effect

Choir—a band of singers who assist in the musical portions of the Divine Service.

As he—in the same manner as ; according to the same rule as—i. e., according to the direction given in Jervaise Markham's '*Country Contentments*,' a work which contains directions as to how to select dogs for a pack so that their cry may be pleasant to hear and not discordant. Simon is such a worshipper of the few authors whom he has read and is at the same time so dense that he cannot see that directions which may be useful when applied to dogs may not be of any assistance at all when selecting members to form a choir.

Bass—those who are required to sing in a deep tone.

'Deep solemn mouths'—a quotation from Jervaise Markham and applied by him to the bark of hounds. **Mouths**—voices.

Tenor—the highest of the male adult chest voices—the part above the bass in harmonized music.

'Loud ringing mouths'—another quotation from Markham and applied by him to hounds

Ring—sounding. **Mouths**—voices.

Bumpkins—awkward country louts—what in Hindustani is implied by the word '*dehati*.'

'Sweet mouths'—another quotation from Markham—'sweet sounding voices'

Culled—picked out.

Affirms—asserts ; states.

Your—the use of this word implies a reference to the class of female singers as a whole.

Wayward—full of troublesome whims and caprices.

To accident—to go wrong—i. e., out of tune and time.

Para. 14. The most of—the greater number of.

The park—the park adjoining the squire's residence.

Adjoining it—joining on to it. Low—low-roofed.

Snug—comfortable.

Parsonage—the residence of the parson or the village clergyman.

Coeval—of the same age as, *i. e.*, as old as ; built about the same time as.

Matted—covered, as with a mat.

Trained against—*i. e.*, trained to grow against.

Foliage—growth of leaves.

Apertures—openings ; holes. Formed—made.

To admit light—to allow of the passage of light.

Antique—ancient.

Lattices—windows made of laths or strips which cross one another like net-work.

Sheltered—protected from the changes of the weather.

Nest—compact, neat, comfortable little residence.

Cf. Wordsworth.

“ A single small cottage, a *nest* like a dove's.”

—‘ *Reverie of Poor Susan* ’

Also cf. Tennyson—“ Father will come to his babe in the *nest*.”

—‘ *Mother's Song* ’

Issued forth—came out. Preceded—went ahead of.

Para. 15. Sleek—stout ; fat ; (round)

Well-conditioned—in good condition—the metaphor is taken from the condition of animals, which are said to be in good condition if they are not lean.

Snug living—comfortably paid appointment.

Vicinity—neighbourhood—near to.

Little—small in stature.

Meagre—lean ; slight.

Grizzled—black streaked with grey.

Stood off—did not adhere to the head near the ears but stood out.

Shrunk away—shrivelled up ; dried up.

Filbert—a kind of nut that grows in a shell. When the kernel of the nut dries, it becomes reduced in a size and falls away from the sides of the shell enclosing it. The parson's wig is here compared to the shell of the filbert and his head to the kernel which had become shrivelled up, and so had fallen away from the sides of the shell.

Rusty—a coat the colour of which, owing to old age and long use, had turned from pure black to a reddish-black tinge.

Great—loose.

Skirts—trousers. **And pockets**—the size of the pockets was so large.

Held—contained.

The church bible and the prayer-book—the bible and prayer-book used by the clergyman during service at church are of an exceptionally large size to allow of their being printed in large type to facilitate the printed matter being read by the clergyman without raising the books from the desk or table on which they are placed.

Page 201.

Seemed still smaller—owing to the contrast.

Planted in—placed in—his wearing.

Decorated—ornamented. **Enormous**—very large.

Buckles—a buckle is a device, usually of metal, consisting of a frame with one or more moveable tongues or catches, used for fastening things together, as parts of dress or harness, by means of a strap passing through the frame and pierced by the tongue.

Para. 16. Chum—a person who occupies the same rooms with another at school or college. Being thrown constantly together such people become very friendly with each other and often contract life-long friendship.

Received this living—been appointed parson of this village church. The appointment is called 'living' because it carries with it the right to collect tithes or 'tenth parts' which forms the principal source of the parson's income.

Complete—perfect ; thorough-going.

Black-letter hunter—Black-letter is the old English or Gothic letter in which the early English manuscripts were written and the first English books printed (Webster). Black-letter hunter is therefore a person given to the study of books and manuscripts in

black-letter, *i. e.* of old books—out of date books Of “Kemble, a black letter man”—Boaden

Roman character—the type in which modern books are printed

Editions of—editions printed by *i. e.*, in the times of.

Caxton—William Caxton was the first English printer. He learned the art of printing in Bruges, doubtless from the famous Colard Mansion, and on his return to England, he established his wooden printing-press at Westminster. The first book in English printed by him was put through the press at Bruges—the *Recuyell of the Historyes of Troye*. It was published in 1474. There are ninety-nine known distinct productions of his press.

Wynkin de worde—Caxton's successor in the printing trade in England

Delight—pleasure.

Indefatigable—untiring; unwearying.

Fallen into oblivion—been forgotten by the modern generations of readers.

Deference—respect; regard.

Notions—ideas Diligent—careful, close.

Investigations—-inquiries.

Festive rites—the ceremonies observed on festive occasions.

Former—the older

Zealous—keen; ardent.

Boon companion—a convivial companion—a *bon vivant*.

Plodding spirit—a frame of mind which loves drudgery of its own sake; ‘to plod’ is to labour hard, to drudge

Cf. Shakespear's *Love's labour lost*;—

“Small have continual plodders ever own, save base authority from other books.”—

Adust—unromantic; not sentimental. Follow up—pursue.

Track—line; subject. Denominated—called; termed.

Indifferent to—regardless of; not caring for.

Intrinsic nature—real worth—*i. e.*, its actual value or usefulness as a line or subject of study.

Be the illustration of—*i. e.*, embody.

Ribaldry—obscenity of language.

Cf. Macaulay—"the ribaldry of his conversation moved astonishment even in that age."

But it was **learning**—but his antiquarian researches were conducted in that spirit in which diligent, laborious, unsentimental persons devote themselves to any line or branch of study simply because it is called a branch of learning. That is to say, his antiquarian researches were not the outcome of any real, lively interest which he took in the matters of antiquity but were pursued with the sole object of pleasing his patron, and his disposition was such that he could not take up any subject without going thoroughly into it, and whether the subject interested him or not.

Poured over—read—studied.

Intensely—attentively.

Seemed to have been—appeared if they had been.

Reflected into his countenance—left their impression or mark upon his face.

If the . . . **mind**—if the saying that "the face is an index of the mind" be correct—i. e., if it be true that a man's mental attainments find expression in his countenance.

Title page—the title page of a book is the page which indicates what subject the book deals with and what particular portion of that subject it treats of.

Black-letter—a book printed in black-letter, hence a very old book.

They seemed . . . black-letter—the subject matter of these old books had been so thoroughly absorbed by him into his mind that the expression of his face was moulded by the ideas and sentiments which he gathered therefrom—and if it be true that the expression of a man's face correctly indicates the condition of his mind, then, the parson's mind having been full of antiquarian learning the expression of his face could very well be compared to the title page of a book printed in black-letter.

Para. 17. Porch—portico.

Sexton—an under officer of the church who takes care of the sacred vessels, vestments, &c, acts, as janitor, and may also have to dig graves.

Observed—remarked. **Unholy**—not hallowed ; profane.

Profaned—made or rendered unholy.

Druids—the priests of the Britons when they were heathens, *i. e.*, before their conversion to Christianity.

Mystic—mysterious ; shrouded in mystery ; heathen.

Innocently—without being guilty of impiety.

Employed—used.

Festive ornamenting—decorations on festive occasions.

Halls and kitchens—of private houses.

Page 202.

Deemed—regarded.

Fathers of the Church—the early advocates of Christianity, who may be thus classified :—

(1) The five apostolic fathers, who were contemporary with the apostles.

(2) The primitive fathers—those advocates of Christianity who lived in the first three centuries.

(3) The fathers—or those of the fourth and fifth century, who were of two groups, those of the Greek and those of the Latin Church.

Sacred—connected with religion or the church.

Sacred purposes—religious uses.

Tenacious—obstinate.

Strip down—pull down—denude or strip the walls of.

Humble trophies—(a trophy is literally a memorial of victory) unpretentious emblems ; poor memorials.

The humble.....taste—the decorations which were the fruits of his own simple taste.

Enter upon—commence.

Para. 18. Interior—inside.

Venerable—impressive of the sanctity of religious worship.

Mural monuments—paintings on the wall, (mural lit. means pertaining to a wall).

Effigy—the sculptured likeness of a person.

In—clad in.

Crusader—warrior who had taken part in the Crusades, which were military expeditions under the banner of the cross undertaken

by the Christian nations of Europe to recover the Holy Land from the Turks.

Signalised—distinguished ; won much fame.

Holy Land—Palestine, so called because Jesus Christ was born, lived, preached and died in Palestine. When the Mahomedan powers conquered Palestine from the Byzantine Empire, knights from all parts of Europe joined themselves together to fight the moslem and rescue, at least Jerusalem, where there was the tomb of Christ, from their grasp. The series of wars undertaken with this object were known as the *Crusades*.

The same—the same person.

Para. 19. Pew—one of the compartments in a church which are separated by low partitions, and have long seats upon which several persons may sit. Pews were originally made square (see the illustration facing p. 24) but now they are made long and narrow.

Very audibly—loudly, so that they could be distinctly heard.

Evincing—showing.

Ceremonious devotion—devotion to formal requirements.

Punctually—carefully ; strictly.

School—type—manner of bringing up ; ways of thinking.

Old—ancient.

Irving implies that people who are connected with ancient families are very conservative, and in their conduct display a tenacity to formal requirements which the more liberal spirit of modern times is dissolving. Such people seem to think in some such way—because I belong to an ancient family, therefore I must, whether I like it or not, stick to the love for formality which characterised the conduct of my forefathers—this will help to show that I am descended from an ancient family because notwithstanding the powerful liberalism of modern times I cannot get rid of that which is “bred in the bone.”

Folio prayer-book—a prayer-book of the size of a sheet of paper only once folded over.

With something of—with a movement that partook of the nature of.

Flourish—ostentatious embellishment ; movement of the arms, hands and fingers for the sake of show.

Possibly—perhaps.

Show off--display and hence call forth admiration for.

Enriched—decked ; decorated, beautified.

Look of—appearance of.

Family relic—something coming down in the family from father to son--an heirloom.

Evidently—unquestionably—it could be easily noticed.

Solicitous—anxious ; concerned.

Intently—sedulously ; eagerly, (an Adverb).

Beating tune—indicating the timing to be observed by the singers and players by the movement of his arms.

Gesticulation—movement of the head and arms.

Emphasis—stress, indicated by vehement gesticulation.

Para. 20. Whimsical—fantastical.

Grouping—collecting together, grouping literally means arrangement according to some principle.

Piled—located without regard being paid to order or arrangement.

Pale—wan looking

Retreating forehead and chin—a forehead and chin which instead of standing out, were so shaped as to appear as if they receded backwards.

Clarinet—a musical instrument played by blowing.

Page 203.

Seemed to point—he looked so lean and pale that it seemed as if his exertions in playing the clarinet had worn out his face till nothing was left of it but a mere speck.

Purdy—fat and thick set. **Labouring**—i. e., exerting himself in playing.

Bass-viol—A stringed instrument of the violin family used for playing the bass or the low toned notes in a tune or melody.

Show—expose or present to view.

But—except.

Top—crown. **Round**—round-shaped.

Bald—denuded of hair.

Like—which looked like.

Egg of an ostrich—ostrich eggs are roundish in shape and large, often the size of a man's head. The skin covering the head would be white, and so the appearance would not be unlike that of an ostrich egg. It is also usual to compare a bald head to a "bladder" or 'ball' of lard.

Which—the faces

Keen—lit. penetrating; sharp—here bitterly cold.

Gentlemen—male. Chosen—selected.

Cremona fiddles—violins of the greatest excellence; so called from Cremona, in Italy, where for many years lived some makers of them who have gained a world-wide notoriety, such as Andrea Amati and Antonio his son, Antonius Stradivarius his pupil, and Giuseppe Guarnerius the pupil of Stradivarius. Cremona has long since lost its reputation for this manufacture. (Brewer). Cremona fiddles were very ugly and ungainly to look at but very sweet toned.

Looks—presentable looking faces.

Like, &c.—on the same principle as—viz., more for tone than for looks.

Had .. .book—had to look over the same book whilst singing—i. e., had to read the words of the hymn from the same book.

Clusterings—collections; groupings.

Odd physiognomies—strange and curious looking faces

Not unlike—double negative—i. e., very much like.

Cherubs—the word cherub has two plural forms, both of them being sanctioned by Webster—cherubs, the English, cherubim, the Hebrew. In some parts of the Bible we come across cherubims. Eliezer Edwards, in his dictionary of words, facts and phrases, says that this is wrong.

Not unlike....tombstones—the odd looking faces of these men when side by side, resembled the groups of grotesque looking faces of cherubs which unskilled country sculptors cut into tombstones sometimes to be seen on graves in the country.

Para. 21. Usual—ordinary—every Sunday.

Services—performances.

Vocal parts—singers. Generally—as a rule.

The instrumental—the musicians.

The whole performance is here compared to a dramatic representation and the two portions into which the performance was divided—the vocal and the instrumental are spoken of as parts allotted to the several actors who take part in the dramatic representation.

Lagging a little behind—hanging a little behind—i. e., not keeping up with.

Loitering—lingering; tarrying. The musicians are compared to a number of men out for a walk, some of whom go ahead faster than others whilst others fall behind because they linger or tarry on the road.

Fiddler—violin-player.

Making up for lost time—making amends for being behind the other players.

Travelling over—going over; playing through the musical accompaniment of.

Passage—portion of the hymn or psalms.

Prodigious—marvellous; wonderful.

Celerity—rapidity; quickness. **Clearing**—skipping over.

Bars—there is here a pun on the word bar. It is used in two distinct senses (1) to mean bars in music and (2) to mean obstacles in the way of hunters. A bar in music is a space on a sheet of music paper which represents a certain length of time and so, bars time the sequence of the different notes. By skipping several bars the player was enabled to play a note before she should have done and thus to catch up these players who were playing ahead of him.

Clearing more bars. ...death—the loitering fiddler skipped over more bars on his sheet of music, in order to be able to play the concluding notes of the tune together with those who had been playing ahead of him, than the most ardent fox-hunter would have jumped ditches and fences which he could have avoided by going round a little, so that he might be with the other hunters at the time when the fox was run to death by the hounds.

The death—the death of the fox. It is considered an indication of great skill in horsemanship to be able to keep up with fox-hounds—hence all hunters are eager to be in at the death.

Trial—effort of the day.

Anthem—the meaning of the word is “verses sung alternately by opposite sides of a choir”. Dr. Johnson thinks that it is derived from *anti*, opposite and *hymnos*, hymn; but other authorities say it

is from the Greek compound *anti-phon*. The latter theory is certainly better supported than Dr. Johnson's. (Edwards).

Prepared—put together.

Arranged—i. e., which half of the choir should sing which verse, &c.

Founded—based.

Founded great expectations—which he had thoroughly made up his mind would turn out a success.

Blunder—mistake which nothing afterwards can rectify.

Onset—start ; commencement.

Flurried—nervous ; agitated.

Was in a fever—was much excited ; was in a condition of great excitement.

Lamely—in an imperfect manner.

Which seemed to be—what subsequently happened would justify one in thinking that it had been agreed upon by the company that it should be the signal.

Signal—sign ; indication.

Parting company—not singing together but by himself, independent of the other members of the choir.

Shifted for himself—managed for himself in the best way that he could.

The end—the end of the chorus.

As well—in the best way. **Soon**—hurriedly ; rapidly ; quickly.

Old chorister—an old man who was one of the singers in the choir.

In—wearing.

Horn spectacles—spectacles of which the pebbles were set in rims made of the horn of some animal.

Bestriding—resting across. **Pinching**—because it was too small for the size of the nose.

Sonorous—sounding—because he sang through the nose.

A little apart—at a little distance from the others.

Wrapped up—thoroughly engrossed.

Melody—melodious singing.

Kept on—continued. **Quavering**—rapidly shaking; quivering; vibrating.

Course—melody; tune.

Kept on . . . course—kept on singing with a quavering voice.

Page 204.

Wriggling—moving, twisting and turning his head about.

Ogling—looking at with side glances. **Ogling his book**—casting side long glances at his book of music.

Winding up—terminating; finishing up.

Nasal solo—a flourish sung through the nose and by him alone.

Three bars' duration—extended over a period of time represented by three bars of musical tune.

A nasal solo . . . duration—a long-drawn monotonous note sung by himself alone through his nose for three whole bars after the others had stopped.

Para. 22. Erudite—learned.

Sermon—specifically, a discourse delivered in public, usually by a clergyman, for the purpose of religious instruction, and grounded on some text or passage of scripture

Rites—observances; ordinances.

It—Christmas day. **Supporting**—backing up; strengthening.

Usages—practices. **Earliest**—most primitive; most ancient; oldest.

Enforcing—adding weight to his opinions by citing in support of them the authority of such men as, &c.

Theophilus of Cesarea—was Bishop of Antioch 169-177 A. D.; and wrote an important apology of Christianity.

St. Cyprian—Thascius Cæcilius Cyprianus, one of the great fathers of the church, was about 200 A. D., probably at Cathage; and, after teaching rhetoric there, became a Christian about 245. He was made a bishop in 248

St. Chrysostom—St. John Chrysostom, so named from his eloquence, was born at Antioch about 34 A. D., and trained by his pious mother Anthusa. He studied oratory for the career of advocate but he later on took to the church. His eloquence and earnestness of his preaching secured for him the reputation of the greatest orator of the church; and in 398 the Emperor Arcadius made him

Archbishop of Constantinople Chrysostom bestowed much of his revenues on hospitals, sought to reform the lives of the clergy, and sent monks as missionaries into Scythia, Persia and other lands

St. Augustine—the first archbishop of Canterbury. He was sent over to England by Pope Gregory in 596, with 40 other monks, to convert the Anglo-Saxons to Christianity, and establish the authority of the Roman See in Britain

Cloud—host. **Copious**—ample; numerous.

At a loss to perceive—could not quite appreciate the necessity for.

Mighty array of forces—powerful muster of authorities; an overwhelming mass of authorities cited [The metaphor is taken from the mustering of troops to defend a stronghold, against the efforts of besiegers to take it by force; this mustering of so many troops is no doubt absurd if there be none to fight with].

To maintain a point—to try tenaciously to establish a contention.

Legion—a very great number. A legion was a division of the Roman Army.

Ideal adversaries—imaginary enemies.

Contend with—fight against. **Having**—since it so happened that he had.

Researches—inquiries; investigations.

Completely embroiled—thoroughly entangled.

Sectarian controversies—the disputes which had taken place between the representatives of the different religious sects

Revolution—‘the Puritan Revolution’ Prof. Gardner dates the period as extending, roughly, from the accession of James I. to the end of the Commonwealth.

Fierce—savage; vehement. **Assault**—attack.

Ceremonies of the church—ceremonial observed in the course of church service.

The Puritans made ... church—Covernton writes:—“The Puritans objected to the use of any elaborate ritual in the church services because they held all such practices to savour of popery and therefore of idolatry; they claimed to worship God as a spirit in spirit, and therefore renounced the aid of adventitious forms and ceremonies. They particularly objected to the meretricious and quaint

customs of Christmas as being either wholly pagan in nature and origin, or, at best, papistical."

Poor old Christmas—Christmas festivities.

Driven out of the land—proscribed.

Proclamation of Parliament—i. e., by statute.

Cf. also—Lay of the Last Minstrel.

"The bigots of the iron time

Had called his harmless art, a crime."

Scott.

Lived but...past—his antiquarian researches confined him to a world that was filled with ideas which had been current in the past but which had long been abandoned. By reason of his antiquarian studies he breathed an atmosphere which belonged to by-gone ages, and his knowledge of the state of affairs in this world was of that state which had existed in those 'ancient' times.

Present—existing conditions.

Para. 23. Shut up among—confined to.

Tomes—volumes ; books—usually of that large size in which the older books were issued.

Retirement—seclusion.

Pages of old times—the accounts of the conditions which existed in the past—the matter contained in old books.

Were to him—supplied the place of.

Gazettes—newspapers—some have derived the word gazette from *Gazatta* a small venetian coin. But Mr. Wedgwood (Dictionary of Etymology) thinks it is an error to suppose that the original newspaper was so named from the *Gazatta*. The meaning of the word Gazette, or Gazetta, is derived from the *gazza*, a magpie, and *gazetta* means all sorts of idle chattering, like that of the magpie. Hence the word would be a fitting title for a paper circulating at Venice, and filled with the title-tattle of Venice, Rome, and Amsterdam. The value of the *gazetta* (coin) was so small that it could never have been the price of either a written or printed sheet.—(Edwards).

The pages of day—the old (and worm eaten) books treating of old subjects of antiquity were to him as interesting as the newspapers and other periodicals of the present time devoted to the discussion of current topics are to others.

Era—epoch ; age. Revolution—Putitan revolution:

Elapsed--passed. Fiery--vehement ; ardent ; fierce.

Poor mince-pie--mince-pies are eaten at Christmas time, so mince-pie stands for the Christmas festivities.

Plum-porridge—a kind of stew made from plums.

Denounced--stigmatized ; branded.

Mere Popery—as a return to the practice of the Roman church.

The fiery persecutionpopery—fierce attacks made upon such innocent dishes as mince-pie and plum-porridge used during Christmas.

Roast beef--the eating of the flesh of the ox roasted.

Anti-christian—against the true spirit of Christianity ; pertaining to Anti-christ—the great opposer of Christ and christianity.

Roast beef as anti-christian—Covernton remarks :—" not so denounced on its own account but as being connected with the papistical dishes and ceremonies of Christmas."

The following passage from Nedham's History of the Rebellion will be found to the point :—

All plums the prophet's sons defy,
And spice broths are too hot ;
Treason's in a December pye,
And death within the pot.
Christmas farewell, thy days I fear
And merry days are done ;
So they may keep feasts all the year,
Our saviour shall have none.

Christmas—the old Christmas festivities and merry making.

Brought intriumphantly—re-introduced into the country in triumph as Charles II., the restored monarch, entered London in triumph.

Page 205.

Merry court—merry times--The years following the Restoration were years of unbridled licence and gaiety in England. It was but natural that the re-action against the Puritanical severity should go as far, it not further, in the opposite direction, and result in an absence of restraint which amounted to a national scandal (see introductory note on Addison).

He—the parson.

Kindled into warmth—grew more and more eloquent and enthusiastic.

With the ardour of his contest—as his struggle became more and more earnest or keen.

And the ... combat—and the number of arguments which he was called upon to refute increased in number. As the parson went on with his sermon, he introduced hostile opinion after hostile opinion into his discourse, and he was then required to refute them all in order to establish his own position.

Stubborn—keen—i. e., one in which neither side was willing to give in readily.

Prynne—an English barrister who was early drawn into controversy, and during 1627-30 published five Puritan and Anti-Arminian diatribes. In 1633 appeared his *Histrio—mastix*; the players scourge, for which, on account of a supposed reflection on the virtue of Henrietta Maria, he was in 1634 sentenced to have his book burnt by the hangman, pay a fine of £5,000, be expelled from both Oxford and Lincolns Inn, lose both ears in the pillory, and suffer perpetual imprisonment. He remained a prisoner till 1640 when he was released by a warrant of the House of Commons. On the Restoration of Charles II he was 'kept quiet' by being appointed keeper of the Tower Records. He died in 1669.

Champions—Advocates

Roundheads—roundheads was a term of contempt applied to the Puritans in the time of Charles I, from their custom of cutting their hair close to the head; the Royalist party wearing theirs in ringlets.

Urging—entreating. Affecting—touching, appealing.

Stand to—stand by; follow; stick to **Traditional—ancient,** being transmitted age to age by word of mouth.

Fathers—forefathers; ancestors.

Anniversary—a day on which some famous event is annually celebrated.

Of the church—The Christian church was founded with the birth of Christ which was on Christmas morning.

Para. 24. Attended—followed. Apparently—visibly. Effects—consequences.

The congregation—those who had been present in church.

Gaiety of spirit—merriness of mood.

Ule ! Ule !—it was a custom in Yorkshire for little children to shout Ule ! Ule ! after the church service on Christmas morning : these words mean nothing—they are merely expressive of joy.

Uncouth—old ; strange ; awkward.—(See footnote in the text at p. 205).

Cf. :—Gray.

“ With *uncouth* rhymes and shapeless sculpture decked,
 Implores the passing tribute of a sigh.”

—‘ *Elegy written in a country churchyard.*’

Of yore—of time, long ago.

Doffed—took off.

Giving ... season—at the same time wishing him a happy and merry Christmas.

Appearance--show. Heartfelt—genuine ; real.

And I heard .. poor—I did not see the squire giving any alms, but from the fact that I heard blessings pronounced by some of the poor people I inferred that he did give alms quietly to some of them.

Worth—worthy of esteem, noble.

Cavalier—landed proprietor ; squire. Almost all the landed proprietors sided with Charles I. in the civil war—the landed interest was on the side of the king.

True--Pre-eminent ; characteristic. Hospitality and charity are characteristic features of the Christmas season.

Page 206.

Para. 25. Generous--charitable ; kind. Rising—elevated.

Prospect—view of the scenery in the distance.

Rustic merriment--the merry-making of the villagers.

Benignity—graciousness ; kindness.

Beauty—brightness, which made everything look beautiful and cheerful.

Inspire philanthropy--fill one with philanthropic sentiments.

Philanthropy--benevolence towards the human race.

Cloudless journey—journey across a cloudless sky—this mode of expression though perhaps poetic is not scientific and so, scarcely fitted for prose—The sun does not journey—it is a fixed body.

Acquired sufficient power—the rays of the sun had become sufficiently hot—i. e., the day was far enough advanced to allow of the sun's rays being hot enough, &c.

Bring out—expose to view. Living green—the bright green colour.

Adorns—decks ; beautifies.

English landscape—English natural scenery.

Tracts—expanses. Smiling verdure—pleasant looking green.

Contrasted with—showed up in contrast with.

Dazzling—glittering—because of the sun's rays falling on the snow.

Slight—light. Exhaltations—vapours.

To contribute to—to add to ; to increase the volume of.

Their haze—light mist. Hung—hovered

Truly—really. Cheering—gladdening ; animating.

Triumph—conquest ; victory. Warmth—heat ; (geniality).

Frosty thralldom—the bondage of snow. Emblem—sign ; indication.

Chills—coldness. Thawing—melting.

There was something.....flow—it was indeed a gladdening and pleasure giving sight to see the heat of the sun's rays melting the winter snow which covered the ground and thus exposing to view the beautiful green of the English landscape. This scene was characteristic, as the squire remarked, of the particular season, for, just as the sun's heat melted the snow of winter, so the warmth and geniality of Christmas hospitality and welcome dispelled for a time all the uncharitable feelings and selfishness which are harboured by people, and their hearts went out one to another.

Indication of good cheer—signs of cooking.

Reeking—issuing.

Being welcome—being received with welcome.

The world—every one's home.

Poor Robin—Herrick, (see ante).

Page 208.

Malediction—curse. Churlish—narrow-minded.

Repine—feel discontented ; murmur inwardly, complain.

Fain—gladly. Despatch him—do away with the Christmas festivities.

With old Duke Humphry dine—to dine with Duke Humphry means to go without dinner altogether. Humphry, Duke of Gloucester, son of Henry IV. was renowned for his hospitality. On his death it was reported that a monument would be erected to him in St. Paul's but his body was interred at St. Alans. When the Promenaders left for dinner, the poor stay-behinds who had no dinner used to say to the gay sparks who asked if they were going, that they would stay a little longer and look for the monument of the "good Duke"—(Brower).

May Squire... 'em—may they be hanged. Squire Ketch was the public hangman during the reign of James II—He executed many of the people whom Jeffreys convicted.

Para. 26. Went on—proceeded. Lament—regret.

Deplorable—lamentable ; regrettable.

Decay—dying out ; falling into desuetude.

Orders—classes ; sections of the community.

Manor houses—residences of Lords of the Manors who were something like our taluqdars.

At—during. Covered—spread.

Brawn—-a preparation of meat made from pig's head, ox-feet, cut up, boiled and pickled. Covernton remarks that in the middle ages any flesh might be denominated 'brawn.'

Humming ale—strong ale, so called because it made the head hum or grow dizzy : Beaumont and Fletcher mention a strong drink called "Hum."

—Covernton.

Resounded—could be heard.

Effect—result.

Promotion—furthering—encouraging.

Them—old country games and local customs.

They—i. e., the old country games and local customs.

Merrier—more jovial ; more intensely happy.

Kinder—more social ; less selfish.

Truly—heartily ; sincerely. Curious—fastidious.

Preciseness—exactness.

All pretended—entirely put on. Gravity—sobriety ; severity.

Hence—from our midst Sports—amusements ; games.

Thrust away—cast from us.

Ancient honesty—the sincerity and frankness of former times.

Para. 27. Almost—very nearly. Simple—artless—guileless.

True-hearted—sincere ; genuine. Peasantry—peasant-class.

Broken asunder—separated themselves from. Higher—the upper

Separate—distinct, one from the other.

Ale-house politicians—ignorant and unconsequential people who have picked up a few words of politics and air their opinions in ale houses.

Page 209.

In good humour—in a satisfied frame of mind.

Hard times—difficult times, when there is such a wide breach between the upper and the lower classes of society.

On their estates—at their country seats (instead of in town or abroad)

Set going again—start afresh (by giving encouragement to).

Para. 28. Project—plan. Mitigating—allaying ; abating ; moderating ; lessening.

Public discontent—the dissatisfaction of the lower classes.

Kept open house—kept his house open to all comers.

How to play their parts—how to behave (conduct) themselves.

In the scene of hospitality—in the squire's hospitable house, which remained open to all comers (*i e*, without special invitation).

Uncouth—odd ; awkward. Circumstances—incidents.

Manor—the land belonging to a lord or nobleman, or so much land as a lord or great personage formerly kept in his own hands, for the use and subsistence of his family. The narrower of the above meanings would equate a manor with the *sir* or *khud-kasht* lands of Indian Tenancy Law.

Overrun—filled to excess.

Vagrants—vagabonds ; tramps ; idle wanderers.

Drawn—attracted. **Neighbourhood**—locality.

Decent—respectable.

Make merry—enjoy themselves.

Instead of keeping 'open house' or issuing a general invitation to all who might care to call at the hall to partake of its hospitality, the squire (i) invited the decent part of the neighbouring peasantry to the hall on Christmas day and (ii) among the poor he distributed bread, beef and ale, so that they might make merry in their own dwellings.

Para. 29. Fancifully—curiously ; whimsically—we speak of that as fanciful which is irregular in taste and judgment—the fanciful becomes the fantastic when it becomes grotesque and extravagant as well as irregular.

Ribands—also called ribbon, a band (narrow or wide) of silk or satin used for fastening or ornamenting some part of female dress.

Clubs—short, heavy massy, sticks ; cudgols.

Struck up—played. **Peculiar**—strange ; quaint.

Air—tune.

Performed—went through. **Intricate**—the steps of which were complicated.

Crowned—having his head covered with.

Flaunted—hung ostentatiously.

Page 210.

Capering—leaping ; prancing ; jumping about frolicsomely.

Antic—quaint.

Para. 30. Eyed—viewed. **Fanciful**—curious.

Exhibition—show. **Delight**—pleasure.

The island—Great Britain. **Plainly**—clearly.

Lineal descendant—direct descendant.

Sword dance—a kind of dance performed with naked swords in hand.

Met with—came across. **Traces**—remains.

Revival—restoration from a state of neglect, oblivion or depression.

Too apt—much too likely. **Cudgel-play**—fighting with clubs.

Para. 31. Concluded—ended ; over.

Entertained—treated to.

Stout—strong. **Home-brewed**—home made ale, the process of making *ale* is technically termed *brewing*.

Mingled among—mixed with. **Rustics**—the country peasants.

Awkward—inelegant ; ungainly ; clumsy.

Demonstrations—exhibition ; manifestations—acts intended to show.

Deference—respect.

Making something of a grimace—pulling a face at the squire behind his back.

The wink—a look having meaning.

Pulled grave faces—restored their faces to their normal appearance and looked serious.

Demure—meek—modest.

More at their ease—more at home.

Romped—played about boisterously. **Type**—pattern.

Vagrant—wandering.

Tolled the sweets round—went round kissing all the pretty girls in the neighbourhood just as the bee goes about collecting honey from all the flowers growing about.

Tolled—levied by way of a tax or toll.

Para. 32. Bashfulness—shyness and reserve.

Gave way before—yielded to.

Page 211.

Good cheer—good food.

Affability—courteousness ; civility.

Gaiety—merry-making. **Orders**—classes.

Excited—created ; called forth.

Bounty—generosity.

Small pleasantry—little joke. **Frankly**—unreservedly

With open mouths—eagerly. **Retorts**—replies ; answers.

Gratuitous—voluntary—one that has no real occasion for it.

Para. 33. Abandoned to—given up to. Passed to—to ; went to.

Commanded—overlooked. Perceived—saw.

Pandean pipes—flutes.

Jig—a light dance. Glimpse—sight.

Colouring up—blushing.

Ran off—ran away ; disappeared.

Roguish—mischievous.

Affected—put on.

Analysis.

[N. B.—This analysis is a paragraph by paragraph analysis].

The author awakes in the morning and is greeted at his door by a group of fairy-like children chanting an old Christmas carol. His morning reflections—joins the family service—the squire's joyous song—takes his breakfast—walks about the grounds with Master Simon—Dissertation on the peacock—further particulars about Master Simon—goes to church with Frank—The parsonage—the pastor—his full description—Behaviour of Master Simon at church. Master Simon's grand orchestra a failure—the pastor's learned sermon in which he fights with the imaginary enemies of Christmas—merriment of the congregation after church—description of the landscape and moral reflections upon it—Poor Robin's malediction against the enemies of Christmas—lament of the squire on the decay of old games and amusements—the growing discontent of the peasantry—a rustic dance and the squire's dissertation upon it—entertainments of the rustics—Master Simon's popularity with the lower orders—conduct of the coquettish housemaid.

ESSAY XXVII.

NIL NISI BONUM—William Thackeray.

Nil Nisi bonum—an abbreviation of the Latin phrase "*De mortuis nil nisi bonum*" which means, "of the dead (let us speak) nothing but good.

Para. 1. Almost—the use of this word indicates that among Sir Walter Scott's dying words were those which follow—they were not absolutely his last words—some other sentences escaped from his lips even after he had uttered the words referred to.

Spoke to—said to.

Lockhart—John Gibson Lockhart was Sir Walter Scott's son-in-law and his biographer. He was born at Cambusnetharmanse near Wishaw, 14th July 1794, and spent his boyhood in Glasgow, where at eleven he passed from the High School to the College, and whence at thirteen, with a Baliol Snell exhibition he went up to Oxford. In 1813 he took a first in classics; then, after a visit to the continent, studied law at Edinburgh and in 1816 was called to the Scottish Bar. But he was no speaker; and having while still at Oxford written the article "*Heraldry*" for the *Edinburgh Encyclopædia*, and translated Schlegel's *Lecture's on the history of Literature*, from 1817 he took more and more to letters, and with Wilson became the chief mainstay of Blackwood's. In its pages he first exhibited the caustic wit that made him the terror of his Whig opponents. Lockhart met Scott first in May, 1818, and in April 1820, he married his eldest daughter *Sophia*. In 1825 he removed to London to become editor of the *Quarterly Review*, at a salary of £1,100 per annum; and this post he retained till 1853, in 1843 becoming also auditor of the Duchy of Cornwall, a *Sinecure* worth £400 a year. But his closing years were clouded by illness and deep depression; by the secession to Rome of his only daughter, with her husband Mr Hope-Scott; and by the loss of his wife in 1837, of his two boys in 1831 and 1853. The elder was the 'Hugh Littlejohn' of Scott's *Tales of a grandfather*; the younger, Walter, was a scapegrace in the army. Like Scott, Lockhart visited Italy in search of health; like Scott he came back to Abbotsford to die 25th November, 1854.

Be a.....dear—live an upright, honest, gentlemanly life.

Page 212.

With the lips—at the very last moment of his life—when he was almost at death's door. The last words uttered by the dying man are compared to the insteady burning of a candle flame before it is extinguished. When the flickering ends, the flame is extinguished, when the last words are uttered the breath, that uttered them, is no more.

Sighed a farewell—bade adieu, not by means of words which, at the last moment, he could no longer utter, but by heaving a heavy sigh.

Passed away—died.

Blessing them—pronouncing a blessing on them.

Para. 2. Two men—Washington Irving and Lord Macaulay.
Famous—distinguished; eminent.

The Goldsmithtime—who are in our age what Goldsmith and Gibbon were in the age that is past—i. e., Washington Irving who was as great a master of 'light literature' as Goldsmith was, and Macaulay who was as great a historian as Gibbon.

Ere—before. **Over**—past.

Will be at work—will be engaged in.

Reviewing—examining.

Passing judgment on—criticising. **Works**—literary productions.

In testimony—a few remarks by way of testimony, i. e., a short tribute

Regard—appreciation.

A man of letters—a man who adopts literature as his profession, i. e., one who devotes himself to literature and writes for the public.

Who owes to—who attributes it to.

Professional labour—his work as 'a man of letters.'

Ambassador—representative. An ambassador is an official who is sent by a Sovereign State to represent it at the Court of another Sovereign power and there to look after its interests in matters of international importance.

New world of Letters—i. e., America, whose literature as the production of an Independent State was of recent date, since it commenced only after the declaration of the independence of the United States of America.

One was the first .. **Old**—just as in the region of politics one country sends a trusted envoy or diplomatic agent to another country in order that he may represent its own interests there, so in the sphere of literature, the literary re-public of the new world sent Irving, its own faithful representative to communicate its message of greeting to the parent re-public of letters in the old world.

Almost with—almost at the same time as Irving was born in 1783, the year in which the Treaty of Versailles or Paris, which ended the American war of Independence was concluded.

The pater patriæ—the 'father of his country,' i. e., Washington, the hero of the American war of Independence.

Had**head**—had blessed the child.

Bore—had given to him. Irving's Christian name was 'Washington.'

He came amongst us—he visited England; he came over to England.

Bringing the kindestgood will—i. e., as a kind and sympathetic friend, and not as a foe bearing jealousy and grudge at heart against the English people with whom his own countrymen had lately been at war.

Kindest—the most heart-felt. **Sympathy**—affection; love.

Artless—sincere; genuine.

Smiling good will—feeling of cheerful friendliness.

His new country—since he was now a member of a new state, a state that dated its existence from the peace of Paris which terminated the American War of Independence

His new country ..gentleman—it became possible for America—by virtue of the light and culture attained by her in so short a time—to send one who was by all means a gentleman—a man of refined and polished manners and culture, as he practically showed in his own life and conduct while in England.

To regard—to look upon.

Superciliously—with an air of contempt or haughtiness.

Could send us—the force of the word 'could' here is to point out that though England had lately been at war with America yet America could &c.

Showed—exemplified; proved.

In his own person—in his own case.

High—exalted; noble

Sphere—sphere of life; station in life.

Who, though himselfsphere—who, though not descended from a noble aristocratic family, was a man of highly refined manners, with a simple and unostentatious gracefulness, and humour.

Finished—cultured.

Polished—most perfect in his manners.

Easy—most natural in his behaviour.

Socially—i. e., so far as the social virtues were concerned; so far as concerned his behaviour in society.

Refined—cultured and polished.

Para. 3. Welcome—reception.

Kind—cordial.

Remembered—*i. e.*, by Irving. He wrote well of the English and thus gratefully remembered the cordiality with which he had been received in England.

If Irving's . . . remembered—this sentence and the three others that follow it, in as much as they suggest their own answers are instances of the *Rhetorical Interrogative*—the meaning is:—No doubt the people of England accorded Irving a hearty welcome, yet it must be said to his credit that he did not forget it—rather he ever cherished it in his memory with a sufficient degree of thankfulness.

Ate our salt—accepted our hospitality.

Pay us—repay us—(By writing well of us).

Thankful heart—gratitude.

Calculate—estimate—form a correct idea of.

Amount—extent; degree.

Friendliness—friendly-feeling. Good—kind; generous.

Feeling—consideration for another.

Our country—*i. e.*, England. Generous—kind.

Untiring—unflagging; unceasing. Regard—affection.

Disseminated—spread.

Millions—here stands for very large numbers of.

Page 213.

He has taught—*i. e.*, through the manner in which he has written about them. The way in which he has written about the English has caused his American readers to love the English.

And why to love her—and why was it that he wrote about the English in a manner to produce a very favourable impression on the Americans concerning them—(Because in Irving's heart there was no place for bitterness and no scheme but kindness).

Easy—Irving's task would have been much lighter had he chosen to speak ill of the English instead of good because the American public were ready to accept any evil report of the English they could get.

Inflame—kindle; arouse; excite.

Rancours—enmity ; bitterness

Became known—acquired a reputation.

As a public writer—as a man of letters.

War—the French war.

Renewed—revived **To cry down**—to depreciate.

To cry... new—to publish a damaging estimate of the ways of the English by comparing them unfavourably with those of the Americans.

To point out—*i. e.*, to the public through his writings.

Faults—shortcomings.

Arrogance—national pride.

Give the public to infer—so write about the English that the reading public would, from his account, arrive at the conclusion.

She—America.

Parent states—England. England is called the parent state because colonists from England went over to and settled in America. Prior to the establishment of the United States of America, the American colonists acknowledged the suzerainty of England.

Writers—men of letters—authors.

Honest—sincere to their convictions—*i. e.*, those who express those opinions only of which they are convinced.

And otherwise—and those who are not sincere—*i. e.*, those who express opinions which they themselves do not heartily believe.

Preach—circulate ; give expression to.

That kind of doctrine—the opinion that America is superior to England.

Good—kind ; generous ; noble-minded.

The peaceful—one not given to arousing national rancours but who preferred to see people and nations on terms of friendship with one another.

No place—no room **Bitterness**—unkindness ; unfriendliness.

Scheme—the purpose which his writings intended to accomplish.

No place ... kindness—Irving by nature was peaceful and kind and so could not entertain any other purpose than that of helping forward the establishment of friendly relations between England and America.

Received—entertained.

Para. 4. Extraordinary—more than usual.

Tenderness—consideration and kindness.

Irving received more consideration in England than is usually accorded to most foreigners.

Borne witness--testified.

Scott, Southey, Byron—all these three were poets, Scott was besides also a novelist. Southey was poet laureate of England before Wordsworth.

Liking—regard.

Messengers..... ours—Irrving came over from America with the purpose of trying his best to establish friendly relations between England and his own country.

He seems to say—he may be imagined as saying.

“ See, friends ” ! he seems to say—here Irving is supposed to address his fellow countrymen in these words and those that follow.

So—to that extent. Rapacious—given to plunder and violence.

Gallous—indifferent to the suffering of others. Proud—arrogant.

Taught to believe—given to believe by the writings of others.

Went amongst them—visited their country.

Humble—unknown.

Won my way—established my reputation.

By my pen—by my writings.

Known—when I became known as a writer.

Found every hand held out—found every Englishman eager to accord me a kind and hearty reception. Held out—extended.

Welcome— cordiality.

Scott's king of England—the king who was reigning over England when Scott lived and wrote—i. e., George III.

Me—Washington Irving. Both Sir Walter Scott and Washington Irving received gold medals from the Royal Society of England in recognition of their merits. The comparison means to insinuate that Irving is showing one trait of the English national character to his countrymen, viz, the readiness of the English people to recognize merit in strangers and to admit that foreigners and strangers can be as great as their own countrymen.

And a stranger--Irving was an American, and above all England had recently been at war with America and had been defeated. Notwithstanding this, the Royal Society of England presented Irving with a gold medal. It was evident therefore that England was not going to allow political considerations to stand in the way of recognizing literary merit.

Para. 5. Tradition--parole accounts handed down from father to son.

Still--yet; up to this day.

Tradition in the United States **Europe**--even up to the present time (i.e., when Thackeray was writing Americans love to talk of the festivities and the welcome accorded to Irving on his return from Europe.

Fondly--lovingly. **The history**--the account; the description.

Feasts--festivities. **Awaited**--were given in honour of.

He had a national welcome--the country as a whole joined together to welcome Irving back to his own land. The reception given to Irving did not proceed from the American literary world alone but extended to other circles of society.

Stammered--owing to nervousness. The grandeur of the reception accorded to Irving so affected him as to make him nervous.

In his speeches--in the speeches he was called upon to make, on his return to America, to thank the public for their entertaining him. At public banquets it is customary for the guest to make a speech at the termination of the festivities by way of thanking his hosts. The object of these speeches is to allow the guest an opportunity of expressing some of his opinions.

hid himself--retired from public life. By retiring from public life Irving escaped the necessity of being present at public functions.

In confusion--his nervousness confused him, and to escape the confusion Irving retired from public life and public view.

And the better--the public liked Irving all the more for his modesty. Had Irving not been modest, he would not have been confused over the reception accorded to him but would have taken pleasure in thus being openly honoured.

Worthily--noble; in a fitting manner.

Represented America—i. e. represented the American world of letters Irving, both by reason of his ability and of his personal qualities, had given Europe an appropriate idea of the American world of letters—both of the quality of the literature and of the character of the authors thereof.

Worthily represented.....Europe—acquitted himself so creditably as a Representative of America in Europe that the people of the older continent became favourably disposed towards the new.

Page 214.

Young community—new state America became an independent state only after the termination of American war.

Brings home with him—returns to his own country after having obtained.

Abundant—numerous.

European testimonials—credentials received in Europe. Marks of honour bestowed upon him in Europe.

Is still treated with respect—America is no longer, politically, a part of Europe for she has thrown off her allegiance to England. But even now Americans are eager to obtain European recognition. When America was a British colony, it was natural to expect that Americans should hanker after the good opinion of English critics; now, though America is no longer a British colony, Americans still continue to be as desirous of obtaining British testimonials as they were before.

Strangely—curiously. **Solicitous**—anxious; concerned about.

Quite—absolutely. **Obscure**—unknown.

Elated—raised in spirits—excessively gladdened.

Depressed—dejected in spirits. **Judgments**—criticisms; opinions.

And—American writers are respected and honoured on their return to America if they can get favourable criticisms of their writings from British critics—Irving not only got this but was in addition medalled by the king &c, what a much greater claim had Irving therefore to be honoured and respected in his own country.

Went home—returned to America

Medalled by the king.—The Royal Society of England presented a gold medal to Irving—*vide* p. 213, "Did not Scott's king of England give a gold medal to him, and another to me, your countryman and a stranger.

Diplomatized by the University—the University of Oxford conferred upon Irving the honorary degree of Doctor of Laws.

Crowned—refers to his being medalled by the king and diplomatized by the University. The word 'Crown' is here used in the sense of 'bestowing an honorary reward or distinction on.'

Crowned and honoured—honoured with the highest marks of public distinction.

Intrigued—planned ; plotted ; used underhand means to obtain.
Fairly—honestly.

. **Old country**—England.

The old country . . . pay them—Thackeray means that the English are always ready to acknowledge and honour merit, no matter to what nationality the person concerned may belong. The fact that the writer in question is a foreigner will not deter the English from bestowing upon him marks of recognition and honour if they are deserved—And this the English will do without the author having to ask for the recognition or honour.

Para. 6. National sentiment—a feeling shared by the people in general and not confined to any particular section or sections of society. It was not only among the literary circles in America that Irving was honoured and loved but by the whole of the American people.

Party wars—conflicts involving the interests of only particular section of the community.

Perpetually—constantly.

By the press—through and by the newspapers.

Rancour—bitterness ; malignity.

Fierceness—savage zeal ; ferocity ; impetuosity.

Virulence—acrimony ; rancour.

The Irish people are very bitter over their political differences and the Irish press conducts these political party wars with an amount of malignity which has become proverbial.

It seemed to me—so it appeared to me. **During**—in the course of. **That country**—America.

Aimed a blow at—attacked ; passed unkind or unfavourable remarks concerning.

Held their hand from—refrained from attacking. When one attacks another he lays his hand on the other. Thackeray says

that every one refrained from laying hands on Irving *i. e.* that Irving was not attacked through the newspapers

Peacemaker—a person who mediates between others to establish friendly relations between them.

Fortune—luck

New York Washington—all these are towns in the United States of America

Remarked—noticed ; observed

Has its 'Irving house'—has houses named after Washington Irving. This shows how much he was esteemed in America

The country—America. **Takes pride in**—is proud of.

Fame—reputation. **Men of letters**—literary men.

Because the Americans are proud of the reputation of their men of letters they take advantage of every opportunity to advertise them, and one way in which they do so is to name their houses after their literary hero.

Gate—gateway. **Charming**—pretty. **Domain**—estate

On . . . river—Irving, on retiring from public life, went to live on his estate on the banks of the Hudson which he purchased

Was for him—was constantly moving on its hinges to and fro, being opened and closed to admit and let out visitors who came to see him.

Shut out—kept out. Every one was permitted to visit him.

Both of which—both in the pictures and in the description of his house.

With a not unusual—*i. e.* with their usual ; with their characteristic.

American exaggeration—the Americans as a people are prone to exaggeration. It is a weakness with them to try and make out anything American as much bigger and grander than it actually is.

Painters and writers exaggerated their representation of Irving's house in order to make it appear grander than it was. Their object in doing so might have been to increase Irving's importance in the eyes of foreigners. Cf. "the country takes pride in the fame of its men of letters. Every large city has its Irving house."

It was but—it was only.

Cabin of a place—a home as small as a cabin. A cabin is the apartment in a ship allotted to a passenger. Hence the meaning is that Irving's house was a very small one.

Gentleman of the press—newspapers representative.

Took notes of—jotted down points in connection with the house to be worked up into a description to be published in the newspaper or magazine.

Page 215.

His kind old host—i. e., Irving.

Whilesleeping—lest Irving out of modesty should have refused his request.

Might have minutes—might have gone round the whole house in a very short space of time—the house was so small.

Visited—gone over.

Para. 7. How came it—what was the reason for it? How can you account for it?

Profits—income from the sale of his works.

Habits of life—the way of living; manner of living.

Bachelor—Washington Irving never got married.

Notoriously—very well known to be.

Modest—plain; frugal.

He had.....life—there had been only one lady whom Irving had loved.

He whom all the world loved—Irrving, who was loved by every one.

Sought to—thought of.

Never... . her—never cared to love any other lady.

Cf. Tennyson:—

“’Tis better to have loved and lost,
Than never to have loved at all.”—*In Memoriam*.

I can't say—I cannot adequately express.

How much—to what extent.

The thought—my thinking on it.

Fidelity—faithfulness to the memory of his only love.

Touched me—affected me ; moved me—i. e., I have been more deeply moved by reflecting on the strength of Irving's love for the lady who died before he could marry her than I can find adequate words to express.

Does not the . . . story—this is a rhetorical question, suggesting its own answer. Thackeray means that no one can entertain any doubt as to the depth of Irving's love for the lady that died, because he never sought to replace her in his affections—and yet sometime after her death Irving recovered his natural cheerfulness of disposition. This meant that by the exercise of great self-control, by an effort almost superhuman, Irving succeeded in "burying the love of his heart." The nature of the struggle in which Irving had been engaged, the manner in which he succeeded in conquering his own feelings, combine to make the whole incident a very pathetic one—an incident that affects every one who knows of it with compassion for the sufferer.

Untold story—because Irving did not give publicity to his love affairs, very few people knew the details connected with Irving's first and only love affair.

Always—constantly and continually.

Was not in his nature—was not a characteristic of his disposition.

Or—nor was it characteristic of his disposition.

When sorrow—when he was afflicted with sorrow ; when any incident occurred in his life which caused him to become sorrowful.

To bring all the world in—to acquaint every one with the circumstances occasioning his sorrow with a view to enlisting their sympathy.

To condole with him—to sympathise with him.

Bemoan it—lament over the incident.

Deep—having felt very keenly the loss of the lady and having very great respect for the memory of the lady.

And quiet—but without creating any fuss over the incident.

Lays—lays to rest.

Scarred—marked ; disfigured—showing signs of a wound having previously existed. Cf. Shakespeare—"They jest as scars who never felt a wound."—*Romeo and Juliet*.

Deep and quiet . . . due time—just as a dead body is laid to rest in a grave dug deep under the surface of the soil, so Irving buried the love of his heart in a grave dug deep into his heart without any external show of the heroism with which he was enduring his sorrow or the manfulness with he was combating his grief. And as in the course of time grass and flowers grow over a grave and conceal the fact that a grave had previously existed there, so the wound caused in Irving's heart was gradually healed and the cheerfulness of his disposition once more asserted itself.

Para. 8. Narrow—small. Occupy—live in.

Because . them —by this clause a paradoxical turn is given to the sentence, because the reason given in the second clause seems to contradict the first one. The *sense* is that on account of his having a large number of persons to support he could not afford to enjoy the luxury of having a great house to live in.

Only afford—the state of his means would only allow of.

Careless—Irrving was not a very good horseman (rider)

Old horseman—*i. e.*, Irving.

Plain sherry—he could only offer ordinary sherry. Sherry is a kind of Spanish wine.

Paragraph-monger—journalist. This is a contemptuous way of speaking of journalists.

Amiable—paragraph-monger—Newspaper representatives when they interview any person with a view to writing a notice of him in the columns of the newspapers are usually very amiable to them, but after they go away their attitude often changes and the notices they write of the persons whom they have visited are not always complimentary.

Patriarch—veteran leader of the American world of letters. Lit. the word *patriarch* means a 'father chief,' and in ancient society the name was applied to those heads of families who were also chiefs of the tribe or clan.

Asleep over—asleep with his modest, blameless cup near him.

Modest—the wine Irving was drinking was not of a very rich and expensive kind

Blameless—because being only *wine* it did not contain very much alcohol and so was not a strong intoxicant.

Thackeray means to suggest that the fact of Irving's having fallen asleep was not due to drunkenness.

Fetches the him—brought this fact before the eyes of the public by referring to it in his notice of him in the newspaper column. The reference was made with a view to insinuate that Irving was given to habits of intemperance. The writer also wrote that he was offered only sherry, evidently with the object of giving out that Irving was mean.

Modestly—economically.

To whom... father—towards whom he acted as their father would have acted towards them—i. e., paid for their bringing up and provided for their future.

Nieces—daughters either of a sister or a brother.

Page 216.

Had shared—had divided. **Produce of**—the income from.

Genius—his extraordinary gift for writing light literature.

With all of whom . . .genius—all of whom he had ungrudgingly made participators in the income derived from his intellectual labours i. e., all of whom he supported and brought up like children from the income derived from his books.

Para. 9. Be a good man—lead an upright, honest life.

One can't but think of—one cannot help thinking of (because the words and the circumstances under which they were uttered were so impressive).

Veteran Chief of Letters—the old and experienced head of the literary world—acknowledged as such by all men of letters. (Sir Walter Scott).

Tasted—enjoyed. **Tested**—estimated. **Value**—worth.

Was Irving not good—had Irving not led a good life.

And of his . part—the example he had shown in his own life was far nobler and purer than any sentiments or views expressed by him in his writings

In his family—towards the members of his household.

Generous—benevolently disposed ; kind.

Self-denying—to provide the better for the members of his family he deprived himself of luxuries which otherwise his means would have enabled him to indulge in.

In society—socially ; in public.

Delightful—charming. **Example**—pattern ; type.

Complete gentlemanhood—Those qualities which go to make up a complete and perfect gentleman.

A delightful ... gentlemanhood—a highly pleasing instance of what a perfect gentleman ought to be—a gentleman whose polished manners proceeded not from the mere practice of the artificial rules of society but from the very heart and culture of the mind.

Quite—utterly ; absolutely.

Unspoiled—not tainted ; not corrupted. Thackeray means that prosperity did not cause Irving to acquire those failings which usually go hand in hand with prosperity in the case of other men.

Prosperity—success in his undertakings.

Obsequious—servile ; cringing.

The great—i. e., great men, merely on account of their greatness.

Base and mean—men of low principles.

Eager—very ready. **Acknowledge**—recognize.

Every contemporary's merit—the good points in his fellow writer.

Affable—courteous ; complaisant.

Young members of his calling—junior authors—the less experienced men of letters.

Professional bargains—i. e., dealings with publishers for the sale and purchase of his copyright in his works.

Mercantile dealings—dealings with booksellers for the sale of his books.

Delicately—scrupulously.

Grateful—thankful for any small consideration that might be shown to him.

Charming—fascinating.

Masters of our lighter language—writers of light English prose. The use of the word 'master' indicates that Thackeray considered Irving as a writer who had perfect command over that particular style of prose composition.

Constant—steadfast.

Doubly dear—valued for a two-fold reason.

Wit—brilliance of expression. **Merely**—only.

Exemplar—a type for imitation ; a pattern.

Probity—honesty ; straightforwardness.

Thackeray says that to men of letters Irving was dear in a double sense—he was valued by them (1) for his wit and genius and (2) as an exemplar of goodness, probity, and pure life. Irving was a person whom they would gladly have sent as the representative of American men of letters to an international congress of the world's authors.

I don't know—I cannot say. **Sort**—kind.

Testimonial--memorial. Something to honour his memory and to testify to the regard in which he was held by his countrymen.

Generous—liberal. **Enthusiastic**—zealous.

Acknowledgment—indication of recognition.

Is never wanting—is always forthcoming.

Irving was.....theirs—Irving has done some good for England as well as for America in as much as he mediated as a peacemaker between the two nations.

Placed a stone—erected a memorial.

Yonder—near by. Greenwich is very close to London.

Gallant—brave.

Bellot—Joseph Rene Bellot, Arctic explorer, was born in Paris in 1826. A French naval lieutenant, he served with distinction in the expedition against Japan in 1845, and in 1851 joined the search expedition sent out by Lady Franklin. He discovered Bellot Strait in 1852, and was lost in an ice-crack during Inglefield's expedition, 21 August 1853.

Perils—dangers. **Fate**—the end, i. e., death.

Our—English. **Friends of letters**—patrons of literature.

In affectionate remembrance—to testify to their loving recollections of Thackeray means that the English nation have raised a memorial to the memory of the Frenchman Bellot who died in trying to do England a service. They were not deterred by the consideration that Bellot was a Frenchman. Thackeray expresses a hope that the literary world of England will similarly recognize Irving's merit, though he was an American for he, during his lifetime, by acting as a peacemaker between the two countries, has rendered England very valuable service.

Para. 10. The other writer—Macaulay. **Departure**—death.

Page 218.

Deplore—lament.

Our republic—the English republic of letters—the English literary world.

Decreed—decided that his statue shall be erected to his memory.

Posthumous honour—honour shown to a person after his death.

He must . . . honour—Macaulay during his lifetime, on account of his popularity and the brilliancy of his career, must have known that the English world of letters would honour his memory after his death.

Earned—accomplished sufficient in the world of letters to have made him entitled to receive.

Man of letters—literary man in general.

Merely—simply ; only.

A great British worthy—a very great Englishman in every respect.

Appears—attracts the attention of others.

Amongst—supply *whether* before this.

Great—eminent. **Sorts**—kinds .

Successes—triumphs. **Arena**—field of contest or competition.

Goes . . . arena—competes with others.

To which . . . mind—which he cares or desires to obtain

Senate—the British Parliament which bears to the English State the same relation that the senate bore to Rome.

A place in the Senate—i. e., a membership of parliament.

Anger or intrigue—ill-feeling or trickery.

Faith—conviction—i. e., in the correctness of the liberal political principles.

Heroic—undaunted ; courageous.

And a sort of cause—(and not without) a sort of noble and wholehearted zeal for the cause he advocated in the parliament—[viz., Freedom of the Jews in England, Abolition of slavery, The Reform Bill &c.]

Para. 11. Still—yet—all the same. Darling—dearly beloved.

Richly--highly. In the East—in India. Macaulay was Law Member in the Viceroy's Legislative Council and drafted the Indian Penal Code.

That he may have ... East—Macaulay absents himself from the political field of England for sometime in order that he may have spare time and money to enable him to carry on his favourite studies—and so he accepts the post of the Law Member of the Supreme Council of India in Calcutta.

May—i. e., it is possible.

In a ... college room—i. e., in obscurity, without having his merits discovered—without getting an opportunity for shining.

Recognized—acknowledged; admitted. Rank—position.

Wretched—mean-minded. Raised—started; set on foot.

Dated—wrote, giving as his address, &c. Staying—i. e., as a guest of Queen Victoria.

Mr. Macaulay ... castle—Macaulay who had not then been raised to the peerage and so was not a man of "recognized rank," wrote a letter from Windsor Castle, the residence of the British Sovereigns. This gave rise to a foolish clamour against Macaulay that he was presumptuous enough to have dated a letter from Windsor Castle. He was then staying there as a royal guest.

Immortal gods—an exclamation of surprise, (like Great-Scott).

Was thisworld—a rhetorical question suggesting its own answer.

Fit—proper; worthy.

Austerlitz—a battle in which Napoleon defeated the Austrian Empire. It was after the result of this battle was known that Pitt exclaimed "Roll up the map of Europe."

K. K.—short for the German *Kaiserliche Koniglich*. The Emperor of Austria is termed K K majestat (His Imperial Royal Majesty) because he is both Emperor of Austria and king of Hungary.

K. K. Court officials—officials of the Imperial Court of Austria.

Footmen—the servants attached to the Emperor's palace.

Dating from—writing from—giving his address as.

Schonbrunn—in Austria, near Vienna, where the Imperial Palace is situated Thackeray means that Macaulay had as much right to be at Windsor Castle as Napoleon had, after Austerlitz, of being at the palace at Schönbrunn. Napoleon won his way to the palace at Schönbrunn by virtue of his victory and military abilities, Macaulay obtained an invitation to Windsor Castle by reason of his brilliant intellectual accomplishments.

Echo—sound.

Is an remembrances—is quickly being forgotten.

Page 219.

Natural chief—born leader of men **First**—foremost; most distinguished; most eminent.

Investing—winning recognition for

Para. 12. If a company of giants were . . . so forth—the average height of men is between 5 and 6 feet. If among men of average stature there are some who are six feet and six inches in height, they are considered as very tall indeed. But if these “very tall” men who are of a stature of 6 feet and 6 inches be admitted into a company of giants—then the six-foot—six people will only fret at the unapproachable high stature of the giants for no other reason than that they themselves have so far been regarded as the “tallest men.” Similarly the so-called famous wits of London who, before the appearance of Macaulay, enjoyed the reputation of having been the most gifted men, found themselves miserably eclipsed by a superior luminary when Macaulay began to move amongst them, and peevishly fretted at his incontestable superiority over them for no other reason than that they themselves had so far been regarded as the most famous men of the time and gave vent to their peevish anger by saying that Macaulay used to occupy too much of the talk and in making other similarly silly remarks.

Giants—very tall people **Got together**—collected.

Mere six-foot people—those just tall enough to be included in the company but not unusually tall—hence, men of ability certainly but not of extraordinary ability like Macaulay.

Incontestable—unquestionable.

Tongue—person. **Listen**—to his brilliant and enlightening conversation

Remember—recollect. **Wonder**—marvel.

Cf Wordsworth—For oft, when on my couch I lie
In vacant or in pensive mood,
They flash upon that inward eye
Which is the bliss of solitude—
—“*I wandered lonely as a cloud*”—

Treasures—valuable knowledge or learning.

Trifles—information concerning unimportant matters of detail.

Produce—reproduce. **To spring up**—to crop up; to be started.

Senior wrangler—the person who comes out first in the mathematical tripos or the examination in honours for the degree of Bachelor of Arts conducted by the University of Cambridge.

After life—after obtaining the university distinction.

Almost terror—wonder or amazement almost amounting to terror—people thought that they were in the presence of a super human being.

Has his story—has some particular story to tell about. &c.

Not ill pleased—not dissatisfied; not unwilling.

Recognize—notice and praise. **It**—his memory.

Prodigious—wonderful; astounding. **Feats**—accomplishments.

Talk—conversation.

Para. 13. Notices—reviews of his life and works. **Especially**—in particular.

Page 220.

Good—healthy. **Public prints**—journals; periodicals; newspapers.

The Times—is the leading London daily newspaper. It leans towards the conservative interest politics.

The Saturday Review—a weekly journal, devoted to literature and art. It is the modern representative of such journals as were the spectator, the guardian, the tatler, &c. Its name is derived from the fact that it is published on Saturday.

Educate—train; teach.

Rightly—correctly, i. e., to admire those only to whom admiration is due.

Uninstructed' person, &c.—a person not familiar with the museum or with the particular piece of music being played.

Concert—a musical entertainment consisting entirely of vocal and instrumental music.

Passage—a particular portion of the music of the piece being played.

Connoisseur—a critical judge of any art or matter of taste.

The nonce—(an adverb)—present occasion or purpose.

Not talking about—not concerned with. **Faults**—defects

Want to say—desire or wish to say and to adopt as our principle.

Nil Nisi Bonum—an abbreviation of the well-known Latin phrase, *De mortuis nil nisi bonum*, which means, "of the dead (let us speak) nothing but good."

At hazard—at random.

The Essays—Lord Macaulay's Essays, contributed for the most part to the Edinburgh Review.

History—the History of England from the accession of the Stuarts written by Macaulay.

Glimmering—sparkling; twinkling; shining out from beneath.

Stream of the narrative—flow of the narrative.

Why is . used—*i. e.*, by Macaulay. **Whence . drawn**—*i. e.*, by Macaulay.

Paint—indicate the character of.

Indicate—depict; describe. **Landscape**—natural scene.

Page 221.

Para. 14. **A cœur ouvert**—with an open heart—*i. e.*, plainly.

Bear with me—to humour me—not to take offence.

Domes—a dome is a roof of a building rising up in the form of an inverted cup.

Peter's—St. Peter's is the name of the great Cathedral at Rome.

Paul's—St. Paul's is the name of the great Cathedral in London.

Sophia—St. Sophia, now a mosque, was a Christian Cathedral at Constantinople.

Pantheon—was erected in Rome by Agrippa (son-in-law of Augustus). It is now a church, with statues of heathen gods and is called the rotunda. Another building of the same name also a church is at Paris, and was built by Louis XV. *All these buildings have domed roofs*

What not ?—and many others besides

Catholic—embracing all ; universal ; liberal because under that dome are “housed a million volumes” of books of all countries, ages and languages

Housed—kept ; stored.

Grace—prayer of thanksgiving. **Heaven**—the creator.

This my English birthright—viz, “freely to partake, &c”

Speak—became acquainted with, to get to know and thereby to make use of in the course of my own conversation

Dome—the dome-shaped head. **Held**—contained.

Solemn—grave—full of wisdom **But**—only. **Since**—ago.

Strange—astonishing. **Lore**—learning.

Fetch for you—recall ; summon up.

Clarissa—the heroine of Richardson's novel entitled “The history of Clarissa Harlowe,” a young lady, who, to avoid a marriage to which her heart could not consent, but to which she is urged by her parents, costs herself on the protection of a lover, who most scandalously abuses the confidence reposed in him. He afterwards proposes marriage ; but she rejects his proposal, and retires to a solitary dwelling, where she pines to death with grief and shame.

Lovelace—the chief male character in Richardson's novel of Clarissa Harlowe. He is rich, proud and crafty ; handsome, brave and gay ; the most unscrupulous but finished libertine, always self-possessed, insinuating and polished.

Page 222.

Athenæum library—the library of one of the leading London clubs, where membership always includes many literary men, lawyers, &c

Para. 15. **Keep to**—adhere to the spirit or principle of the maxim on which we have been acting from the commencement.

Had no heart—was not of a sympathetic disposition ; could not feel for others.

Speak the truth—express his real convictions.

Speak his mind - betray his thoughts

In spite of himself—notwithstanding his efforts to conceal his real thoughts and convictions

This man's heart is beating . . . penned—on every page of his writing he betrays sympathy for man and for his aspirations.

In a storm of—in a passion or frenzy of.

Cheers—loudly praises.

For its own—for his own rights and privileges; he breathes the air of liberalism in politics.

Ever so be they ever so. For Macaulay the end could not justify the means.

Before the theatre footlights—before public notice.

Bouquets—applause. Gallery—the public.

Para. 16. Young—junior.

Sermon—essay containing instruction and advice.

Page 223.

Gone to their account—dead. (Lit. to account to their maker for the actions of their lives).

Laus Deo—praise to God. It—i. e., their state, their account, the record of their life on earth.

Apologies—attempts to excuse or cover over.

Shortcomings weaknesses; faults.

Explanations—the explaining away of.

Etc—circumstances.

Thackeray is here hitting the practice panegyrists have of trying to explain away all the shortcomings of their subjects as if they were not human but free from all blemish.

At his fireside—at his home; by his own family.

Incalculable—very great; that which cannot be exactly estimated.

Brother scribe—fellow literary man; fellow man of letters.

Our service—to the service which literature renders to humanity.

Baton—the official badge of various officials.

Epaulettes—an ornamental badge worn on the shoulder by military men or naval officers.

Guard—protect.

Honour of the flag—honour of literature.

Analysis.

1. Sir Walter Scott's last words were, "Be a good man, my dear!"

2. Two famous men, admired, beloved, the Goldsmith and Gibbon of our time have just died, viz, Washington Irving and Macaulay. Irving was the first ambassador whom the new world of letters sent to the old. Irving came amongst us bringing the kindest sympathy, the most artless, smiling good will

3. Irving received in England a kind welcome. He has taught Americans to love the English.

4—5. Irving was presented a gold medal by the Royal Society, and the University of Oxford conferred on him the honorary degree of Doctor of Laws. On return to his own country Irving received a national welcome, but he was so modest and shy that he hid himself in order to avoid public demonstrations of the esteem and regard of his countrymen.

6. In America the love and regard for Irving amounted to a national sentiment. Every large city had its 'Irving House.' In his own country home, on the banks of the Hudson, he was always being visited by persons desirous of seeing him. He shut out no one.

7. Irving's house was a very small one. He never married because his 'only' love died before marriage. His love affair is a very touching incident of his life.

8. Irving had such a small house and lived so economically because he had a large number of relatives to bring up and support, and he was noble and generous enough to share with them the produce of his labour and genius

9. Irving was a good man and the best part of him was his life. He was doubly dear to men of letters—not only for his wit and genius but also as an exemplar of goodness, probity and pure life. Some memorial to commemorate his memory in England ought to be erected by the English just as they placed a stone at Greenwich in memory of Bellot.

10. The other great man whose death is mourned by friends, relatives and the public is Macaulay. It has been decided to have a statue raised to him. From the very first Macaulay came to the front as a man of genius.

11. In order to be able to pursue his studies Macaulay went to India, and when later he was invited to Windsor Castle, certain sections of the community raised a wretched outcry against his being invited. Immortal gods! was not this man a fit guest for any palace in the world. But that outcry is now an echo out of fast-retreating old world remembrances.

12. Macaulay had a wonderful memory.

13. Macaulay's writings were rich in classical allusions, and the charm lay in their suggestiveness and in his style. He would read 20 books to write a sentence: he would travel a hundred miles to make a line of description.

14. Macaulay's head was stocked with a wonderful stock of learning.

15. Those who say that Macaulay had no heart are wrong for he was admirably tender, generous and affectionate.

16. Thackeray's advice to all junior men of letters is to bear Scott's words in mind and to be 'good men' for by being good men both Irving and Macaulay earned much of their fame and distinction.

ESSAY XXVIII.

A PLEA FOR GAS LAMPS—R. L. Stevenson.

Page 238.

Plea—some allegation made in justification of anything; an apology for.

Para. 1. Cities given—cities being established or founded.

Problem—the question requiring solution was how to, &c.

Light them—illumine them at night.

Cities given.....them—having commenced living in cities and having felt some inconvenience due to the darkness of streets and lanes at night, man had to devise or invent some means by which to light them.

Conduct—lead ; guide.

About—hither and thither in.

Burgess-warren—abode of burgesses or citizens. A warren is literally a place where rabbits are bred—hence, town or city.

Heaven**luminary**—the sun had set.

Spinning—revolving. **Our Planet**—the earth.

Had sun—the reference is to the fact that only one hemisphere at a time is turned towards the sun, this circumstance originating the phenomenon of day and night.

Living in a scientific age it will not do to speak unscientifically, and so Stevenson corrects his former statement about heaven "withdrawing its leading luminary" for the sun is a fixed body.

From time to time—now and again. During the bright-phase.

Cheery—cheering—cheerful. **Look**--appearance.

Among the chimney pots—the tops of the chimneys used to be built so high that on looking up the stars would appear as if they were smudged among them.

Cresset—an open lamp filled with combustible material placed on a beacon, light house, wharf, church steeple &c....—also known as the "fire-basket." Its shape resembled that of an iron cage.

On church—on a church spire.

Citadel—a fortress in or near a fortified city, commanding the city and fortifications, and intended as a final point defence.

Producedeffect—looked very picturesque—but was not useful.

Ground lay unevenly—ground was uneven, i. e., up and down, rugged.

Right-hand—the stronger of the two hands, and also the hand of friendship.

Held conduct—furnished the means of guidance.

Benighted—those who were overtaken by night.

Abstracted—taken away. **Concealed**—hidden.

Night faring—travelling or journeying or walking by night.

Cf.—"So on he fares, and to the border comes

Of Eden.—

Milton P. Lost.

Inhabitant—resident of the city or town.

Had to fall back—was constrained to depend or rely solely upon

Old prints—old pictures.

Stable lanthorns—the word lanthorn is now obsolete—stable lanterns. Old fashioned portable lanterns of great height, like those now used in lighting stables

Two storeys in height—divided into two partitions—one to contain the oil and the other for the flame to burn in.

Many—several ; numerous. **Drilled**—made.

Conical turret roof—the upper portion of these stable lanterns were of a tall conical shape and had hole made in it to allow of the escape of the smoke.

Vagabond Pharos—Pharos is the name of an island near the coast of Egypt, on which stood a lighthouse reckoned in ancient days one of the wonders of the world. The name of the island has come to be applied to the lighthouse which stood upon it—Hence the meaning is 'this wandering lighthouse of a lantern' (from its size). This huge portable lantern—like a moving lighthouse.

Let up—allowed to escape.

Spouts of dazzlements—jets of light.

Bearer's—carrier's.

Paced forth—walked abroad. **Ghostly**—so dense as to be almost unearthly.

Sun—light. **By**—by means.

A ring about his finger—the lantern was fitted with a ring at the top, and it used to be carried by passing a finger of the hand through that ring—hence suspended on a finger by means of a ring fastened to it.

Day and night—light and darkness.

About his footsteps—accordingly as the lamp was in front or behind him, depending upon the backward and forward swaying of the arm, so his footsteps were shrouded in light or darkness.

Blackness—darkness. **Haunted**—was always present.

Beleagured—besieged ; surrounded in such a manner as to make escape impossible.

Goblins—a goblin is a familiar demon—according to popular belief goblins dwelt in private houses and chinks of trees.

Curfew being struck—if the curfew bell had been sounded. The curfew was a bell sounded at 8 o'clock in the evening as a signal for putting out all lights.

But that . . . in—but that which he carried about with him.

Para. 2. Epoch—period. **Migratory lanthorns**—lanterns which travelled about with the wayfarer.

Page 239.

In a world of extinction—in a world of darkness.

This epoch of migratory extinction—this period in the history of the progress made by cities, when they were not at all lighted by street lamps and when being completely enveloped in darkness they seemed to be a dead world or a region of death, and when the only light obtainable proceeded from the crudely made hand lanthorns carried about from place to place by individual passers-by.

Era—age. **Kindle**—light. **Pale**—burning dimly.

Wavering—flickering.

In . . . endurance—even during such time as it burned.

Rudely puffed—roughly blew—i. e., the wind blew in strong gusts.

Roguishly knavishly; archly; waggishly.

Roguishly clomb . . . wiction—naughty and mischievous street boys climbed up the lamp posts and smashed the lamps.

Void empire—empire of darkness.

Lo! . . . empire—And behold, in an instant, the darkness of night regained its supremacy, of which it had for a time been dispossessed by means of the lights burning here and there.

Cit—contraction of citizen.

Groped about the wall—feeling his way along with the help of walls.

Occult from—deprived of.

Sorribly wading in the kennels—miserably splashing about in the street gutters or drains—to wade is to walk through water reaching some distance up the legs

Gamesome—playful—which put out the lamps.

Gamesome youths—mischievous boys who broke the lamps.

Habit—custom, fashion Sling—suspend.

Fable luminaries—weak faint lights.

From house to house—on ropes made fast to houses located on opposite sides of the road.

Fairway—roadway.

Invisible cordage—ropes or cords which could not be seen.

Crane-necked—long-necked. Tall—high. Charger—horse.

Spurring the destiny of nations—riding very fast by urging on the charger with spurs as if he had to decide some very important issues—some questions of life and death—in the fortunes of nations.

Indubitably—undoubtedly. Effusion—spilling. Certain—sure.

Crash—the noise glass makes when it is broken, i. e., the head of this long-necked general would strike against the lamps suspended over the roadway and would break them, at the same time the person whose head thus collided with a lamp would be injured.

Purple—now turned purple owing to its being covered with blood.

Coxcomb—here means the crest on the top of the general's helmet.

Unpiloted—without lights to show up the obstacles or dangers on the road.

Unvoyageable—not possible to walk on.

Province night—a realm of darkness.

Para. 3. Conservative—a person who is opposed to innovation.

Looking before and after—who narrowly judges all the bearings of a question—taking the past, the present and the future alike into consideration. [who, as in the present case looks to the old mode of living in cities with our lamps in the streets, to the present one, in which there are some lamps to light up the streets with and to the future in which further improvements are expected.]

Age—era—times. Glances back—looks back.

Slightly—with contempt.

Mirk—darkness. Glimmer—faint light of oil lamps.

Waxes jocund—grows happy.

Nor do refrain from—nor can he help uttering.

A **stave**—a short poem—a stanza.

Cf. Wordsworth—

“Let us chant a passing stave.
In honour of that hero brave.”—*Wordsworth*.

Landing—praising.

Note.—This is a bit of satire directed against the conservative, who, when he finds some benefit accruing to himself from progress, does not hesitate to laud it.

Golden mean—this is borrowed from the Aristotletian held philosophy. Aristotle held that *virtue* consisted in all matters in the mean between excess and defect—Hence, so long as the innovation is not very revolutionary, the conservative has nothing to say against it.

Spread along—when gas light was first introduced into towns for the purpose of lighting the streets.

Mapping it forth—clearly showing every part of it.. *i. e.*, illuminating every part of it.

About even fall ... birds—presenting it in the evening (when all its streets were lighted up in beautiful arrays of lamps) at its best, it being then in an admirable condition to present an impressive bird's eye view.

A new age had ... pleasure-seeking—a new epoch had been inaugurated for promoting a healthy social intercourse and all sorts of social enjoyments.

Becoming its own birthright—befitting an inauguration so magnificent in itself

The work of Prometheus—Prometheus, according to ancient mythology was the god who instructed man in the use of fire and the acts generally. The name means “forethought generally.” For stealing fire from the gods for the use of man he was punished by Zeus and was bound in chains for ever, whilst vultures preyed on him. Aeschylus, the Greek dramatist, has commemorated this legend in his “*Prometheus bound*.” The same legend forms the plot of Shelly's drama, “*Prometheus unbound*.”

Page 240.

Were nosea-fog—mist and vapour from the sea no longer hindered or obstructed social functions for gas light was powerful enough to penetrate the gloom caused by such mists.

Sun down—sunset.

Promenade—the public walks.

Lengthened out—prolonged.

Fancy—wish. City-folk—residents in towns.

Biddable—those which could be ordered to one's will.

Domesticated—because gas light was introduced even into private houses.

Para. 4. Clear—bright. Their originals—i. e., the stars. Lustre—brilliance.

Elegant—rich—the light was not so 'white' as the light given out by the best wax candles which before had been used inside the house by persons who could afford them.

Practically efficacious—more useful for practical purposes.

Unfold their rays—give out their light.

Spontaneity—self originating; self-lighting.

Firmament—heaven.

Lamplighters..... evening—but the lamplighters ran fast every evening from one lamp to another so as to lose as little time as possible in lighting the different lamps.

With a good heart—with eagerness and interest

Emulating—trying to rival

Ladder of—the ladder carried by the lamplighter to get to the lamps on the top of the lamp posts.

Flying functionary—the lamplighter, because he was in such a hurry to go from one lamp to another. Wordsworth in his poem the power of music' terms the lamplighter—"the breathless lamplighter."

Commended—praised; applauded.

Proverb—viz., 'God bless the lamplighter.'

Passage—journey along the streets. Benediction—blessing.

Circumlocution—round about way of saying a thing.

Para. 5. Term—duration of existence.

Twilight diligence—work during the period of twilight—i. e., evening labours, viz., of lighting the street lamps.

Is near at hand—is about to end.

Watch—see. Speeding—journeying fast.

Knocking—making.

Luminous hole—a round spot of light. Dusk—the shades of evening.

Knockingdusk—lighting lamp after lamp in the street, and thus producing one bright spot after another in the surrounding darkness.

The Greeks—the ancient Greeks, not their modern descendants.

Myth—legend.

Such an one—a person who rendered such service as the modern lamplighter.

Distributed—scattered.

Starlight—small spots of light like stars.

Need—necessity for the light—i. e., in the morning.

Recollected it—put the lamps out.

Page 241.

Bull's eye which was his instrument—The lamplighter used to carry a bull's-eye lantern about with him and light the gas street lamps by igniting a taper from the flame of his bull's-eye lantern. A bull's-eye lantern is a lantern with a thick glass lens on one side of it for concentrating the rays of light.

Kindle—light the street lamps of.

Whole parish—i. e., a large number of street lamps.

Fitly—aptly. Commemorated—preserved. Legend—myth.

Like all heroic tasks—like what has happened to the work of all heroes. The heroes of classical mythology were considered to be a race of beings who lived a short life on earth in the course of which they performed wonders and after that they were transplanted to heaven and placed among the “*heroes*.”

His labours—his task—his work—his duties.

Draw towards apotheosis—are drawing towards their close—i. e., they are about to be ended. *Apotheosis* is a Greek word and means the act of elevating a mortal to the rank of, and placing him among, ‘the gods’—deification.—(*Webster*).

Of., the noisy *apotheosis* of liberty and machinery.—*Fred. Harrison*.

Hence the meaning is that the lamplighter is about to be placed among ‘the gods’

In the light of victory—amidst a blaze of glory. The reference is to the halo, surrounded by which saints and holy persons were supposed to be transplanted to heaven. Any picture of the *Madonna* or of Christ will show them with the blaze of glory round their heads.

Himself shall disappear—become a person of the past. He will disappear in the light of victory, *i. e.*, surrounded with a blaze of glory because of the great services he rendered during the era of gas-lamps. Of course it is the introduction of electricity that will bring about all these changes.

For—because. Another.....effected—we have made further progress

Tame stars—street lights of 'Domesticated, biddable stars' above.

Sedate—grave; sober. A spring—a button attached to a spring.

From one.....west—all over the (city) town.

Alexandra—The Alexandra Palace, built on the summit of Muswell Hill, in North London

Crystal Palace—a place of recreation and entertainment in one of the south eastern suburbs of London. It is a wonderful structure of crystal and iron. It is regarded as one of the seven wonders of the world. The crystal palace is situated very near East-Croydon, though there is a separated station on the London, Chatham, and Dover Railway for the convenience of persons visiting the 'palace.'

Fiat Lux—let there be light. Spectacle—sight; scene.

Dark nightfall—dark night—the darkness of the night makes the light of the street lamps shine out more brightly.

Edge—summit.

Hampstead Hill—Hampstead is a suburb of London situated towards the north-west of the 'west-end' of the metropolis. Hampstead is built on a hill from the summit of which it is possible to obtain a bird's-eye view of the whole town.

In the twinkling of an eye—*i. e.*, in a moment—in as short a period of time as it takes to shut and open the eyelids.

Design—the plan; the picture Monstrous—huge.

Flashes into vision—becomes visible.

The meaning is that after the introduction of electric lights for lighting the streets, a man will be able, before closing his eyes, to

see the town enveloped in darkness, and when a second later he opens them, he will find the whole city wrapped up in a sheet of light which at the same time will give him a sort of outline view of the city.

Glittering hieroglyph—a set of brightly shining little pictures resembling the alphabet of the ancient Egyptians.

Many square miles in extent--of the size of London.

A glittering extent—London, as it looks to one standing on the top of Hampstead Hill at night when the electric lights in the streets are lighted, resembles a huge scene composed of tiny little pictures—tiny, because of the distance of Hampstead Hill from London and because objects in the distance look small.

Debase an image--apply a description to an unworthy object.

Burst into song—become lighted together, i. e., at one and the same instant.

Spectacle—scene—sight to be seen in.

Proluded--a taste beforehand of which was afforded.

Experiment—trial.

Pall Mall—a well known street in the west-end of London in the neighbourhood of Piccadilly and Charing Cross. It is also known as "club-land," a great number of the leading clubs in the town being located in that street.

Star-rise by electricity—the lighting of streets lamps by means of the agency called electricity.

Romantic—sensational. **Flight**—achievement.

Civilization—i. e., modern civilization.

Compensatory benefit--the boon that will make compensation for the evils of working at night--i. e., that will make working at night less unpleasant.

Artistic spirit—person of artistic temperament—one who wishes to see everywhere the ideal.

Exercised about Thirlmere—(mere—a small lake generally high up in the mountains). Who goes to Cumberland, the lake region of England, especially to the neighbourhood of Thirlmere, for the purpose of indulging his artistic spirit. Thirlmere is one of the most picturesque lakes in Cumberland. It is the lake which has been tapped to supply water to Manchester.

Here—in the spectacle of London from the summit of Hampstead Hill after nightfall, when the town is lighted up with electric light.

Crumb—a little bit; some slight—A crumb is a tiny morsel of bread.

Seeing—observing.

Para. 6. But theinnovation—vide p. 239—paragraph 3.

Progress—the onward march of civilization—of. *Tennyson*.

“yet I doubt not thro’ the ages one increasing purpose runs

And the thoughts of men are widened with the process of the
Suns

Locksley Hall.

Lauding—praising. Ever—always.

Timid—fearful; frightened; afraid. Innovation—radical change.

Upheld—held up-by way of protestation. Counsel—advise.

Pause—not hasty action but the introduction of innovation after due and serious consideration and reflection.

Signal—warning.

Slow—cautious. Advance—progress.

Sounds the note of danger—is that which frightens us by hinting that dangerous consequences may follow. The metaphor is taken from the sounding of a trumpet to inform an army of the approach of the enemy.

At.....of—at the very entrance to.

Passage des Princes—Is the name of a street in Paris.

Page 242.

Place—space. Opera—the grand building of the Paris opera house.

Rue Drouot—the name of another street.

Figaro—the name of a Paris newspaper.

Urban star—city star—city light. *Urban* is opposed to *rural*.

A new sort of urban star—a new kind of city lamp.

Unearthly—weird.

A lamp for a nightmare—A lamp to give one the nightmare. The nightmare is a feeling of discomfort and oppression felt about the region of the chest as a result of indigestion.

A horrorhorror—the sight of such a lamp is a horrible sight and its only appropriate place could be where it would shine on sights equally horrible as itself—*e. g.*, on murders, on public crime, or in lunatic asylums.

Warm domestic radiance—soft genial light.

What—*viz.*—that fire which—*i. e.*, the simple kind of lights which our ancestors were familiar with.

Fishing—searching.

Profound heaven—infinite boundless heaven—the heaven is here spoken of as the source of all light.

With kites—conductors and receivers.

Catch—collect. Domesticate—subdue; tame—make 'biddable.'

The wildfire of the storm—*i. e.*, the lightning. 'Wildfire' is a composition of inflammable materials, which, when kindled, is very hard to quench.—(*Webster*).

Here—in London. The levin brand—the lightning—*i. e.*, electricity.

At our doors—is brought inside our very houses.

Glare—glaring light. Stevenson was of a very weak constitution and he could not bear glaring light.

Permanent lightning—electric lights.

The Terror that Flieeth—*i. e.*, Lightning—hence electric lights—Lightning is called 'Terror that Flieeth' because it strikes fear into the hearts of men and its flash lasts only for a second.

More becomingly displayed—exhibited in light better fitted to show off beauty.

Ugly—hideous—frightful.

Advertise—he used as an advertisement for. Home—office.

Slandorous Figaro—Stevenson is a little hard on this paper. The '*Figaro*' is not a paper habitually given to circulating scandals and publishing libels. Perhaps in this connection it might be more appropriate to apply the epithet 'slandorous' to the author of this essay.

Back-shop—shop located at the back of a house—hence a quiet, private shop.

Infernal regions—hell.

Which isregions—which quietly accepts all sorts of scandals and libels for publication.

Soft—mild; innocent Joys—social amusements and entertainment.

Convoked to pleasure—assembled together for the purpose of enjoying themselves.

Deifying wine—wine which elates one's spirits and makes him regard himself as a God as it were.

Old—the former, i. e., of gas lamps.

Mild—soft; not glaring. Lustre—light.

Shine upon—illumine.

Ways of men—the doings of human beings.

Summary.

1. At first there were no street lamps, and after 8 p. m. every one who went out carried his own lantern.

2. The first step in the direction of lighting streets was taken when oil lamps were suspended from invisible cords fastened to houses on opposite sides of the road. But these lamps were hard to kindle and easy to extinguish and at their best burnt with a dim, unsteady light. Again they were liable to be struck by the heads of passers-by.

3. The next step taken was the introduction of gas-lamps. The great drawback in the case of these lamps was that as they had to be lighted individually, they could not all be lighted at the same moment of time. This inconvenience was however reduced to a minimum by the lamplighter taking to his heels every evening and running with a good heart

4. There is now on foot a proposal of lighting London with electricity. The conservative, though welcoming some changes, is very slow to accept any radical change, and he advises caution and slowness of advance. The glow of electric lights is horrible and fit only to shine on murders, public crime and the corridors of lunatic asylums. The conservative would therefore advise that "where soft joys prevail, where people are convoked to pleasure, &c. ... there, at least, let the old mild lustre shine upon the ways of man.

MODEL QUESTIONS.

Question 1.—Write a short note on the 'Essay' as a form of literary composition, pointing out its principal characteristics.

Answer.—Dr. Johnson defined an essay as "a loose sally of the mind—an irregular, undigested piece of composition" Since Dr. Johnson's time the English 'essay' has acquired some dignity, and in the hands of men like Hazlitt, Charles Lamb and Leigh Hunt, it has come to be a piece of composition whereby a few general principles on any particular subject are sought to be illustrated by reference to concrete examples. The essential characteristic of the 'Essay' is the style in which it is written.

Also see notes p 1.

Q. 2.—What is the literal meaning of the word 'Essay'?

A.—The word 'Essay' literally means an 'attempt.'

Q. 3.—Write a short note on the history of the English Essay.

A.—Essay writing as a form of literary composition was introduced into England by Bacon, who himself borrowed the idea from the Frenchman Montaigne (1533-1592), because of the facility it afforded him of jotting down, in the form of hasty notes, his own opinions and reflections on the affairs of life. Bacon's example was followed in the next century, among others, by Overbury, Bishop Earle, Cowley and Sir William Temple. But these essayists wrote in a style which was not fitted for the Essay. Having imbibed from the age in which they lived a tendency to artificiality their sentences were involved and their periods long-winded, hence, though they succeeded in being ornate, their style was heavy and they failed to delight. It is not surprising, therefore, that the 'Essay' should, in those days, have been far less popular than it now is. With the appearance in the field of Addison and Steele a new era for the 'essay' was inaugurated. The defects of style, which had marred the Essays of the earlier writers, were by these writers abandoned, and instead of attempting to imitate the style of the classics they wrote in a style 'which caught the ease and spontaneous flow of conversation, while it never degenerated into slipshod speech or vulgarity.' The popularity of the 'Essay' was now

assured, and during the remainder of the 18th century Goldsmith and Cowper continued the work which Addison and Steele had begun. The follies and foibles of society form the principal theme of all these writers. The laxity of morals which followed in the train of the Restoration went to the extent of being scandalous, and Addison and Steele aimed at improving, through their writings, the state of the society of their times. They both approached the weaknesses which they attacked in a kindly spirit and came "as satirists who hit no unfair blow, as Judges who chastised only in smiling." Goldsmith and Cowper also display the same acute but kindly observation of the weaknesses of the men and women by whom they were surrounded as did Addison and Steele.

Goldsmith and Cowper were succeeded in the nineteenth century by Hazlitt, Charles Lamb, Leigh Hunt, De Quincey, Carlyle and Macaulay. The *Essay* no longer is confined to the comedy of manners but has become a romantic drama, blended of comedy and tragedy; its aim is now not only to delight but also to afford food for serious reflection upon the problem of life. Another feature of the 19th century essay is that it has grown longer and more elaborate than those of the 18th century.

Q. 4.—Write a short note on the life of Bacon.

A.—See notes p. 3.

Q. 5.—Characterise Bacon as a writer and as a man.

A.—See notes p. 4-6.

Q. 6.—Comment on the 'moral tone' of Bacon's *Essays*.

A.—See notes p. 7.

Q. 7.—Give a summary of Bacon's *Essay on Revenge*. Is the taking of Revenge, in Bacon's opinion, ever justifiable? What is Bacon's strongest argument against the taking of Revenge? What distinction does Bacon draw between Public and Private Revenge?

A.—See notes pp. 15—17, para 4 of the *Essay*; para. 1 of the *Essay*, para. 7 of the *Essay*.

Q. 8.—Explain the following passages with reference to the context where necessary:—

(a) Revenge is a kind of wild justice.....out of office,
(para. 1, p. 9.)

(b) And if any man.....other, (para. 3, p. 9.)

(c) But base.....dark, (para. 5, p. 10.)

(d) The spirit.....tune, (para. 6, p. 10).

A.—See notes pp. 15 ; 16 ; 13 ; 14.

Q. 9.—What according to Bacon is the object of ' travelling ' ? Offer a criticism of Bacon's views.

A.—See para. 1 of the Essay at p. 11 and ' Hints ' in notes at p. 31.

Q. 10.—What advice does Bacon offer to the young man who would ' put his travel into a little room ' ?

A.—See para. 6 of the Essay at p. 13.

Q. 11.—How should a person behave on returning to his own country after travelling abroad ?

A.—See para 11 of the Essay at p. 13 of the text.

Q. 12.—Explain the following passages with reference to the context were necessary :—

(a) Travel in.....experience, (para. 1, p. 11).

(b) It is a strange...deservation, (para. 4, p. 11).

(c) And let his travel...stories, (para. 11, p. 13).

A.—See notes pp. 28-31.

Q. 13.—Explain with reference to the context were necessary :—

(a) Fortune is like.....price, (para. 1, p. 14).

(b) For occasion as it...clasp, (para. 1, p. 14)

(c) Dangers are no.....them, (para. 2, p. 14).

(d) On the other side...extreme, (para. 3, p. 14).

(e) The ripeness or.....execution, (para. 4, p. 14)

Q. 14.—Explain the allusion in the following passages.

(a) And again, it is.....price, (para. 1, p. 14).

(b) And generally it is good.....execution, (para. 4, pp. 15-16).

A.—See notes pp. 32-37.

Q. 15.—What are the uses and abuses of study according to Bacon ?

A.—See notes p. 45.

Q. 16.—How are studies regarded by different classes of men—*e. g.*—by the crafty, by fools and by the wise ?

A.—See notes p. 45.

Q. 17.—What advice has Bacon to offer with regard to the way in which books ought to be used ?

A.—See notes p. 46.

Q. 18.—What function does Bacon ascribe to each of the different branches of study which he enumerates—what result can be obtained by a judicious selection of the subjects of study ?

A.—See notes p. 46.

Q. 19.—Explain, with reference to the context where necessary :—

(a) Studies serve for.....business, para. 1, p. 16).

(b) Crafty men contemn...observation, (para. 3, p. 16).

(c) Reading maketh...doth not, (para. 7, p. 17).

A.—See notes pp. 46, 47, 48, 49.

Q. 20.—Write a short note on the life of Richard Steele.

A.—Vide notes p. 49.

Q. 21.—Give an estimate of Steele as a writer—and compare him with Addison.

A.—Vide notes p. 50.

Q. 22.—Give a short sketch of the state of English society during the times of Addison and Steele.

A.—Vide notes p. 51.

Q. 23.—Give a short account of the story of Alexander Selkirk as narrated by Richard Steele.

A.—Vide summary, notes pp. 63-65.

Q. 24.—What is the moral of the story of Alexander Selkirk—can you offer any criticism of it ?

A.—Vide notes p. 63.

Q. 25.—Explain, with reference to the context where necessary :—

(a) It was a matter.....company, (para. 2, p. 18).

(b) Resentment against his officer...once, (para. 4, p. 19.)

(c) And he appeared.....everything, (para. 6, p. 19).

(d) When he had made.....irksome, (para. 7, p. 20).

(e) Familiar discourse...face, (para. 14, p. 22).

A.—Vide notes p. 65, 66, 67, 68, 69.

Q. 26.—Steele in his essay on Sir Roger De Coverley speaks of "the first of our society." To what society is the reference made ? Is the character of Sir Roger De Coverley purely imaginary or is it drawn from life ?

A.—Vide notes p. 69.

Q. 27.—Explain, with reference to the context where necessary :—

(a) However, this humour.....him, (para. 3, p. 23).

(b) Before his disappointment.....youngster, (para. 4, p. 23).

(c) He continues to wear.....wore it, (para. 4, p. 24).

(d) I must not omit.....Game Act, (para. 5, p. 24).

A.—Vide notes, pp. 75-76.

Q. 28.—Give a summary of Steele's essay on Sir Roger De Coverley.

A.—Vide notes p. 74.

Q. 29.—Write a short history of the spectator.

A.—Vide notes p. 77.

Q. 30.—Give some account of a few of the important characters in the 'spectator.'

A.—Vide notes p. 78.

Q. 31.—What was the state of English society at the Restoration, and what was its effect on the literature of the age ?

A.—Vide notes p. 78.

Q. 32.—What service, if any, did Addison render to his countrymen ?

A.—Vide notes pp. 79.

Q. 33.—Sketch the character of Sir Roger De Coverley as portrayed by Addison and Steele in the 'spectator' papers.

A.—Vide notes pp. 74, 96, 97, 111, 112, 113, 128, 139, 140, 154, 155, 156

Q. 34.—Give an estimate of Addison as a man of letters.

A.—Vide notes p. 80.

Q. 35.—Write a short note on Addison's English.

A.—Vide notes pp. 81-82.

Q. 36.—Explain, with reference to the context wherever necessary : —

(a) You would take...Privy-Counsellor, (para. 3, p. 26).

(b) You see.....services, (para. 3, p. 26).

(c) At the same.....servants, (para. 4, pp. 26-7).

(d) Sir Roger.....colours, (para. 7, p. 27).

(e) He was afraid.....table, (para. 8, p. 28).

(f) A sermon repeated.....actor, (para. 11, p. 29).

A.—See notes on pp. 83-96.

Q. 37.—Give an account of the oddities of Sir Rodger De Coverley which Addison's essay on "Sir Rodger at Church" discloses :—

A.—Vide Summary.

Q. 38.—Explain, with reference to the context wherever necessary :—

(a) If keeping holy.....mankind, (para. 1, p. 30).

(b) Sunday clears away.....village, (para. 2, p. 30).

(c) Observe these little.....good qualities, (para. 6, p. 33).

(d) The 'squire.....patron, (para 9, p. 34).

(e) Feuds of this.....believe it, (para. 10, p. 34).

A.—Vide notes pp. 98, 100, 101, 106, 110, 111.

Q. 39.—What, according to Addison, are the benefits which accrue from the observation of the Sabbath.

A.—Vide text, paras. 1 and 2, and also summary of these paras.

Q. 40.—Explain, with reference to the context wherever necessary :—

(a) A Man's first care.....know him, (para. 1, pp. 34-5).

(b) He receives a.....neighbourhood, (para. 2, p. 35).

(c) He is just within.....petty-jury, (para. 3, p. 35).

(d) Unknown to Sir Roger.....road, (para. 9, p. 38).

(e) I at first kept my.....both sides, (para. 11, p. 39).

A.—Vide notes pp. 114, 115, 117, 124, 127.

Q. 41.—Describe briefly the characters of Will Wimble and Tom Touchy.

A.—Vide text, Essay on " Sir Roger at the Assizes " paras. 3, 4 and 5.

Q. 42—" My friend Sir Roger, amidst all his good qualities, is something of a *humourist*." Explain the word *humourist* as used here Illustrate the truth of this remark by examples taken from the text.

Q. 43.—Explain, with reference to the context wherever necessary :—

(a) As they were..." Stole away," (para. 3, p. 41).

(b) If they were.....notice of, (para. 5, p. 41).

(c) If she could be.....captivity, (para. 8, p. 42).

A.—Vide notes pp. 134, 136, 139.

Q. 44.—Contrast the description of Sir Roger's visit to Westminster Abbey as given by Addison with Goldsmith's essay on the same subject.

Q. 45.—Explain in the following passages :—

(a) She had distilled.....better, (para. 4, p. 45.)

(b) And, concluding them...Chronicle, (para. 8, p. 45.)

(c) The fellow instead.....forfeit, (para. 9, p. 48.)

(d) If Will Wimble.....them, (para. 9, p. 48.)

A.—Vide notes.

Q. 46.—Name a few of the household superstitions which Addison attacks in his paper on ' Household Superstitions.'

A.—Vide Summary in ' notes.'

Q. 47.—Explain fully the following passage.

I know but one.....them, (para. 11, p. 53).

A.—Vide notes p. 168

Q. 48.—What facts about a shilling do the following sentences indicate :—

(a) I was born on the.....Peru.

(b) Being thus equipped.....brought.

(c) For being of a very.....Parliament.

(d) But opening it.....him.

Q. 49.—Explain, with reference to the context wherever necessary :—

(a) That is required...actions, (para. 1, p. 54).

(b) A most unaccountable...in it, (para. 2, p. 54).

(c) I was soon after my arrival.....other, (para. 4, p. 54)

(d) We led a melancholy...placed us, (para. 11, p. 57).

A.—Vide notes pp. 171, 172, 173, 180.

Q. 50.—What do you understand by “The Royal Exchange”? Summarise the benefits which have accrued to world from international commerce as set out in Addison’s paper on “The Royal Exchange.”

A.—Vide notes and summary—pp. 185 ; 198-9.

Q. 51.—Explain, with reference to the context wherever necessary :—

(a) Factors in the trading...continent, (para. 1, p. 60).

(b) I am a Dane.....world, (para. 2, p. 60).

(c) The fruits of Portugal...cane, (para. 6, p. 61).

(d) We repair our...canopies, (para. 8, p. 62).

(e) They knit mankind.....sheep, (para. 10, p. 63).

A.—Vide notes pp. 186, 188, 192, 195, 197.

Q. 52.—What do you understand by ‘London Cries’—How many varieties of cries could be heard in London in Addison’s time? What were the principal defects of these cries as pointed out by Ralph Crotchett in his letter to the ‘Spectator.’

Q. 53.—Explain, with reference to the context wherever necessary :—

(a) On the contrary...woods, (para. 1, p. 64).

(b) Milk is.....gamut, (para. 5, pp. 66-7).

(c) In these cases.....but little wool, (para. 5, p. 67).

(d) Our news should.....“ fire,” (para. 7, p. 67).

(e) How far.....Powder Watt, (para. 10, pp. 68-9).

A.— Vide notes.

Q. 54.—Summarise the observations made by Goldsmith on the policy of giving public recognition to deceased greatness. What remarks has he to make against literary ‘critics’—by what name does he call them?

Q. 55.—Explain.

(a) To gain a transient immortality.

- (b) To soften the rancour of malevolent dulness.
- (c) He reminded me of the black magicians of Kobe.
- (d) This cap is all the wages I have for my trouble.
- (e) Ecclesiastical beggars.

Q. 56.—Explain, with reference to the context :—

- (a) Alas! I said.....epitaph, (para. 2, pp. 71-2.)
- (b) It is the duty.....individual, (para. 2, p. 72.)
- (c) There are a set of men...anxiety, (para. 5, pp. 74-5.)

A.—Vide notes.

Q. 57.—Give a short sketch of the character of the 'Man in Black' as described by Goldsmith in his paper of that title. To what extent is it just to describe him as a "humourist in a nation of humourists"?

Q. 58.—Explain :—

- (a) Some affect humanity.....observer, (para. 1; p. 78.)
- (b) Who still had.....finery, para. 3, p. 80.)
- (c) Relieve himself by relieving the sailor, (para. 5, pp. 81-2.)

Q. 59.—What account does Goldsmith give of his experience of London Tradesmen? Is there any particular trait of the Chinese character which Goldsmith hits off in his Essay on "London Tradesmen"?

Q. 60.—Explain :—

Upon returning home.....success, (para. 6, pp. 85-6.)

A.—Vide notes pp. 236-7.

Q. 61.—How does Goldsmith seek to illustrate his remarks on the "Instability of worldly grandeur"?

Q. 62.—Explain, with reference to the context :—

- (a) Our publican...variety, (para. 2, p. 86.)
- (b) I must own.....pole, (para. 3, p. 88.)
- (c) You see my son.....guilt, (para. 4, p. 88.)

(d) Popular glory is.....Mayor, (para. 5, pp. 88—89.)

(e) The crowd takes.....storm, (para. 9, pp. 90-1).

A.—Vide notes pp. 239, 240, 241, 242, 246.

Q. 63.—What was the general condition of the country churches in Cowper's time? What reflections does he make against the behaviour of country congregations? Does he suggest any way in which the condition of the churches could be bettered?

Q. 64.—What was the general condition of the country clergy in Cowper's time? To what extent were they under the influence of the landed gentry? Compare Cowper's picture with that given by Addison in his De Coverley Essays.

Q. 65.—Explain:—

(a) I could wish...parish, (p. 94).

(b) The latter is most...door, (p. 95).

Q. 66.—Compare Hazlitt and Leigh Hunt as essayists. Give a short account of the life and writings of each of them.

Q. 67.—What associations are called up in Hazlitt's mind on hearing the sound of the Letter-Bell? Is the sound of the Letter-Bell a "conductor to the imagination?"

Q. 68.—What period of an artist's life according to Hazlitt is most happy? Explain what is meant by "when the professor is above this mechanical part of his business, it may have become a *stalking-horse* to other wordly schemes, but is no longer his *hobby-horse* and the delight of his inmost thoughts.

Q. 69.—Explain, with reference to the context wherever necessary:—

(a) Complaints are frequently.....found in it, (para. 1, p. 143.)

(b) And not only fills.....years, (para. 2, p. 143.)

(c) At that loud.....Progress, (para. 3, p. 144.)

(d) The punctuating.....events, (para. 6, p. 146).

(e) A learned Scotch...sentiment, (para. 11, p. 149).

(f) The finest sight in.....chariot, (para. 14, pp. 149-50).

A — *Vide* notes pp. 268, 269, 271, 274, 281-2, 285.

Q. 70.—Summarise Leigh Hunt's description of a ' hot day.'

A.—*Vide* summary.

Q. 71.—Explain, with reference to the context wherever necessary :—

(a) Now the rosy (and lazy) fingered...beams, (para. 1, p. 156.)

(b) Now Miss Betty Wilson...two pence, (para. 2, p. 158.)

(c) Now the lounge.....large, (para. 8, p. 159).

(d) Now the old-clothesman...Tartarus, (para. 9, 160).

(e) And cobblers in their stalls.....helmets, (para. 10, p. 160).

A.—*Vide* notes pp. 292, 295, 303, 304-5.

Q. 72.—' Summarise Leigh Hunt's description of a cold.' What has he to say about the origin of the use of the word " now ?" Why cannot any foreign equivalent for the word ' now ' express the meaning adequately ?

Q. 73.—Explain, with reference to the context :—

(a) It happens that.....subject, (para. 1, pp. 160-1)

(b) ' Now and then '.....language, (para. 3, p. 162).'

(c) On thawing days.....them, (para. 9, p. 164).

(d) Now riders.....feel so, (para. 10, p. 164).

(e) The wheezy and effeminate.....furs, (para. 10, p. 165).

(f) The gout.....bottle, (para. 11, p. 165.)

(g) The whole country...Five Bells, (para. 12, p. 166).

Q. 74.—What has Washington Irving to say about the age-coach driver ? Summarise Irving's description of the

preparations for Christmas. Reproduce his remarks on the kitchen of an English Country Inn.

Q. 75.—Give a brief sketch of the character of squire Bracebridge, as described by Irving. How far is Irving's representation of English country life a true picture? Justify Thackeray's remark that Irving "came amongst" the English "bringing the kindest sympathy, the most artless, smiling good will.

Q. 76.—Explain, with reference to the context wherever necessary :—

(a) It was delightful to hear.....pedagogue, (para. 1, p. 167.)

(b) He has commonly.....heels, (para. 3, p. 168).

(c) And notwithstanding.....Englishman, (para. 4, p. 170).

(d) Great is the contention.....fingers, (para. 9, p. 172).

Q. 77. Give a brief account of the manner in which the gentry in the country in England spend Christmas eve and Christmas day.

Q. 78. - Give a short sketch of the character of Master Simon.

Q. 79.—Explain, with reference to the context :—

(a) The boasted imitation.....levelling system, (para. 11, p. 181).

(b) The Yule clog.....housemaids, (para. 12, p. 182).

(c) A profusion of wooden.....night, (para. 14, p. 184).

(d) His nose was.....autumn, (para. 19, p. 186).

(e) He was the beau.....children, (para. 23, p. 187).

(f) What girl of.....perfection, (para. 27, p. 189).

(g) They were great.....mansion, (para. 10, p. 198).

(h) It was, he observed...purposes, (para. 17, pp. 201-2).

(i) The usual services.....death, (para. 21, p. 203).

(j) Everything went on...duration, (para 21, pp. 203-4).

(k) The beauty of the day... ..every heart into a flow,
(para. 25, p. 206).

A.—Vides note.

Q. 80.—Summarise the estimates of Washington Irving and Macaulay given by Thackeray in his essay entitled *Nil Nisi Bonum*. What is the meaning of the title of the Essay ?

Q. 81.—Explain, with reference to the context :—

(a) Deed and quiet he lays.....time, (p. 215).

(b) As learned a man.. ...right, (p. 218).

(c) Immortal gods ! was this.....Schönbrunn, (p. 218).

(d) Why, a man's books may.....penned, (p. 222).

(e) It was not.....them, (p. 222).

Q. 82.—Give a summary of Stevenson's Essay on a "Plea for gas lamps." What is the meaning of the title ?

Q. 83 —Explain, with reference to the context :—

(a) Cities given.....sun, (p. 238).

(b) Many holes, drilled.....footsteps, (p. 238).

(c) Rudely puffed the winds.....kennels, (p. 239).

(d) The work of Prometheus.....stride, (p. 239).

(e) The city folk.....stars, (p. 240).

(f) God bless him.....dusk, (p. 240).

(g) To the artistic spirit.....comes, (p. 241).

(h) Mankind you would.....storm, (p. 242).

(i) That ugly blinding glare.....man, (p. 242).

[THE END.]

